

CHYSTATE SA NA MATURITU?

YES!

MATURITNÁ
B1
ÚROVEŇ

25 maturitných tém
kompletná gramatika

Andrea Billiková
Soňa Preložníková

NOVÁ MATURITA ANGLIČTINA ZÁKLADNÁ ÚROVEŇ

- rozpracované maturitné témy
- slovná zásoba
- konverzačné úlohy k témam
- počítanie
- písanie
- testy na písomnú a ústnu časť



ZÁKLADNÁ ÚROVEŇ

**Ministerstvo školstva SR na základe odporúčania
Štátneho pedagogického ústavu zaradilo túto publikáciu do zoznamu
odporúčaných učebníc pre stredné školy.**

Angličtina

**nová maturita
základná úroveň**

Andrea Billíková
Soňa Preložníková

enigma

Andrea Billíková, PhD.
Soňa Preložníková, PhD.
kapitola Písanie (Writing): PhDr. Ľuboš Török
kapitola Gramatika: Andrea Billíková, PhD.; Elena Ciprianová, PhD.
kapitola Literatúra: Mgr. Zuzana Fabianová; Andrea Billíková, PhD.

Angličtina – nová maturita – základná úroveň + audionahrávka na CD príručka pre maturantov, maturitná úroveň B1

2. doplnené vydanie

Vydavateľ: ENIGMA PUBLISHING s.r.o., Nitra
Kontakt: tel.&fax: (037) 655 55 51
enigma@enigma.sk
www.enigma.sk

Grafická úprava: ENIGMA PUBLISHING s.r.o., Nitra
Kontakt: tel.&fax: (037) 655 55 51
studio@enigma.sk
www.design.enigma.sk

Jazyková korektúra: John Kehoe, Valerie Halstead, Martin Mačura, PhD.

Návrh obálky: Juraj Demovič

Tlač: KRUPA print, Žilina

Vytlačené: 2009

ISBN 978-80-89132-54-6

© ENIGMA PUBLISHING s.r.o. 2009.
© Andrea Billíková 2008, 2009
© Soňa Preložníková 2008, 2009
© Ľuboš Török 2008, 2009
© Elena Ciprianová 2009
© Zuzana Fabianová 2009
© Juraj Demovič 2008, 2009

Aktuálnu predajnú cenu tejto knižky nájdete na www.enigma.sk, kde si ju môžete aj objednať.

ÚVOD

Angličtina – nová maturita – základná úroveň je určená študentom, ktorí sa rozhodli maturovať z anglického jazyka na úrovni B1. Zahrňuje prípravu na ústnu a písomnú časť maturitnej skúšky z angličtiny.

Prvá časť knihy (Ústna časť) obsahuje 25 vypracovaných maturitných tém v 25 lekcích nenáročnou, zaujímavou a interaktívnou formou. Jednotlivé lekcie obsahujú otázky na konverzáciu k danej téme, úvodný text so zvýraznenou kľúčovou slovnou zásobou a frázami, zoznam slovnej zásoby a fráz s prekladom, cvičenia na zopakovanie slovnej zásoby a najbežnejších konverzačných fráz, vzorové zadania úloh pre ústnu (internú) časť maturity. 20 úvodných textov načítali lektori na CD, ktoré je súčasťou knihy.

Druhá časť knihy (Gramatika) je prehľadom základných gramatických pravidiel angličtiny s príkladmi. Použitie gramatických pravidiel si študenti môžu precvičiť v cvičeniach aj v kontraste so slovenčinou. Tu uvádzame aj zoznam nepravidelných slovies.

Tretia časť knihy (Písomná časť) predstavuje 10 úloh na precvičenie počúvania s porozumením, 10 úloh na precvičenie anglickej gramatiky a 10 úloh na prácu s textom. Úlohy sú typologicky zostavené podľa požiadaviek na externú časť maturitnej skúšky. Súčasťou tejto časti knihy je aj prepis nahrávok a kľúč správnych odpovedí k úlohám. CD obsahuje monologické a dialogické texty, ktoré nahovorili anglickí, írski, americkí a slovenskí učitelia angličtiny. Študentom ponúkame vypracované modelové úlohy písania formálneho a neformálneho listu, esejí, príbehu, správ a opisu. Pri každom útvare sú uvedené poznámky „sprievodcu“ a cenné rady, ako správne písať a o čom písať.

Štvrtá časť knihy (Literatúra) predstavuje krátku charakteristiku života a diela vybraných britských a amerických autorov a rozbor dvoch literárnych diel.

Piatá časť (Doplnkový materiál) knihy zahrňuje doplnkové čítanie faktografických textov o anglicky hovoriacich krajinách a mestách, o Slovensku a o EÚ a NATO. Nájdete tu aj zoznam užitočných výrazov a fráz na riadenie konverzácie, krátke ukážky dialógov v angličtine, slovtvorbu a základné frázové slovesá.

Kľúče k jednotlivým častiam a prepisy nahrávok sú na oddeliteľných listoch.

Angličtina – nová maturita – základná úroveň je vhodná na individuálne štúdium i na prácu v triede. Veríme, že sa pre vás stane praktickou pomôckou a uľahčí vám prípravu na maturitu.

Veľa šťastia!

Autorky

Podakovanie

Naše podakovanie patrí predovšetkým PaedDr. Kataríne Vasočákovej z SOU Dvoričianska 629 v Nitre a jej študentom za ich cenné pripomienky pri písaní tejto knihy. Ďalej ďakujeme kolektívu učiteľov angličtiny zo Združenej strednej školy dopravy, obchodu a služieb v Nitre a tiež študentom školy, ktorí nám pomohli otestovať túto knihu. Osobitne ďakujeme lektorom z USA, Veľkej Británie, Írska a Slovenska za ich pomoc pri nahrávaní CD a Johnovi Kehoeovi, Martinovi Mačurovi a Elene Ciprianovej za odbornú spoluprácu.

A ÚSTNA ČASŤ: Maturitné témy a konverzačné úlohy	9
Lekcia 1: Family (Rodina)	15
Lekcia 2: Culture and Art (Kultúra a umenie)	20
Lekcia 3: Sports and Games (Športy a hry)	25
Lekcia 4: Housing (Bývanie)	30
Lekcia 5: Shopping and Services (Obchod a služby)	36
Lekcia 6: Health Care (Starostlivosť o zdravie)	42
Lekcia 7: Travelling (Cestovanie)	48
Lekcia 8: Education (Vzdelanie)	55
Lekcia 9: Jobs (Zamestnanie)	61
Lekcia 10: People and Nature (Ľudia a príroda)	68
Lekcia 11: Science and Technology (Veda a technika)	73
Lekcia 12: People and Society (Ľudia a spoločnosť)	79
Lekcia 13: The Young and Their World (Mládež a jej svet)	85
Lekcia 14: Food (Stravovanie)	90
Lekcia 15: Hobbies, Leisure and Lifestyle (Záľuby, voľný čas a životný štýl)	96
Lekcia 16: Multicultural Society (Multikultúrna spoločnosť)	102
Lekcia 17: Towns and Places (Mestá a miesta)	109
Lekcia 18: Fashion (Móda)	115
Lekcia 19: English-speaking Countries (Anglicky hovoriace krajiny)	121
Lekcia 20: Slovakia – My Homeland (Slovensko – moja vlasť)	127
Lekcia 21: Human Relationships (Medziľudské vzťahy)	133
Lekcia 22: Communication and Languages (Komunikácia a jazyky)	141
Lekcia 23: Mass Media (Masmédiá)	148
Lekcia 24: The Book – The Friend of People (Kniha – priateľ človeka)	154
Lekcia 25: Idols and Celebrities (Idoly a celebrity)	160
KEY (kľúč k ústnej časti – oddeliteľný)	165
 B GRAMATIKA (Otestuj sa v gramatike)	171
Nouns – Podstatné mená	175
Adjectives – Prídavné mená	185
Adverbs – Príslovky	193
Pronouns – Zámená	196
Grammar Tenses – Gramatické časy	205

Modal Verbs – Modálne slovesá	234
Prepositions – Predložky	238
Fixed Expressions – Ustálené spojenia	241
Conditional Clauses – Podmienkové vety	250
Passive Voice – Trpný rod	254
Indirect (Reported) Speech – Nepriama reč	258
Conjunctions – Spojky	264
Numerals – Číslovky	267
British and American English – Britská a americká angličtina	269
Irregular Verbs – Nepravidelné slovesá	270
KEY (kľúč ku gramatike – oddeliteľný)	275

C PÍŠOMNÁ ČASŤ	292
LISTENING TASKS (úlohy na precvičenie počúvania s porozumením)	293
Tapescripts (prepis nahrávok – oddeliteľný)	300
LANGUAGE IN USE (úlohy na precvičenie anglickej gramatiky)	305
READING TASKS (práca s textom)	315
WRITING TASKS (úlohy na precvičenie písania)	326
Writing – Examples (ukážky písania vybraných žánrov v angličtine)	328
KEY (kľúč k písomnej časti – oddeliteľný)	334

D LITERATÚRA	337
LITERARY TERMS (literárne termíny)	338
SOME ENGLISH AND AMERICAN WRITERS (vybraní angl. a amer. autori) ...	339
The Tragedy of Hamlet, Prince of Denmark (rozbor)	342
The Old Man and the Sea (rozbor)	348
KEY (kľúč k literárnym úlohám – oddeliteľný)	354

E DOPLNKOVÝ MATERIÁL	355
ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES AND SLOVAKIA	
(anglicky hovoriace krajiny a Slovensko)	356
THE EUROPEAN UNION AND NATO (EÚ a NATO)	370
SOME USEFUL PHRASES AND EXPRESSIONS	
(niektoré užitočné frázy a výrazy)	372
SHORT DIALOGUES (krátke dialógy)	378
WORD FORMATION (slovotvorba)	383
BASIC PHRASAL VERBS (základné frázové slovesá)	386



MATURITNÉ TÉMY A KONVERZAČNÉ ÚLOHY

TOPIC / TÉMA	CONTENTS / OBSAH	FUNCTIONS / FUNKCIE
1 FAMILY Rodina str. 15	Family members and their roles (členovia rodiny a ich úlohy) Relationships among people (medzilidské vzťahy)	Expressing opinion (vyjadrenie názoru) Describing people – their appearance (opis ľudí – ich zovňajšok)
2 CULTURE AND ART Kultúra a umenie str. 20	Different types of culture and art (rôzne druhy kultúry a umenia) Culture in towns and in the country (kultúra v meste a na vidieku) Famous artists (známi umelci)	Recommendation (odporúčenie) Invitation, accepting/refusing (pozvanie, prijatie, odmietnutie pozvania)
3 SPORTS AND GAMES Športy a hry str. 25	Types of sports and games (typy športov a hier) Popular sports and games in Slovakia, England, the USA (obľúbené športy a hry na Slovensku, v Anglicku, USA)	Asking questions (kladenie otázok) Interviewing a famous sportsman (rozhovor so známym športovcom)
4 HOUSING Bývanie str. 30	Living in a town and in the country (bývanie v meste a na vidieku) Types of housing (rôzne druhy bývania) Housing in Slovakia, Britain and the USA (bývanie na Slovensku, v Británii a v USA) My dream house (predstavy o vlastnom bývaní)	Describing a house (opis domu) Advantages and disadvantages (výhody a nevýhody)
5 SHOPPING AND SERVICES Obchody a služby str. 36	Shopping possibilities (možnosti nakupovania) Shopping centres versus small specialised shops (obchodné centrá verzus malé špecializované obchody) Services – post, bank (služby – pošta, banka)	Complaining and apologising (sťažnosť a ospravedlnenie sa) Expressing preference (vyjadrenie toho, čo uprednostňujeme)
6 HEALTH CARE Starostlivosť o zdravie str. 42	Human body (ľudské telo) At the doctor's (u lekára) How to keep fit (ako zostať zdravý) Diseases (choroby)	Expressing sympathy (vyjadrenie súcitu)
7 TRAVELLING Cestovanie str. 48	Getting ready for a journey (príprava na cestu) Means of transport (dopravné prostriedky) Orientation in town (orientácia v meste)	Expressing preference (vyjadrenie toho, čo uprednostňujeme) Asking and giving directions (pýtanie sa na cestu a udanie smeru)

8 EDUCATION Vzdelanie str. 55	Types of schools (typy škôl) School subjects, organisation of the school year, holidays (školské predmety, organizácia školského roka, prázdniny) Qualities of a good student/teacher (charakteristika dobrého študenta/učiteľa) Extracurricular activities (mimoškolské aktivity)	Expressing opinion (vyjadrenie názoru) Agreeing/disagreeing with an opinion (súhlas/nesúhlas s názorom) Giving a short presentation about my school (krátka prezentácia mojej školy)
9 JOBS Zamestnanie str. 61	Choice of job and motivation (voľba povolania a motivácia) Curriculum vitae (životopis) Getting ready for my future job (príprava na moje budúce povolanie)	Job interview – questions and answers (pohovor pri uchádzaní sa o prácu – otázky a odpovede)
10 PEOPLE AND NATURE Ľudia a príroda str. 68	Seasons and weather (ročné obdobia a počasie) Ecology (ekológia) Nature around us – fauna and flora (príroda okolo nás – fauna a flóra) Trip to the country (výlet na vidiek)	Talking about weather (rozhovor o počasi) Prohibitions (vyjadrenie zákazu)
11 SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY Veda a technika str. 73	Scientific and technological progress (pokrok vo vede a technike) Interesting inventions (pozoruhodné objavy) What I use – computer, mobile, television (čo využívam – počítač, mobil, televízor)	Describing a machine – its size, shape, material and usage (opis prístroja – veľkosť, tvar, materiál a použitie)
12 PEOPLE AND SOCIETY Ľudia a spoločnosť str. 79	Social behaviour of the young and the old (spoločenské správanie mladých a starších ľudí) Social etiquette, greetings, meetings, visits, social conversation (spoločenská etiketa, pozdravy, stretnutia, návštevy, spoločenská konverzácia) Communication among people (komunikácia v rôznych situáciách)	Making a request (žiadaosť) Offering help (ponúknuť pomoc)
13 THE YOUNG AND THEIR WORLD Mládež a jej svet str. 85	The young, their characteristics, hobbies and activities (mladí ľudia, ich charakteristika, záujmy a aktivity) Place of the young in the society (postavenie mladých v spoločnosti) Friendship and love (priateľstvo a láska)	Describing people – their appearance, qualities, lifestyle, opinions, problems (opis ľudí – ich zovňajšok, vlastnosti, životný štýl, názory, problémy)

14 FOOD Stravovanie str. 90	Food and drinks – breakfast, lunch, dinner (jedlá a nápoje – raňajky, obed, večera) National cuisines (národné kuchyne) Eating at home, at school, at a restaurant (stravovanie doma, v škole, v reštaurácii) My favourite food (moje obľúbené jedlo)	Describing the process of food preparation – recipes (opis procesu varenia – recepty) Expressing compliments and criticism about the food (hodnotenie jedla)
15 HOBBIES, LEISURE AND LIFESTYLE Záľuby, voľný čas a životný štýl str. 96	How to spend free time (možnosti trávenia voľného času) Organised leisure activities – extracurricular activities, clubs (organizované mimoškolské aktivity a kluby) Individual interests – art, books, hiking (individuálne záujmy – umenie, knihy, turistika)	Expressing opinion (vyjadrenie názoru) Asking for information (získavanie informácií) Expressions to fill time in conversation (frázy na vyplnenie času počas konverzácie)
16 MULTICULTURAL SOCIETY Multikultúrna spoločnosť str. 102	Multiculturalism and its understanding (multikultúrnosť a jej chápanie) Bicultural families (bikultúrne rodiny) Holidays, habits and traditions (sviatky, zvyky a tradície) Countries and nationalities (krajiny a národnosti)	How to gain time for thinking (ako získať čas na premyslenie si odpovede) How to say you don't know (ako povedať, že nevieš) How to come up with some ideas (ako sa vynájdť)
17 TOWNS AND PLACES Mestá a miesta str. 109	Important places in my life (dôležité miesta v mojom živote) Guiding tourists (sprevádzanie turistov) Interesting places for tourists (turisticky zaujímavé miesta)	Describing a place (opis miesta) Recommendations (odporúčenia) (Pozri aj doplnkový materiál na str. 355.)
18 FASHION Móda str. 115	Attitude of people towards fashion (postoj ľudí k móde) Weather and clothing (počasie a oblečenie) Clothes for different occasions (oblečenie na rôzne príležitosti) Taking care of clothes (starostlivosť o oblečenie) Tailored clothes versus ready-made clothes (šaty šité na mieru verus hotové šaty)	Giving compliments/ criticising (komplimenty a kritika)

19 ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES Anglicky hovoriace krajiny str. 121	Country and its inhabitants (krajina a jej obyvatelia) Places I would like to visit (miesta, ktoré by som rád navštívil/rada navštívila) Habits and traditions (zvyky a tradície)	Expressing wishes (vyjadrenie želania) (Pozri aj doplnkový materiál na str. 355.)
20 SLOVAKIA – MY HOMELAND Slovensko – moja vlasť str. 127	Country and its inhabitants (krajina a jej obyvatelia) Places I would recommend to foreigners to visit (miesta, ktoré by som odporučil cudzincom navštíviť) Habits and traditions (zvyky a tradície)	Describing unfamiliar words typical for a certain culture (popis neznámych, pre danú kultúru typických slov) Expressing agreement/disagreement/no opinion (vyjadrenie súhlasu/nesúhlasu/žiadneho stanoviska) Giving a short presentation about Slovakia (prezentácia Slovenska) (Pozri aj doplnkový materiál na str. 355.)
21 HUMAN RELATIONSHIPS Medziľudské vzťahy str. 133	Formal and informal human relationships (formálne a neformálne medziľudské vzťahy) Quality of human relationships (kvalita medziľudských vzťahov)	Expressing opinion, agreement and disagreement (vyjadrenie názoru, súhlasu a nesúhlasu) Expressing feelings and moods (vyjadrenie pocitov a nálad)
22 COMMUNICATION AND LANGUAGES Komunikácia a jazyky str. 141	Forms, ways and means of communication (formy, spôsoby a prostriedky komunikácie) Learning foreign languages (štúdium cudzích jazykov)	Problem solving: Asking for advice and giving advice (riešenie problémov, ako požiadať o radu, ako poradiť) Expressing thanks (vyjadrenie vďaky) Expressing opinion (vyjadrenie názoru)
23 MASS MEDIA Masmédia str. 148	Different types of mass media: radio, television, newspapers, the Internet (rôzne typy masmédií: rádio, televízia, noviny, internet) Main role of mass media (hlavná úloha masmédií) Negative impacts of some mass media (negatívne vplyvy niektorých masmédií)	Persuading others (ako presvedčiť ostatných)
24 THE BOOK – THE FRIEND OF PEOPLE Kniha – priateľ človeka str. 154	Literary genres and their readers (literárne žánre a ich čitatelia) Reading crisis and the future of books (kríza v čítaní a budúcnosť kníh) My favourite author and book (môj obľúbený autor a kniha)	Describing a book (opis knihy) (Pozri aj časť Literatúra na str. 337 – 354.)

25 IDOLS AND CELEBRITIES

Idoly a celebrity

str. 160

Idols and heroes (idoly a hrdinovia)

Role models and celebrities (vzory a celebrity)

Fictional heroes (fiktívni hrdinovia)

Positive and negative human traits (kladné a záporné vlastnosti ľudí)

Giving biographic facts about a famous person (biografické fakty známej osoby)

1 FAMILY

Family members and their roles (členovia rodiny a ich úlohy)

Relationships among people (medziludské vzťahy)

Expressing opinion (vyjadrenie názoru)

Describing people – their appearance (opis ľudí – ich zovňajšok)



① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. Who are the members of your family?
2. When is family happy and functioning?
3. When do you, as a family, meet together?

A family usually **consists of** a mother, father and children, who live together in one home. A functioning family should provide **protection**, education, help and **security** to all its members. Strong **relationships** are often created between **siblings**, **cousins**, parents, aunts, uncles, **grandparents** and other **relatives**.

All family members have some **duties** and **responsibilities**. Parents should teach their children what is good and bad, how to **solve problems** in life, how to become an independent person and **care about** others. Democratic parents talk with their children and respect them. **Strict parents** do not make compromises, which often creates a **generation gap** between them and their own children. The main duty of children is learning and going to school. They should also help their parents with **housework**.

Modern European families are **monogamous**. Most of young people **get married** in their late twenties or early thirties. Many young people live together in the same home but are not a husband and wife. This is called **cohabitation**. Older generations think this is not correct.

The **wedding** is a formal act and it takes place in a **town hall** or in a **church**. The **engaged couple** exchange their **wedding rings** and **promise** themselves to live together in good and bad and in illness too. Nowadays, many couples are **divorced**. Their frequent reasons for a divorce are problems with **trust**, money, living with parents and parents-in-law, alcohol, drugs, **gambling** and **unemployment**.

When one of the parents dies, children stay with a **single parent**. A woman who **loses** her **husband** is called a **widow** and a man a **widower**. When they get married again, the new parents are called **step-parents**. Sometimes, divorced parents get married once again. Bad relationships with new step-parents **lead to** problems and frequent **arguments**.

Family life is different all around the world. In Slovakia many families meet together for special days, such as birthdays, weddings, **feasts** and **funerals**. A family, a real home and **relatives** are what we need for life. They always help us when we need them.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. What does family mean to you?
2. What are the functions of a family?
3. What are the main roles of children and parents in a family?
4. What is cohabitation?
5. Why do people get divorced?
6. When does your family usually get together?

□ PRACTICE TASKS

A Make the pairs from the following words.

Example: mother – father

mother brother mother-in-law aunt niece grandfather daughter
sister-in-law husband father sister uncle nephew father-in-law
grandmother wife son brother-in-law

B Introduce yourself and then describe your own family. Use the following phrases.

My name is... My surname is...
I was born on (day, month) in (year).
I am single/married/divorced.
I have got one child/two children/no children.
In my family there are (mother, father, sister, brother).
I have a younger (an older) brother/sister.
I am the youngest/middle/oldest... in our family.
My parents are (friendly, democratic, strict, authoritative...).
My grandparents are (alive, dead, retired, still working...).
They live/lived in (place of living).
We all live in a (family house, flat) in... (a town, village) called...
We share housework in our family. My mother (cooks, cleans, washes up, does shopping).
My father is responsible for...
I help my parents with...
I have the best relationship with my...
I like my (aunt/uncle/cousin...) most because he/she is (a funny person, empathic, nice to me...).
The head of our family is... He/she is very (clever, hard working, friendly...).
We usually meet (at birthday parties, barbecues, Christmas, Easter, weddings, funerals).
We are a (large/small/happy/sad/functioning) family.

C Put a tick (✓) to those activities which you do in your family.

Example: We go to church on Sundays. (✓)

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a) We eat in restaurants. | g) We cook special meals. |
| b) We go fishing. | h) We meet together at Christmas. |
| c) We watch television. | i) We have barbecues. |
| d) We work in our garden. | j) We go abroad for holidays. |
| e) We play cards. | k) We share housework. |
| f) We visit our grandparents. | l) We share our car. |

D Express your opinion. What do you think, what are the qualities of an ideal father and mother? Use the phrases and vocabulary below to help you.

I think that an ideal father/mother should/shouldn't be...

friendly democratic liberal strict helpful reliable empathic responsible

In my opinion ideal parents should/shouldn't...

listen to their children talk to their children make compromises
solve their children's problems buy their children what they want
spend weekends with their children punish their children

□ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 1 FAMILY

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372.

Describe the people in the pictures below. Talk about the relationships between them. Is it the same or different in your family? Discuss it.



Task 2

Talk about the special days in your family, such as birthday parties or Christmas. Talk about:

- how you celebrate them,
- who your guests are,
- what food you have,
- what you do together.

Task 3 Role-play

You: You think that your parents do not give you enough pocket money. Talk to your mother about it. Tell her what you need money for and how much you would like to get. Give good arguments to persuade her to get more money.

Your partner: You are a mother of a teenager who always asks for money. You think that he/she gets enough pocket money. You are not going to give him/her more money because you know that the money is often spent on cigarettes.

□ VOCABULARY FAMILY

■ NOUNS

argument – hádka, debata

aunt – teta

brother-in-law – švagar

church – kostol

cohabitation – spolužitie

couple – pár

cousin – bratranec, sesternica

duty – povinnosť

father-in-law – svokor

feast – hody

funeral – pohreb

gambling – hazardné hranie

generation gap – generačný rozdiel

grandparents – starí rodičia

guest – hosť

housework – práca v domácnosti

husband – manžel

mother-in-law – svokra

nephew – synovec

niece – neter

parent – rodič

pocket money – vreckové peniaze

protection – ochrana

relationship – vzťah

relatives – rodinní príbuzní

responsibilities – povinnosti, úlohy

security – bezpečnosť, istota

sibling – súrodenec

sister-in-law – švagrína

step-parents – nevlastní rodičia

town hall – mestský úrad, radnica

trust – dôvera

uncle – strýc

unemployment – nezamestnanosť

wedding – svadba

wedding ring – obrúčka

widow – vdova

widower – vdovec

wife – manželka

■ ADJECTIVES

alive – žijúci, nažive, živý

clever – bystrý

divorced – rozvedený

engaged – zasnúbený

hard-working – pracovitý

helpful – nápomocný

monogamous (napr. relationship) – monogamný (vzťah) – s jedným stálym partnerom)

reliable – spoľahlivý

responsible – zodpovedný

retired – na dôchodku

single (parent) – slobodný (rodič)

strict – prísny

■ VERBS

to care about – starať sa o

to celebrate – oslavovať

to consist of – pozostávať z

to describe – opísať

to get married – oženiť sa / vydať sa

to lead to – viesť k

to lose – stratiť

to promise – sľúbiť

to punish – trestať

to solve problems – riešiť problémy

to spend money on – minúť peniaze na

■ PHRASES

Expressing opinion – vyjadrenie názoru

I think/believe that... Myslím si, že...

In my opinion... Podľa môjho názoru...

Describing people – their appearance (opis ľudí – ich zovňajšok)

Age: young; middle-aged (v strednom veku); older; elderly (postarší); He is in his early 30s (thirties). (Má asi do 35 rokov.); He is in his mid 30s (Má asi 35 rokov.); He is in his late 30s. (Má takmer 40 rokov.); He is retired (Je na dôchodku.)

Build (postava): slim (štíhly); skinny (vyziabnutý); thin (tenký, chudý); He is of medium build. (Je strednej postavy – ani chudý, ani tučný.); well-built (urastený); plump (buculatý); fat (tučný); overweight (obézny)

Height (výška): small; tall; short; He is of medium height. (Je strednej výšky.)

Face: thin (chudý); chubby (bucfatý); round (okružla); oval (oválna); square (štvorcová); sun-tanned (opálený); pale (bledý); full lips (plné pery); thin lips (tenké pery); long / straight (rovný) / turned-up (vyvrátený dohora) nose

Hair: long / short / straight (rovné) / wavy (vlnité) / curly (kučeravé); fringe (ofina); ponytail (vrkoč); spiky (na ježka); receding (strácajúce sa); bald (plešivý); highlighted (melirované); dyed (zafarbené); blond(e); dark; fair (plavý, svetlý); grey (šedivý) (grey-haired); red; white

Clothes: casual (neformálny); smart (elegantný); neat (upravený); fashionable (módny); old-fashioned (staromódny); conservative; elegant; scruffy (rozgajdané)

Skin (pleť): dark; fair (svetlý)

Other features (iné znaky / črty): He wears glasses. (Nosí okuliare.); He is scarred. (Je jazvený.); freckles (pehy); beard (brada); moustache (fúzy); unshaven (neoholený); wrinkles (vrásky)

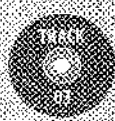
2 CULTURE AND ART

Different types of culture and art (rôzne druhy kultúry a umenia)

Culture in towns and in the country (kultúra v meste a na vidieku)

Famous artists (známi umelci)

Recommendation (odporúčenie), **Invitation** (pozvanie)



① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. What kind of art are you interested in?
2. Who are your favourite actors?
3. What are the qualities of a good artist?

Culture and **art** are **important** for us because they **add** aesthetic **value** to our lives. Cultural **events** are an interesting **way** how people can **spend** their free time. Art is a way of communicating feelings. Artists **express** themselves in many forms – music, literature, architecture, **painting**, **drawing**, **sculpture**. Music, dance and theatre are **performing arts**. Painting, sculpture, architecture and photography are **decorative arts**.

Cities **offer** many cultural attractions to **citizens** and tourists. People who like classical music can **enjoy** a **chamber** music concert in concert halls. *Mozart*, *Beethoven* and *Bach* have become the most important European **composers**. Fans of different music styles – pop, rock, jazz, blues or country can enjoy music at the festivals, go to see their favourite singers or bands **perform live** at concerts or **simply** listen to CDs, MP3 players or watch concerts on DVDs. In towns, people have the possibility to go to the theatre to see various **performances**. The most popular are musicals. Film lovers can go to cinemas to watch **dubbed** or **subtitled** films. The **multi-screen air-conditioned** complexes in shopping centres are becoming more and more popular. **Open-air cinemas** are a popular **option among** the young in summer. The lovers of **fine arts** can go to galleries to see the **artwork** of famous **painters** and **sculptors**. The works of *Picasso*, *Van Gogh*, *Rembrandt*, *Michelangelo* are **immortal**.

Cultural events in **villages** and **rural areas** are not very frequent. In Slovak villages, the **so-called** houses of culture are the main centre of cultural life. The most popular cultural events in villages are dance **balls** where people dance polka, waltz, tango or modern dances. Slovak villages are famous for **promoting** folklore traditions. There are folklore festivals of folklore music, dances and songs organised for example in *Východná*, *Myjava*, *Detva* and **elsewhere**. Nowadays, most young people **prefer** modern music and modern dance to folklore.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. What types of art do you know?
2. What cultural events are organised in your town or village?
3. What kind of music do you like?
4. What are performing and decorative arts?
5. Do you think that the Slovak cinemas offer attractive programmes?
6. Why do people living in the countryside have less opportunities to see cultural events?

PRACTICE TASKS

A

What kind of art are the following words connected with? Music, film, dance, painting, architecture or literature?

8

Example: lyrics – music

lyrics	subtitles	portrait	stone	poem	ballerina	conductor
interior design	painter	tango	choreography			
actor	novel	architect	poet	gallery	orchestra	cinema

B

Which programmes from the list below do small children/teenagers/older people like watching on TV? Which are your favourite programmes? Why?

cartoons	fairy tales	comedies	soap opera	thrillers	quiz
science fiction	documentaries	historical films	horror films		
sitcom (situational comedy)	commercials	news	weather forecast	TV shows	talkshow

C

Read the short review of the film below. Decide to whom you would and would NOT recommend it. Choose the best reasons.

MY BIG FAT GREEK WEDDING

Toula Portokalos is 30, Greek and works in her family's restaurant in Chicago. She is not happy with her life and she wants to change it. She starts attending computer classes and becomes a manager of her aunt's travel agency. She meets Ian Miller, an English teacher. They date secretly before her family finds out. Her father is angry that his daughter's boyfriend is not Greek. He has to learn how to accept Ian, Ian has to learn how to accept the noisy Greek family.

starring *Nia Vardalos* and *John Corbett*, Czech subtitles

Start like this:

*I would recommend this film to...
because:*

- it's a film for people who like fun
- it's about the Greeks and their lifestyle
- it's probably romantic

*I wouldn't recommend it to...
because:*

- it's a film for older people
- the actors are not very famous
- it's not dubbed

D Role-play: An Invitation

A: *Invite* your classmates to go with you to a rock concert of your favourite singer/group. If your classmates accept an invitation, arrange time and place of meeting.

Would you like to go...? Shall we meet...? Let's meet...

B: You are invited to go to a rock concert by your classmate. *Accept* an invitation and arrange the details.

Yes, I'd love to. Thank you. Where/when shall we meet...?

C: You are invited to go to a rock concert by your classmate. *Refuse* an invitation and explain your reasons.

I'm afraid I can't... because...

□ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 2 CULTURE AND ART**Task 1**

See useful phrases on page 372.

Read the short reviews of the films. Decide which of them is a comedy, horror or fairy tale. Say which one you would like to recommend to your classmates and explain why.

Johny English

When all top secret agents are killed in an explosion, there is only one agent left called Johny English. He has to find out who stole the crown jewels from the Tower of London.

starring Rowan Atkinson

The Ring

A girl dies a week later after she had watched a scary video. A journalist will travel to the Pacific Northwest to search the origins of the tape and connection with crimes at a horse ranch.

starring Naomi Watts and Martin Henderson

Shrek

A ruler of a faraway land banned the fairy tales. But a green, smelly ogre named Shrek, his friend Donkey and beautiful Princess Fiona will stand in his way.

voices of Mike Myers, Eddie Murphy, Cameron Diaz

Task 2

- What kind of art is favourite among children/teenagers/adults/older people?
- What cultural events do they prefer?
- What kind of art are you interested in? Talk about it and say what cultural events you prefer.

Task 3 Simulation

Your friend has recently bought two tickets for a play *Romeo and Juliet*. He/she has invited you to go with him/her. Unfortunately, you cannot go. Refuse an invitation in a polite way and explain your reasons.

□ VOCABULARY CULTURE AND ART**■ NOUNS**

art – umenie

artwork – umelecké dielo

ball – ples, zábava

ballerina – baletná tanečnica

cartoon – kreslený animovaný film/rozprávka

citizen – obyvateľ mesta, občan

composer – skladateľ

conductor – dirigent

countryside, country – vidiek

decorative art – dekoratívne umenie

documentary – dokumentárny film

drawing – kreslenie

event – udalosť

fairy tale – rozprávka

fan – fanúšik

fine art – výtvarné umenie

invitation – pozvanie

lyrics – texty piesní

novel – román

ogre – obor, ozruta

open-air cinema – amfiteáter

option – voľba, alternatíva

orchestra – orchester

origin – pôvod

painter – maliar

painting – maľovanie

performance – predstavenie

performing art – divadelné, reprodukčné umenie

poet – básnik

reason – dôvod, príčina

ruler – vládca

rural area – vidiecka oblasť

science fiction – vedecko-fantastický (film)

sculptor – sochár

sculpture – sochárstvo

soap opera – telenovela

subtitles – titulky

thriller – detektívka, napínavý film

value – hodnota

village – dedina

way – spôsob

■ ADJECTIVES

air-conditioned – klimatizovaný

angry – nahnevaný

chamber – komorný

dubbed – dabovaný

famous – známy

favourite – obľúbený

immortal – nesmrteľný

important – dôležitý

loud – hlučný

multi-screen – viacplátnový

polite – zdvorilý

scary – strašidelný

smelly – zapáchajúci

so-called – takzvaný

subtitled – (film) s titulkami

■ VERBS

to accept – prijať

to add – pridať

to arrange (time) – dohodnúť si (čas)

to attend (a course) – navštevovať (kurz)

to ban – zakázať

to date – chodiť na rande

to decide – rozhodnúť sa

to enjoy – užiť si, mať potešenie z niečoho

to explain – vysvetliť

to express – vyjadriť

to find out – zistiť

to invite – pozvať

to offer – ponúkať

to perform – vystupovať, účinkovať

to prefer – uprednostňovať

to promote – propagovať

to recommend – odporučiť

to refuse – odmietnuť

to search – pátrať

to solve – vyriešiť

to spend (time) – tráviť (čas)

to steal – (u)kradnúť

■ OTHER

among – medzi (viacerými ako dvoma)

elsewhere – inde

live – naživo

simply – jednoducho

unfortunately – nanešťastie

■ PHRASES

Recommendation – odporúčenie*I would recommend...* Odporučil/-a by som...*I would not recommend...* Neodporučil/-a by som...**Invitation** – pozvanie*Would you like to...? Chceli by ste...?/Chcel/-a by si/...?***Accepting an invitation** – prijatie pozvania*Yes, I'd love to...* Áno, veľmi rád/rada by som...**Refusing an invitation** – odmietnutie pozvania*I'm afraid I can't... because...* Obávam sa, že nemôžem..., pretože...

3 SPORTS AND GAMES

Types of sports and games (typy športov a hier)**Popular sports and games in Slovakia, England, the USA**

(obľúbené športy a hry na Slovensku, v Anglicku, USA)

Asking questions (kladenie otázok)**Interviewing a famous sportsman** (rozhovor so známym športovcom)

① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. Give the names of some British sports.
2. What sports are you interested in?
3. Who is your favourite sportsman/sportswoman? Why?

There are **indoor** and **outdoor** sports. Gymnastics is a typical indoor sport. It can be **practised** all the year round in **gyms**. Athletics, cycling, **hiking** and most **aquatic** (water) **sports**, like **sailing**, **regatta**, **water-skiing**, **diving**, wind-surfing and others are outdoor sports practised mainly during the summer. Swimming is also a typical summer sport. In winter it is possible to practise it in **indoor pools**. Sportsmen practise winter sports, such as skiing, **skating**, snow-boarding and **to-bogganing**. Skiers can practise the **giant slalom**, **downhill racing** or ski jumps in **ski resorts** where there are good snow conditions. In Slovakia there are a lot of ski resorts in *the High and Low Tatras*.

Games are played by at least two players. The most popular games are football, rugby, hockey, tennis, golf, cricket, basketball, volleyball, badminton, squash and handball. The British are sport-loving people. The **Cup Final** is the most important football match of the year in England. It is played at the *Wembley Stadium* near London. The Slovaks are good at hockey. A lot of Slovak hockey players play in *American and Canadian National Hockey League* teams. Becoming a professional hockey player is one of the most frequent dreams of Slovak boys. Tennis, another popular game, is played on courts. The most famous tennis **tournament is held at Wimbledon** every year. The **championships** are watched by thousands of people **all over the world**. The most popular games in America are baseball, American football, rugby, basketball, tennis, squash, boxing, **wrestling** and ice hockey. Squash is a game for two players played in a **four-walled court** with a special racket and a soft ball.

Most people do sports because it is good for their body and **mind**. Some sport activities, such as aerobics, **jogging**, swimming or **body building**, are preferred by those who want to **lose weight**. Doing a sport is a good way of spending free time. Professional sports are often **connected with** overtraining or **doping**. During important **competitions**, such as *the Olympic Games*, sportsmen are tested and may


easily be disqualified. This has a negative **impact** on their career. **Success** in professional sports is nowadays connected with money and popularity.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. Name three summer sports and three winter sports.
2. What is the difference between sports and games?
3. Which sports and games are popular in America?
4. Where does the best tennis championship of the world take place every year?
5. Name some negative phenomena of the professional sport.
6. Which sports and games are favourite in Slovakia?

□ PRACTICE TASKS

A Which sports from the list below are individual sports and which are played in teams?

triathlon tennis squash marathon running 100 metres 
rugby handball golf ice hockey cricket cross-country skiing
basketball baseball badminton

B Which sports and games can be practised in these places? 

1. on the ice rink
2. on the courts
3. in gymnasiums
4. in indoor pools
5. in ski resorts
6. in a four-walled court

C Which sports and games are described below? 

1. It is a racquet sport which is played by two players in a four-walled court with a small rubber ball.
2. It is a sport played on the ice rink by two teams of six players. They use long sticks to hit a puck to score goals.
3. It is a sport played by two teams of five active players who try to score points by shooting the ball through the basket from above.
4. It is a game played between two players or two teams of two players. Players use a racquet to strike the ball over a net into opponent's court.

D

Which are the qualities of a good sportsman/sportswoman? Choose from the list below and discuss them in class. Start like this:

Example: A good sportsman/sportswoman should be...

physically strong healthy competitive fair responsible open
famous clever hard-working representative brave modest
creative selfish successful careful ambitious friendly

E

Match the questions and answers from an interview by a sports reporter with a professional badminton player. 

A

Example: Will you come to the tournament next year? c

1. Do you think that this tournament is well organised?
2. When did you start playing badminton?
3. Why did you start playing badminton professionally?
4. How much do you practise?
5. How are you feeling before this tournament?
6. Who will win today?

B

- a) I train about four hours a day.
- b) When I was a small boy.
- c) Hopefully, yes.
- d) Because I wanted to become the champion.
- e) I feel fine. Thank you.
- f) I will, I hope.
- g) Yes. I think so.

□ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 3 SPORTS AND GAMES

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372.

Look at the pictures below. Name the sports people are practising. Compare them and say:

- when people can practise these sports,
- where people can practise them,
- which of them is risky and why,
- which of them is more interesting for you and why.



Task 2

Talk about the qualities of professional sportsmen/sportswomen. Talk about the advantages and disadvantages of being a professional sportsman/sports-woman.

Task 3 Role-play

You: You are a sports journalist from the magazine called Sport. You want to write a short article about a well-known Slovak ice hockey player Jozef Stümpel. Make an interview with him and find out about the beginning of his career, teams he played for, biggest life success and his future plans.

Your partner: You are a well-known Slovak ice hockey player Jozef Stümpel. A sports journalist wants to write an article about you for the magazine called Sport. Answer his questions.

□ VOCABULARY SPORTS AND GAMES

■ NOUNS

article – článok
body building – kulturistika
career – kariéra
champion – víťaz
championship – šampionát
competition – súťaž
court – kurt
Cup Final – finále o pohár
diving – potápanie
doping – doping
downhill race – zjazd (napr. na lyžiach)
jogging – beh
giant slalom – obří slalom
gym (gymnasium) – telocvičňa
hiking – pešia turistika
ice rink – ľadová plocha (klzisko)
impact – dopad
indoor pool – krytá plaváreň
interview – rozhovor
magazine – časopis
mind – myseľ
pool – bazén
race – preteky
regatta – regata, veslárske preteky
sailing – plachtenie
skating – korčuľovanie
ski resort – lyžiarske stredisko
success – úspech
teahogganing – sánkovanie
tournament – turnaj
water-skiing – vodné lyžovanie
wrestling – zápasníctvo

■ ADJECTIVES

ambitious – ambiciózny

aquatic – vodný

brave – statočný

careful – opatrný

clever – bystrý

competitive – tu; ctížiadostivý; konkuren-
cieschopný, súťaživý

connected with – súvisiaci s

creative – tvorivý

fair – čestný

famous – známy

four-walled – so štyrmi stenami

friendly – priateľský

hard-working – usilovný, pracovitý

healthy – zdravý

indoor – vnútorný

outdoor – vonkajší

risky – riskantný

known – známy

modest – skromný

representative – reprezentatívny

responsible – spoľahlivý

selfish – sebecký

successful – úspešný

■ VERBS

to find out – zistiť

to fit – hodiť sa

to hold – usporiadať, organizovať

to lose (weight) – schudnúť

to practise – trénovať; vykonávať

to take place – konať sa

to win – zvíťaziť

■ OTHER

all over the world – po celom svete

hopefully – snáď, dúfajme

4 HOUSING

Living in a town and in the country (byvanie v meste a na vidieku)

Types of housing (rôzne druhy byvania)

Housing in Slovakia, Britain and the USA (byvanie na Slovensku, v Británii a v USA)

My dream house (predstavy o vlastnom byvaní)

Describing a house (opis domu)

Advantages and disadvantages (výhody a nevýhody)



① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. Where do you live?
2. What does *home* mean to you?
3. What is your idea of a perfect house?

Living in towns and cities has **advantages** and **disadvantages**. On the one hand, there are many **possibilities** for jobs, education, sports and **social life**. There are many cultural **events** there, such as concerts, operas and theatre **performances**. People can visit cafés, pubs and night clubs. There are many shops, shopping malls and hospitals too. **On the other hand**, city **inhabitants** live in **polluted**, **noisy**, **crowded** and **hectic** places. There is often a lot of **mess** and **dirt** in the streets. Many city people live in **housing estates**, which is not an ideal place for children. There is also a high **level** of crime.

Many Slovaks live in flats. Some of them have **cottages** in the mountains where they like spending their weekends. The British prefer to live in houses. There are **several** types of houses in Britain, for example **terraced** houses which are built in a **row**, **semi-detached houses** that have one **common** wall, **detached houses** that stand by themselves and bungalows. Some Slovak houses are big enough for two families – grandparents, their children and grandchildren.

The **furniture** in British and Slovak rooms is not very different these days. The sitting room has a **settee** and **armchairs**, a **wall unit** and a hi-fi system, television and video, a **bookcase** and a coffee table. There is a **carpet** on the floor to make the room warm and **comfortable**. Most of the British houses have a **fireplace** because of cold weather. In the kitchen there are kitchen **cupboards**, a **sink**, a **cooker**, a **fridge**. There is also a table with chairs or **stools**. The floor in the kitchen is often **tiled**. Slovak families usually have their **washing machine** in the bathroom, the British in the kitchen. The bedroom has a double bed, **built-in wardrobes**, a **dressing table** with a **mirror** and a stool in front of the table.

In the USA an **average** American family lives in a large house with many rooms. In large American cities, many people live in downtown **apartments** (flats). Like the

British, Americans do not usually stay in the same house their **whole** lives. Some families like to **move** to **other** parts of the country and change houses every ten years.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. What are the advantages of living in towns and cities?
2. What are the disadvantages of living in towns and cities?
3. What are basic types of houses in Britain?
4. What furniture is usually placed in a sitting room?
5. Where does the majority of American people live?
6. Do you like the idea of frequent moving from place to place?

PRACTICE TASKS

A

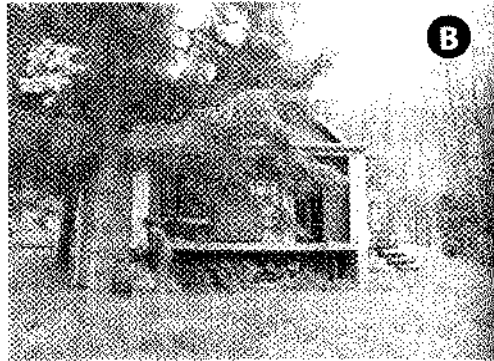
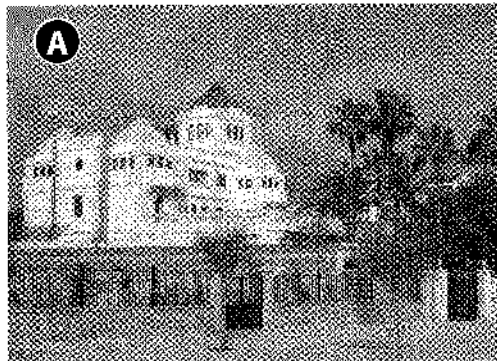
Put a tick (✓) to those things which you have in the place where you live. Circle those things which you would like to have once in your dream house. Talk about them.

garden	swimming pool	tennis court	double garage	sauna
fireplace	office	balcony	wine cellar	jacuzzi
massage shower	winter garden	carpet	cinema room	bar
leather settee	game room	fitness	hi-fi system	

B

Look at the pictures of the houses below. How would you describe them? Start like this:

- * In the picture, there is a/there are some...
- * In the picture, I can see a (house/cottage).
- * It is built/situated somewhere in (a city/countryside/near the beach/in the forest...).
- * I think that it is (large, luxurious, expensive, cheap, new, old, beautiful...).
- * The owner of this house is probably...
- * Inside the house there are (how many rooms, what rooms, what furniture).
- * Outside the house there is a (swimming pool, garden, park, fountain, lake, forest...).
- * The most beautiful part of the house is (winter garden, balcony, wine cellar...).
- * I like/don't like this house because...



C

Now compare and contrast the houses in the pictures above. Say what are the advantages and disadvantages of living in both places. Talk about public transport, schooling possibilities, social life, cultural events, shops and health care.

- There are advantages/disadvantages of...
- The first advantage/disadvantage is...
- Another advantage/disadvantage is...
- The biggest advantage/disadvantage is...

D

Your family wants to sell a flat/house where you are living now. Your friend's parents are interested in it and they are thinking about buying it. Describe it using the expressions below. Then draw the flat/house plan and explain what rooms there are.

- well-situated/not far from the city centre/a three-room flat/on the fourth floor/good view/southern orientation/there is a lift/good neighbours/easy parking/bus stop is in walking distance/corner shop is opposite/your school is 10 minutes walk/sports facilities (a football stadium, tennis courts and gym) are nearby
- central heating/balcony/reconstructed bathroom/new windows/safety entrance door/modern furniture/light colours/carpet and tiles on the floor/built-in wardrobe

Draw your plan here:

□ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 4 HOUSING

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372.

Look at the pictures below and describe them. Say what types of houses you can see and what countries they are typical for. Talk about advantages and disadvantages of living in these houses.



Task 2

Talk about the place for living you are dreaming about. Say

- what type of flat/house it would be,
- where it would be situated,
- how you would furnish it,
- what colours would be dominant.

Task 3 Simulation

Your parents decided to sell their flat in a city because they want to buy a small, older house in a village. You are not very happy about it. Tell them about disadvantages connected with public transport, schooling possibilities, social life, cultural events, shops and health care in a village.

□ VOCABULARY HOUSING

■ NOUNS

advantage – výhoda
apartment – byt (amer. angl.)
armchair – kreslo
average – priemer, priemerný
bath – vaňa
beach – pláž
bookcase – knižnica (nábytok)
carpet – koberec
cellar – pivnica
central heating – ústredné kúrenie
cooker – šporák
cottage – chata
cupboard – príborník, kredenc, skrinka
detached house – samostatne stojaci dom
dirt – špina
disadvantage – nevýhoda
distance – vzdialenosť
double garage – dvojgaráž
dressing table – toaletný stolík
event – udalosť
fireplace – krb
floor – poschodie
forest – les
fountain – fontána
fridge – chladnička
furniture – nábytok
health care – zdravotná starostlivosť
housing estate – sídlisko
inhabitant – obyvateľ
lake – jazero
leather – koža
level – úroveň
lift – výťah
location – poloha, miesto
mess – špina
mirror – zrkadlo
neighbour – sused
owner – majiteľ
performance – predstavenie
possibility – možnosť
public transport – verejná doprava
row – rad

safety entrance door – bezpečnostné vchodové dvere
schooling possibilities – možnosti vzdelávania
semi-detached house – dvojdom
settee – pohovka, diván
shower – sprcha
sink – výlevka
social life – spoločenský život
sport facilities – možnosti športového vyžitia
stool – stolička bez operadla
swimming pool – bazén
tennis court – tenisový kurt
view – výhľad
wall unit – nábytková stena
wardrobe – šatník
washing machine – práčka
wine cellar – vínná pivnica

■ ADJECTIVES

basic – základný
built-in – zabudovaný
comfortable – pohodlný
common – spoločný
connected with – spojený s
crowded – prepustený
expensive – drahý
frequent – častý
hectic – rušný
large – rozľahlý
luxurious – luxusný
noisy – hlučný
other – iný
polluted – znečistený
several – niekoľko, zopár
situated – umiestnený
terraced (house) – radový (dom)
tiled – vydláždený
whole – celý

■ VERBS

to furnish – zariadiť nábytkom
to move – presťahovať sa
to place – umiestniť

■ OTHER

inside the house – vnútri v dome
on the one hand – na jednej strane (pri porovnávaní)
on the other hand – na druhej strane (pri porovnávaní)
outside the house – vonku/mimo domu
probably – pravdepodobne

■ PHRASES

Describing a house – opis domu
In the picture, there is a/there are some...
 Na obrázku sa nachádza...
In the picture, I can see a/some... Na obrázku vidím nejaký/nejakú/nejaké...
It is built/situated somewhere in... Je postavený/-á/-é/umiestnený/-á/-é niekde v ...
I think that it is... Myslím, že je to...
The owner of this house is probably...
 Majiteľom tohto domu je pravdepodobne...

Inside the house, there is a/there are some...
 Vnútri v dome sa nachádza/jú...
Outside the house, there is a/there are some... Pri dome sa nachádza/jú...
The most beautiful part of the house is...
 Najkrajšou časťou domu je...
I like/don't like this house because... Páči sa mi/nepáči sa mi tento dom, pretože...

Advantages and disadvantages – výhody a nevýhody
It has many/some advantages. Má to veľa/niekoľko výhod.
The first advantage/disadvantage is...
 Prvou výhodou/nevýhodou je...
Another advantage/disadvantage is...
 Ďalšou výhodou/nevýhodou je...
The biggest advantage/disadvantage is...
 Najväčšou výhodou/nevýhodou je...

5 SHOPPING AND SERVICES

Shopping possibilities (možnosti nakupovania)

Shopping centres versus small specialised shops (obchodné centrá verus malé špecializované obchody)

Services – post, bank (služby – pošta, banka)

Complaining and apologising (sťažnosť a ospravedlnenie sa)

Expressing preference (vyjadrenie toho, čo uprednostňujeme)



① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. Do you like shopping?
2. Where do you normally buy food, clothes or shoes?
3. What kinds of services do you use most often?

Shopping is an activity people love or hate. Nowadays, people can **do shopping** in **huge** shopping centres or in small **specialised** shops.

A **shopping mall** is a large indoor shopping centre with different types of shops, cinemas, wellness centres and bowling centres. They also have cafés, snack bars, restaurants where people can relax after doing shopping. They are open late in the evening and on weekends. **Department stores** sell their **customers** all kinds of foods, **clothes**, shoes, toys, **sporting goods**, cosmetics, books and **furniture** all under one **roof**. Many Slovaks do their shopping in hypermarkets, such as *Carrefour* or *Tesco*.

There are still some small specialised shops which **save** your **time**, energy and money too. **Corner shops** sell different **foodstuffs** (tea, coffee, bottled beer, juice, **sweets**, vegetables, fruit) and **dairy products** (milk, butter, **cream**, cheese and yoghurt). They also sell newspapers and magazines. **Various kinds** of fresh bread, **rolls**, **buns** and cakes can be bought at the **baker's**. **Butcher's** sell **fresh**, **canned** or **frozen** meat and meat products (salami, ham, **sausages**). Fresh vegetables and all kinds of fruit can be bought at the **greengrocer's**. Many people prefer shopping at the **market** where there is a **wide choice** of potatoes, **cabbage**, **beans**, carrots, tomatoes, apples, **pears**, oranges or bananas. The **chemist's** is a specialised shop where people can buy **medicines** but also cosmetics. Boutiques sell different dresses, **shirts**, **skirts**, blouses, pullovers, jeans and so on. Shoes, belts and bags are **sold** in shoe shops.

In everyday life, people also need different kinds of services performed by **hairdressers**, **car-mechanics**, garden designers, **plumbers**, **lawyers**, **real estate agents** or doctors. Almost everybody **uses** postal services. The post **distributes** letters, postcards, telegrams and **parcels** to the **recipients**. If the post cannot **deliver** a letter or parcel for some reason, it is sent back to the **sender**. We can also use postal

services to send money. In the past, people sent many letters and postcards by post. Nowadays, they send e-mail letters, e-mail postcards or **text messages**. Banks **provide financial services** to the people. We can **pay cash** or **by bank card**. In Slovakia it is not usual to pay **by cheque**. Most people have a **current account** in a bank. Their **earnings** regularly come to their account. When they need cash, they **withdraw money** from the account through a **cash machine**, using a bank card. If we need to **borrow money**, the bank can give us a **loan**. If the bank **lends** us money for building a house, the money is called a **mortgage**.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. What are shopping malls?
2. What can you buy at the grocer's/baker's/butcher's/greengrocer's/chemist's?
3. What kinds of services does the post office provide?
4. How can we pay for goods or services?
5. What can you do with a bank card?
6. What is the "mortgage"?

PRACTICE TASKS

A Which specialised shops sell the following goods?

- Example: flour, oil, eggs, sweets, coffee, yoghurt corner shop
1. cakes, buns, rolls, bread _____
 2. sausages, ham, salami, chicken _____
 3. beans, melons, apples, tomatoes, cabbage _____
 4. body lotion, soap, shampoo, aspirin _____
 5. dresses, skirts, blouses, jeans, shirts _____

B Who says the following lines? A shop assistant (SA) or a customer (C)?

- Example: Good morning, madam. How may I help you? SA
1. I would like to buy a nice jumper for myself. _____
 2. That will be £22.50, please. _____
 3. Oh, I don't know. I think I take M size. _____
 4. Sorry, but we only have those in small sizes. _____
 5. What size are you? _____
 6. Okay, I'll take it. _____

7. Where may I try it on?
8. And here is your change, four pounds, one penny.
9. Oh, it's a bit small. Do you have it in bigger size?
10. Does it fit?
11. How much is it?
12. Thank you for your shopping. Goodbye.

C

Complain about the quality of the jumper which you bought in the department store last week. It lost shape and colour after the first washing. You want your money back. What would you say as a customer? How would you react as a shop assistant? Finish the sentences below.

Customer:

I would like to complain about...
I am not happy with...
I was very disappointed when I...

Shop assistant:

I am very sorry that you were...
Of course, we will give you...
I am afraid that I cannot...

D

Where do you prefer doing shopping? In large shopping centres or in small specialised shops? Express your preference and explain your reasons.

Example: I prefer doing shopping in large shopping centres because I can find everything under one roof.

You can use:

I prefer... because...
I like... more than/less than... because...
I enjoy... because...

SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 5 SHOPPING AND SERVICES**Task 1**

See useful phrases on page 372.

Read the text below. Talk about the pros and cons of doing shopping in large shopping centres and in small specialised shops. Where do you and your family prefer doing shopping?

Nowadays, more and more customers prefer shopping in hypermarkets, department stores or shopping malls. It is very difficult for small specialised shops to compete with them and that is why a lot of small shops close down. People who prefer small shops say that the goods are fresher and the contact with the shop assistants is much more personal. They also do not spend too much time shopping. On the other hand, big stores have a bigger choice of goods, usually at better prices and everything can be bought in one place. Big shopping centres are often criticised because they produce the consumer society and shopaholics who often buy things that they do not need.

Task 2

Talk about what you like/do not like about doing shopping. Say

- who does shopping in your family,
- where and how often you usually buy clothes and shoes,
- when the best sales are.

Task 3 Role-play

You: You bought an expensive T-shirt in the department store last week. When you came home, you found big spots on it. You are very disappointed about its quality. Go to the department store and complain about it. You want your money back.

Your partner: You are a shop assistant in a department store. Your customer came to complain about the quality of the T-shirt which he/she bought last week. Apologise to the customer and suggest some compensation. You cannot give him/her money back.

□ VOCABULARY SHOPPING AND SERVICES

■ NOUNS

baker's – pekárstvo
 bank card – banková platobná karta
 bean – fazuľa
 body lotion – telové mlieko
 bun – buchta, brioška
 butcher's – mäsiarstvo
 cabbage – kapusta
 car-mechanic – automechanik
 cash machine – bankomat
 chemist's – lekáreň, drogéria
 clothes – oblečenie
 consumer society – konzumná spoločnosť
 corner shop – malý obchod (na rohu)
 cream – smotana
 current account – bežný účet
 customer – zákazník
 dairy products – mliečne výrobky
 department store – obchodný dom
 dress – šaty
 earnings – úspory
 flour – múka
 foodstuffs – potraviny
 furniture – nábytok
 greengrocer's – obchod so zeleninou a ovocím
 hairdresser – kaderník/-čka
 lawyer – právnik
 loan – pôžička
 market – tržnica
 medicine – liek
 mortgage – hypotéka
 parcel – balík
 pear – hruška
 plumber – údržbár
 real estate agent – obchodník s nehnuteľnosťami
 recipient – prijímateľ
 roll – rohlík
 roof – strecha
 sale – výpredaj
 sausage – párok, klobása

sender – odosielateľ

shape – tvar

shirt – košeľa

shopaholic – človek závislý na nakupovaní

shopping mall – nákupné centrum

skirt – sukňa

soap – mydlo

sporting goods – športový tovar

spot – škvrna, flak

store – obchod

sweets – sladkosti

text message – SMS

■ ADJECTIVES

canned – v konzerve

disappointed – sklamaný

financial – finančný

fresh – čerstvý

frozen – zamrznutý

huge – obrovský

personal – osobný

specialised – špecializovaný

■ VERBS

to borrow money (from) – požičať si peniaze (od)

to close down – zatvoriť

to compete with – súťažiť s

to deliver – odoslať

to distribute – rozposielať

to do shopping – nakupovať

to lend – požičať niekomu

to pay by bank card – platiť bankovou platobnou kartou

to pay by cheque – platiť šekom

to pay (in) cash – platiť v hotovosti

to provide services – poskytovať služby

to save (time) – šetriť (čas)

to sell – predávať

to use – použiť, využiť

to withdraw money (from) – vybrať si peniaze (z)

■ OTHER

a wide choice of – široký výber (čoho)

on the other hand – na druhej strane (pri porovnávaní)

pros and cons – za a proti

various kinds of – rôzne druhy (čoho)

■ PHRASES

shop assistant – predavač/-ka

How may I help you? Ako vám môžem pomôcť?

What size are you? Akú nosíte veľkosť?

Does it fit? Je vám to dobré?

Thank you for your shopping. Ďakujeme, že ste u nás nakupovali.

Customer – zákazník/-čka

I would like to buy... Chcel/-a by som si kúpiť...

Where may I try it on? Kde si to môžem vyskúšať?

Do you have it in bigger size? Máte väčšiu veľkosť?

Complaining – sťažnosť

I am not happy with... Nie som spokojný/-á s...

I was very disappointed when I... Bol/-a som sklamaný/-á...

I would like to complain about... Chcel/-a by som sa sťažovať kvôli...

Apologising – ospravedlnenie sa

I am afraid that I cannot... Obávam sa, že nemôžem...

I am sorry, but... Je mi ľúto, ale...

Expressing preference – vyjadrenie toho, čo uprednostňujeme

I prefer... Uprednostňujem/Mám radšej...

I enjoy... Mám rád/-a/Mám radosť z...

6 HEALTH CARE

Human body (ľudské telo)

At the doctor's (u lekára)

How to keep fit (ako zostať zdravý)

Diseases (choroby)

Expressing sympathy (vyjadrenie súcitu)



① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. What do you do to stay healthy?
2. When do you go to see a doctor?
3. What are the most dangerous diseases?

More and more people know that good health **means** a longer and happier life. Nowadays, people **care about** their health more than they did in the past. They eat healthier food, practise different kinds of sports and try to **avoid stressful** situations. A healthy, strong and beautiful body is an ideal for many people. Being in a good **shape** and good **mental health** are the **basic conditions** for good life. Doctors often say that **headaches** and **stomachaches** are the **results** of depression. **Bad eating habits**, **lack of** physical activities and stress are negative factors which **cause** serious **diseases**.

When we are ill, we usually see a doctor (**general practitioner**). Sometimes, we need to have an **appointment** with a specialist. The doctor **examines** our body, asks about the **symptoms** and usually **prescribes** some medication on a **prescription**. Then, we go to the **pharmacy** to get our antibiotics, **painkillers** or vitamins. When the illness is too serious, the **patient** is taken to the hospital to be operated. **Basic health care** is free in Slovakia for all people who pay their **insurance** monthly.

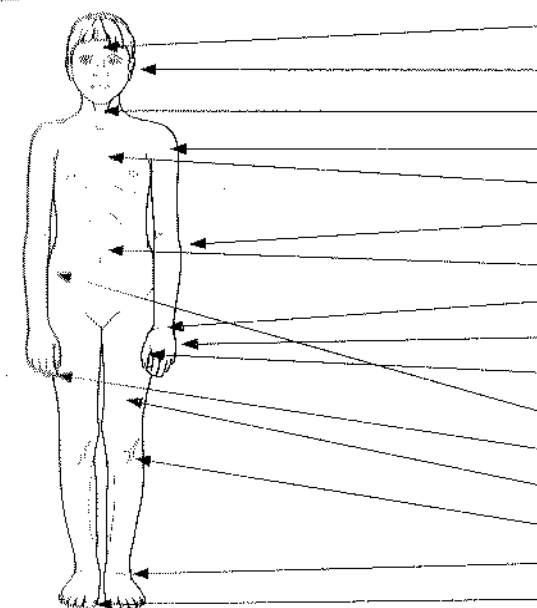
Everybody **goes through** various diseases during their childhood and adult life. Most of the diseases are not serious and do not **take a long time** to **cure**. In the past, diseases, such as **flu**, **tuberculosis** or **scarlet fever**, killed many people. Nowadays, there exist **vaccines** against most of them. There are diseases which we have problems to cure or cannot cure at all yet. **Cancer** is one of them. More than 3.6 million people are **infected with** AIDS. Many countries in the world spend a lot of money on **public campaigns** and **advertisements** which **warn of the dangers**. **Publicity** **advises** heterosexuals to use a condom and have one sexual partner only.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. How do people care about their health?
2. What do people do when they are ill?
3. What does a doctor do when a patient comes to see him/her?
4. What kinds of epidemics killed people in the past?
5. What diseases cannot be cured at all?
6. How can people protect themselves not to be infected with AIDS?

PRACTICE TASKS

A Name the parts for the body marked. The first letter of the words will help you. →



Example: F O R E H E A D

1. E _ _ _
2. N _ _ _
3. S _ _ _ _ _
4. C _ _ _ _
5. E _ _ _ _
6. S _ _ _ _ _
7. W _ _ _ _
8. P _ _ _ _
9. T _ _ _ _
10. H _ _ _
11. F _ _ _ _ _
12. T _ _ _ _
13. K _ _ _
14. A _ _ _ _
15. T _ _ _

D Put a tick ✓ to those diseases and aches which you went through. Talk about their symptoms.

Diseases and aches:

flu stomachache toothache headache pneumonia

Symptoms:

temperature insomnia weakness cold cough sore throat
loss of appetite sweating pain shiver

C Who says the following lines? A doctor (D) or a patient (P)?*Example:* The pain started last night. P

1. What's the matter with you? _____
2. I've got a terrible cough. _____
3. Where does it hurt? _____
4. Let me examine you. _____
5. Do I need to see a specialist too? _____
6. I took an aspirin last night. _____
7. Have you got a temperature? _____
8. I can't move my leg at all. _____
9. Don't worry, it's not very serious. _____
10. You must stay in bed for two weeks. _____
11. I will prescribe you some medicine. _____
12. I took the temperature and it was high. _____
13. The nurse will give you an injection. _____

D

Express sympathy to your friend who complains about his health troubles. Use the following sentences:

Expressing sympathy:*I'm sorry to hear that.**I hope it's not serious.**How bad!**Example:*

How are you feeling?

I feel sick.

I'm sorry to hear that.

1. I've got a terrible headache.
2. I think I have a temperature.
3. It hurts when I press it here.
4. I broke my leg.
5. I will be operated tomorrow.

SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 6 HEALTH CARE**Task 1**

See useful phrases on page 372.

Look at the pictures below. Compare and contrast the lifestyles of these two young people. Talk about how they care about their health. What do you do to stay fit and healthy? Say which lifestyle you prefer and why.

**Task 2**

Talk about

- * the most dangerous diseases,
- * the most frequent diseases among young people,
- * how you feel when you have flu and what you do,
- * what your doctor does and says when you go to see him/her.

Task 3 Role-play

You: You have just returned home from your summer holidays which you spent in Egypt. You are not feeling well because you ate some strange food there. Complain to your partner about your health troubles and describe all symptoms you have.

Your partner: Your friend has just returned home from his summer holidays which he/she spent in Egypt. He/She feels sick. Ask what troubles him/her. Express sympathy and give him/her some advice what to do to feel better.

□ VOCABULARY HEALTH CARE

■ NOUNS

advertisement – rekláma
 ankle – členok
 appointment – schôdzka, objednanie sa u lekára
 campaign – kampaň
 cancer – rakovina
 chest – hrud'
 cold – nádcha, prechladnutie
 condition – podmienka
 cough – kašeľ
 danger – nebezpečie
 disease – choroba
 ear – ucho
 eating habits – stravovacie náviky
 elbow – lakeť
 finger – prst
 flu – chrípka
 forehead – čelo
 general practitioner – všeobecný praktický lekár
 headache – bolesť hlavy
 health – zdravie
 health care – zdravotná starostlivosť
 health troubles – zdravotné problémy
 hip – bok
 insomnia – nespavosť
 insurance – poistenie
 knee – koleno
 lack of – nedostatok
 loss of appetite – strata chuti
 neck – krk
 pain – bolesť
 painkillers – lieky proti bolesti
 palm – dlaň
 patient – pacient
 pharmacy – lekáreň
 pneumonia – zápal pľúc
 prescription – recept
 publicity – publicita, propagácia
 result – výsledok
 scarlet fever – šarlach
 shape – forma
 shiver – triaška, zimnica

shoulder – plece
 sore throat – boľavé hrdlo
 stomachache – bolesť brucha
 symptom – príznak
 thigh – stehno
 thumb – palec na ruke
 toe – palec na nohe
 toothache – bolesť zuba
 tuberculosis – tuberkulóza
 vaccine – vakcína
 weakness – slabosť
 wrist – zápästie

■ ADJECTIVES

basic – základný
 dangerous – nebezpečný
 frequent – častý
 mental – duševný
 public – verejný
 stressful – stresujúci

■ VERBS

to advise – radiť
 to avoid – vyhýbať sa
 to care about – starať sa o
 to cause – spôsobiť
 to cure – vyliečiť
 to examine – vyšetriť
 to feel sick – cítiť nevoľnosť
 to go through – prejsť (niečím)
 to infect with – nakaziť sa s
 to mean – znamenať
 to prescribe – predpísať
 to take a long time – trvať dlho
 to warn (of) – varovať (pred čím)

■ PHRASES

Doctor – lekár/-ka
 What's the matter with you? Čo vás bolí?
 Where does it hurt? Kde to bolí?
 Let me examine you. Dovoľte, aby som vás vyšetril/-a.
 Have you got a temperature? Máte teplotu?
 Don't worry, it's not serious. Neobávajte sa, nie je to nič vážne.

You must stay in bed. Musíte ležať.
 I will prescribe you some medicine. Predpíšem vám nejaké lieky.
 The nurse will give you an injection. Sestrička vám dá injekciu.

Patient – pacient/-ka
 I've got a cough/backache/a pain... Mám kašeľ/bolí ma chrbát/mám bolesti v...
 Do I need to see a specialist too? Musím ísť aj na odborné vyšetrenie?

I took an aspirín. Užil/-a som aspirín.
 I can't move my leg at all. Vôbec nemôžem hýbať nohou.
 I took the temperature and it was high. Zmeral/-a som si teplotu a bola vysoká.

Expressing sympathy – prejavenie súcitu
 I'm sorry to hear that. Je mi to ľúto.
 I hope it's not serious. Dúfam, že to nie je vážne.
 How bad! To je zlé!

7 TRAVELLING

Getting ready for a journey (priprava na cestu)

Means of transport (dopravné prostriedky)

Orientation in town (orientácia v meste)

Expressing preference (vyjadrenie toho, čo uprednostňujeme)

Asking and giving directions (pytanie sa na cestu a udanie smeru)



① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. How do you usually travel to school?
2. Do you have a driving licence?
3. What do you always take with you when you travel for holidays?

People **travel** to work, to school, **on business** or **for pleasure**. When people **travel abroad** for holidays, they often **address travel agencies** to **arrange** travel, **accommodation**, **insurance** and a **travel guide**. Slovaks do not need **passports** any more to travel to the EU countries. They only need their **identification cards**. Last minute or first moment **offers** are very popular.

Airports, **railway stations**, **seaports**, and bus stops are always full of people travelling for long or short **distances**. Travelling by air is **exciting**, **fast**, **comfortable**, relatively **safe** but expensive. **Passengers** need their **flight tickets** and **passports**. People and their **luggage** is **checked** when they go through the **customs**. During the **flight**, passengers are offered some meals, **refreshments** and drinks by **stewards** and **stewardesses**.

People **commute** by trains to work or school. They are cheap, less **polluting** and safe but not very clean and comfortable. Slow trains stop at every station. Fast trains and **intercity trains** are more comfortable for longer distances. They do not stop at every station. Trains on longer **journeys** often have a **sleeping car** and a **dining car**.

Coaches are buses for long-distance travel. They are fast and comfortable and not very expensive. In our country many people prefer coaches to trains. During the holidays, travel agencies offer many coach trips to **mountain** or **seaside resorts**. When travelling by coach to London, passengers can have an interesting experience of **crossing the English Channel** by ferry.

Cars are comfortable and **quick**; they are not safe, they **pollute the environment** and are expensive. It is interesting that the number of cars, drivers and **highways** is higher every year. In Slovakia the age limit for a **driving licence** is eighteen. Careful driving, respecting **speed limits** and strict alcohol tests **reduce traffic accidents**.

Many people like travelling by bike. Some go to school by bike; others prefer **cycling** as a sport or a hobby. Many people go on a cycling holiday. Cycling is healthy and exciting.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. Why do people travel?
2. What do travel agencies arrange?
3. What is the most suitable way of travelling for long distances?
4. What happens at the airport before passengers get on the plane?
5. What are the advantages/disadvantages of travelling by train?
6. Which of the ways of travelling is the most dangerous?

PRACTICE TASKS

A Make the pairs from the following words.

Example: bike-road

car	ship	plane	train	coach	airport	bus station
railway station	seaport	motorway				

B What are the opposites of the following adjectives? Find the pairs.

Example: exciting – boring

expensive	boring	dangerous	polluted	slow	fast	exciting
safe	cheap	clean				

C What are the comparative and superlative forms of the adjectives above?

Example: exciting – more exciting – the most exciting
fast – faster – the fastest

D How would you travel to the following destinations? By car/coach/ship/train/plane? Explain your preference.

Example: To Croatia, I would certainly travel by car because I find it the fastest and the most interesting way. There is also a new motorway up to Makarska.

Croatia	Greece	Thailand	the Netherlands	the Czech Republic
the USA	Sardinia	Spain	England	

E Your friend and you are going to travel to England to do some summer jobs. Your friend wants to travel by coach. Persuade him/her to travel by plane. Use the phrases below.

I prefer travelling by... because...

I think we should travel by...

I'd like to travel by... because I find it...

We'd rather travel by...

Travelling by... would be (more/less expensive, slower) than travelling by...

F What do you usually pack when you travel to the mountains? Choose only 5 items from the list below which you think are very important to you. Compare them with your classmates. Explain the reasons of your choice.

comb trainers raincoat jeans camera passport toothbrush slippers
pyjamas socks towel soap notebook torch sleeping bag knife
chewing gums sunglasses bottle of water mobile phone CDs lighter

G Orientation in town. Translate the following sentences to Slovak.

Excuse me, how do I get to...? _____

Go straight. _____

Go along the road as far as... _____

How far is it? _____

Go to the end of the street. _____

Turn right/turn left... _____

It's near/next to/opposite/between... _____

You can't miss it. _____

It's not far. _____

It's about 10 minutes' walk. _____

It's five stops from here. _____

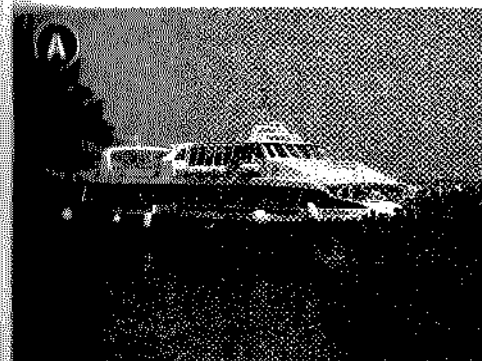
Take the bus. _____

SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 7 TRAVELLING

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372.

Look at the pictures below. Describe the means of transport which you can see. Talk about advantages and disadvantages of using them. Talk about possible reasons why people travel this way and discuss the possible destinations.



Task 2

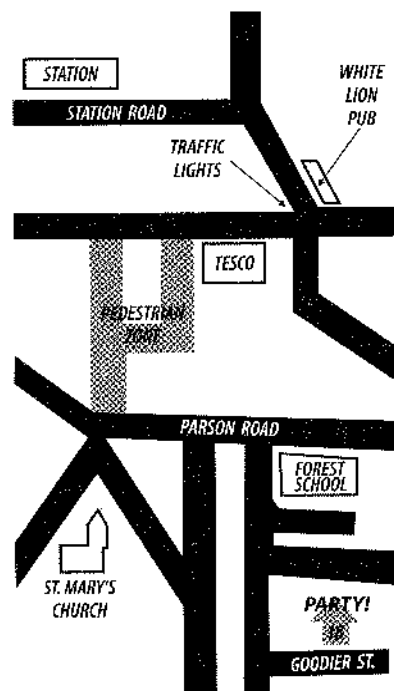
Talk about your travelling experience. Talk about

- your favourite country you have been to,
- the reasons of your journey,
- how you travelled there,
- where you stayed,
- who you travelled with.

Name five things which you always pack when you travel abroad.

Task 3 Simulation

You have invited some friends to a party in your new flat, but they don't know where to go. Give them clear instructions for how to walk there from the station. See the map.



Your notes:

VOCABULARY TRAVELLING

NOUNS

accommodation – ubytovanie
 advantage – výhoda
 airport – letisko
 camera – fotoaparát
 chewing gum – žuvačka
 coach – diaľkový autobus
 comb (čítaj kóum) – hrebeň
 cottage – chata
 country – vidiek
 customs – colnica
 cycling – bicyklovanie
 destination – destinácia, cieľ cesty
 dining car – jedáľenský vagón
 disadvantage – nevýhoda
 distance – vzdialenosť
 driving licence – vodičský preukaz
 the English Channel – Lamanšský prieliv
 environment – životné prostredie
 experience – skúsenosť, zážitok
 ferry – trajekt
 flight – let
 flight ticket – letenka
 forest – les
 guide – sprievodca
 highway (BrE: motorway) – diaľnica
 identification (identity) card – občiansky preukaz
 insurance – poistenie
 intercity train – medzimestský vlak
 item – predmet, vec
 journey – cesta
 knife – nôž
 lighter – zapalovač
 luggage – batožina
 means of transport – dopravný prostriedok
 motorway (AmE: highway) – diaľnica
 mountain resort – horské stredisko
 notebook – poznámkový blok
 offer – ponuka
 passenger – cestujúci
 passport – cestovný pas
 plane – lietadlo
 preference – preferencia (uprednostnenie niečoho)

railway station – železničná stanica
 raincoat – pršiplášť
 refreshment – občerstvenie
 seaport – prístav
 seaside resort – prímorské stredisko
 ship – loď
 sleeping bag – spacák
 sleeping car – spací vagón
 slippers – papuče
 soap – mydlo
 socks – ponožky
 speed limit – najvyššia povolená rýchlosť
 steward – steward
 stewardess – letuška
 sunglasses – slnečné okuliare
 tent – stan
 toothbrush – zubná kefka
 torch – baterka
 towel – uterák
 traffic accident – dopravná nehoda
 trainers – tenisky
 travel agency – cestovná kancelária

Croatia – Chorvátsko
 Greece – Grécko
 Spain – Španielsko
 Thailand – Thajsko

ADJECTIVES

boring – nudný
 cheap – lacný
 clean – čistý
 clear – zrozumiteľný
 comfortable – pohodlný
 dangerous – nebezpečný
 exciting – vzrušujúci
 expensive – drahý (o cene)
 fast – rýchly
 favourite – obľúbený
 polluted – znečistený
 polluting – znečisťujúci
 quick – rýchly
 safe – bezpečný
 slow – pomalý
 suitable – vhodný

■ VERBS

to address – obrátiť sa na, osloviť
 to arrange – zariadiť
 to check – skontrolovať
 to commute – dochádzať
 to compare – porovnať
 to cross – prekročiť
 to explain – vysvetliť
 to find (it fast) – považovať (to za rýchle)
 to get on – nastúpiť
 to happen – stať sa
 to invite – pozvať
 to pack – (po)balíť (sa)
 to persuade – presvedčiť
 to pollute – znečisťovať
 to reduce – zredukovať, zmenšiť
 to travel abroad – cestovať do zahraničia
 to travel for pleasure – cestovať pre radosť
 to travel on business – cestovať obchodne

■ PHRASES

Expressing preference – vyjadrenie toho, čo uprednostňujeme
I prefer... Dávam prednosť...
We'd rather travel by... Radšej cestujeme (čím)...
I find it the fastest and the most interesting way. Považujem to za najrýchlejší a najzaujímavejší spôsob.
I think we should... Myslím, že by sme mali...
Asking and giving directions – pýtať sa na cestu a udanie smeru
Excuse me, where is...? Prepáčte, kde je...?
Go straight. Chodte rovno.
Go along the road as far as... Chodte až po...
Turn right/left. Zabočte vpravo/vľavo.
How far is it? Ako je to ďaleko?
You can't miss it. Iste to neminiete.
It's not far. Nie je to ďaleko.
It's about 10 minutes' walk. Je to asi 10 minút pešo.
Take the bus. Chodte autobusom.
It's five stops from here. Je to päť autobusových zastávok odtiaľto.

8 EDUCATION

Types of schools (typy škôl)

School subjects, organisation of the school year, holidays

(školské predmety, organizácia školského roka, prázdniny)

Qualities of a good student/teacher (charakteristika dobrého študenta/učiteľa)

Extracurricular activities (mimoškolské aktivity)

Expressing opinion (vyjadrenie názoru)

Agreeing/disagreeing with an opinion (súhlas/nesúhlas s názorom)

Giving a short presentation about my school (krátka prezentácia mojej školy)



1 Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. How long is compulsory school attendance in Slovakia?
2. What is the difference between high school and university?
3. What school do you attend? Which year are you in?

Good education is very important for a successful life. In Slovakia school attendance is compulsory from the age of 6 to 16. After nursery schools and kindergartens, children start to attend an elementary school at the age of 6. When they are 16, they can decide to leave the school with an elementary qualification or to continue to a secondary school. Pupils usually have to pass entrance exams to continue their studies at secondary schools. The best students apply to study at a grammar school (or high school) called *gymnázium*, which prepares for university study. There are different types of secondary schools which usually take 4 years; the most popular are secondary business schools, technical schools and medical schools. Vocational schools and their training centres prepare students for different kinds of professions. The study lasts either 3 years and it ends with achieving a skill certificate or 5 years which ends with a school-leaving exam called *maturita*. Some subjects are compulsory, others are elective. Students at vocational schools must take a theoretical and practical exam from their specialised subjects too. After finishing study at secondary schools, students can get a job or apply to study at university. In most cases, they have to take an entrance exam to get in. A study at university takes 5 or 6 years and finishes with graduation where graduates are given diplomas to their majors.

Students' schedule and school subjects differ from school to school. Vocational school students must also take some practical lessons outside their schools, called *the practice*. A school year in Slovakia starts the first week of September and finishes the last week of June. In between, there are a few days off (for example the All Saints' Day, Easter or the May days). There are winter holidays, which last about two weeks and spring holidays, which last one week. The summer holidays are the longest and last two months.

Extracurricular activities are very popular in the afternoons. There are many different clubs and sports teams at schools which meet after the classes. Many schools **publish** their own student newspapers and some have their **own** radio stations. Most schools in Slovakia have their own **gym**, **school canteen** and sometimes a **swimming pool**, school **playground** and **language schools**.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. How long is compulsory education in Slovakia?
2. What kinds of secondary schools are in your town?
3. What can students do after finishing study at secondary school?
4. How is the school year organised in Slovakia?
5. What subjects are compulsory and elective at your school?
6. What extracurricular activities does your school offer?

□ PRACTICE TASKS

A Put a tick to those subjects which you have at your school.

Slovak mathematics history biology chemistry physics civics
physical training English German French Italian accountancy
computers arts technical drawing woodwork metalwork

B What other subjects do you have at your school which are not on the list above?

C Make the pairs from the following words. There are more possible combinations. ← 8

Example: school attendance, school subjects

secondary training school compulsory attendance entrance
subjects exam extracurricular sport activities teams centres

D

Express your opinion. What are the qualities of a good teacher? What are the qualities of a good student? Talk about them and use the adjectives in the box below.

I think...

In my opinion...

According to some people...

a good teacher

a good student

should/shouldn't be...

must/mustn't be...

strict fair tolerant responsible liberal authoritative creative
informed interested clever educated easy-going interesting
friendly hard-working

D

Now agree or disagree with the following statements. Use these sentences to develop discussion about them.

1. Good education is important for successful life.

2. There should be no tests and exams at schools.

To agree:

I agree.

Exactly. Absolutely.

That's true.

To disagree:

Yes, but...

I'm not sure.

I don't think so.

E

Give a short presentation about your school to the 9th graders from elementary schools. Finish the following sentences.

OPEN THE PRESENTATION: Dear pupils, welcome to our school. My name is (your name) and I will tell you something about studying at (name of your school).

GIVE THE PRESENTATION: In our school, there are about (number of students). We all study here to become (your future job). We learn different subjects here. The most favourite subjects are (say which ones). The least favourite subjects are (say which ones) because they are (say why). The teachers at our school are (describe them). The students are (describe them). There are more (boys/girls) here which is (good/bad) because (say why). (Say how often), we have practical lessons where we practise our skills for future jobs. We often go to (say where) to do our practice. In the afternoons we often meet (say where) where we (say what you do there).

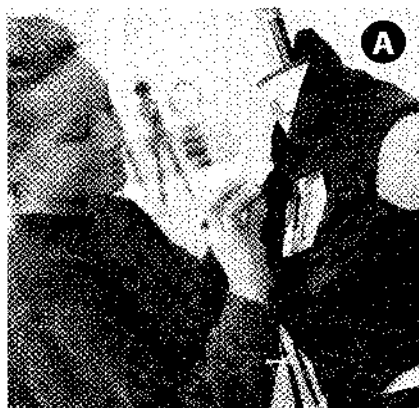
CLOSE THE PRESENTATION: At the end I can say that I like studying at our school. There's a lot of fun. Thank you for your attention. Now, I can answer your questions.

□ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 8 EDUCATION

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372

Look at the pictures below and say what jobs these people do. Talk about the types of schools these people attended to be able to do their job. Talk about the kinds of job you prepare for at your school. Say which school subjects at your school prepare you best for your future job.



Task 2

Talk about the following statements. Express your agreement or disagreement. Give clear arguments.

- 1 Students should not be given any homework.
- 2 Summer holidays should last three months.

Task 3 Simulation

You are the director of your school. Give a short presentation about it to the 9th graders from elementary schools and their parents. First describe the school and the type of study. Then talk about the school subjects and extracurricular activities at your school. Say what kind of jobs your ex-students have.

□ VOCABULARY EDUCATION

■ NOUNS

accountancy – účtovníctvo
 agreement – súhlas
 art – výtvarná výchova; umenie
 authority – autorita
 civics – náuka o spoločnosti
 day off – voľný deň
 diploma – diplom
 director – riaditeľ
 disagreement – nesúhlas
 education – vzdelanie
 elementary school – základná škola
 entrance exam – pohovor, prijímacie skúšky
 ex-student – bývalý študent
 graduate – absolvent
 graduation – promócia
 grammar school – gymnázium
 gym (gymnasium) – telocvičňa
 high school – typ strednej školy
 kindergarten – materská škôlka
 language school – jazyková škola
 major – hlavný študijný odbor
 metalwork – obrábanie kovu
 nursery school – jasle
 physical training – telesná výchova
 playground – ihrisko
 practice – prax

pupil – žiak základnej školy
 qualification – kvalifikácia
 quality – kvalita, vlastnosť
 reason – dôvod
 rule – pravidlo
 schedule – rozvrh
 school attendance – školská dochádzka
 school canteen – školská jedáleň
 school-leaving exam – maturita
 secondary school – stredná škola
 skill – zručnosť
 skill certificate – výučný list
 subject – predmet
 swimming pool – bazén
 technical drawing – technické kreslenie
 vocational school – odborná škola/učňovská škola
 woodwork – obrábanie dreva

■ ADJECTIVES

clever – bystrý
 compulsory – povinný
 easy-going – bezstarostný, ľahkomyselný
 elective – voliteľný
 extracurricular – mimoškolský
 fair – spravodlivý
 favourite – obľúbený
 flexible – prispôsobivý

hard working – pracovitý
important – dôležitý
 own – vlastný
 responsible – zodpovedný
specialised – odborný
 strict – prísny
successful – úspešný

■ VERBS

to achieve – získať
 to agree – súhlasiť
 to apply for study, to apply to study (at)
 – uchádzať sa o štúdium (na)
 to attend (school) – navštevovať (školu)
 to continue – pokračovať
 to decide – rozhodnúť sa
 to describe – opísať
 to differ – líšiť sa
 to disagree – nesúhlasiť
 to explain – vysvetliť
 to find – považovať
 to last – trvať
 to leave – odísť, opustiť
 to pass (an exam) – uspieť (na skúške)
 to prepare – pripraviť
 to publish – publikovať
 to recommend – odporučiť
 to take (five years) – trvať (päť rokov)
 to take an exam – robiť skúšku
 to welcome – vítať

■ OTHER

in most cases – väčšinou
 the least – najmenej
 the most – najviac

■ PHRASES

Expressing opinion – vyjadrenie názoru
I think... Myslím si...
In my opinion... Podľa môjho názoru...
According to some people... Podľa niektorých ľudí...

Agreeing with an opinion – súhlas s názorom
I agree. Súhlasím.
Exactly. Presne.
Absolutely. Určite. (Rozhodne.)
That's true. To je pravda.

Disagreeing with an opinion – nesúhlas s názorom
I'm not sure. Nie som si istý.
I don't think so. Nemyslím si to.

Giving a short presentation – krátka prezentácia

- OPEN THE PRESENTATION (začiatok prezentácie)**
Dear pupils, welcome to our school. Milí žiaci, vitajte v našej škole.
My name is... and I will tell you something about... Volám sa... a poviem vám niečo o...
- GIVE THE PRESENTATION (obsah prezentácie)**
- CLOSE THE PRESENTATION (záver prezentácie)**
At the end I can say that... Nakoniec môžem povedať, že...
Thank you for your attention. Ďakujem vám za pozornosť.
Now, I can answer your questions. Teraz vám môžem odpovedať na (vaše) otázky.

9 JOBS

Choice of job and motivation (voľba povolania a motivácia)

Curriculum vitae (životopis)

Getting ready for my future job (príprava na moje budúce povolanie)

Job interview – questions and answers (pohovor pri uchádzaní sa o prácu – otázky a odpovede)



① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

- What kinds of professions, do you think, are the most interesting ones?
- What does a "good job" mean to you?
- What kind of job would you never like to do?

Employment is a contract between an **employer** and an **employee**. The employer is a person (or an institution) who **hires** employees. People who have their own business are **self-employed**. The **unemployed** are people who **lost** their job, **quit** or **were fired**. They **live on the dole** and are on a **list** in **job centres**, which help them find a new job.

When people **search for** a new job, they look at several factors, **such as** type of work, possible **promotion** and **career development**, **salary**, working time, travel **opportunities**, place of work and **others**. The **available** positions are published in the newspapers or on the Internet. The candidates send the job **application** and their CV (**curriculum vitae**) together with a letter of motivation. Their CV should **include personal data** and details about education, **skills** and work **experience**. The best candidates are **invited** to an **oral interview**. At the interview, they usually answer questions, **describe** their motivations and **expectations**. Candidates should prepare well for the interview, find information about the organisation or the company, answer **clearly** and stay **calm**. **Successful** candidates are **offered** a job with a **starting salary**, position, **medical benefits** and **vacation days**.

People have **full-time jobs** and **part-time jobs**. Doctors, nurses, truck drivers **work in shifts**. **Manual** workers work in **manufacturing** or **construct** buildings. Teachers, **scientists**, doctors, **lawyers**, artists work intellectually. Nowadays, more and more professions **require** communication and organisation skills. Professions like a policeman, pilot, **construction worker** are very dangerous professions because there is a high risk of an **injury** or an accident.

The **labour market** in Slovakia changed in the last ten years. Many work opportunities were **created** thanks to **foreign investors** who came to our country to **set up** their companies here. Young people with good **reference** and experience are preferred to **fresh graduates** and older people.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. What is employment?
2. How can people become unemployed?
3. What things do people consider at when they search for a new job?
4. What information should be included in a professional CV?
5. What happens at the job interview?
6. What does it mean to work full-time, part-time and in shifts?

□ PRACTICE TASKS

A Which jobs are described below? Who...?

- | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. catches criminals | 5. makes facial massage | 9. takes photographs |
| 2. fixes taps | 6. sells meat | 10. brings letters |
| 3. makes dress | 7. writes in newspapers | 11. works in a library |
| 4. cuts women's hair | 8. makes bread | 12. repairs cars |

B Which jobs described above are manual and which are intellectual? Which of them do you find the most interesting, the least interesting, the most dangerous, the most paid and the least paid?

Manual jobs are:

Intellectual jobs are:

The most interesting job is: _____

The least interesting job is: _____

The most dangerous job is: _____

The most paid job is: _____

The least paid job is: _____

C What qualities and skills are needed to do these jobs? Choose from the list.

flexibility creativity physical strength communication skills patience
organisation skills speaking foreign language good social behaviour
responsibility decision-making problem solving good imagination
feeling for beauty reliability writing skills good memory

D Fill in this form of curriculum vitae with your own data.

Personal Details	Name: _____ Address: _____ Date of Birth: _____ Nationality: _____ Telephone: _____ E-mail: _____
Education	(year 200____ – now) Secondary _____ School, (place _____) school-leaving exam in English, _____, _____
Work Experience	_____
Skills and Competences	computer skills, English (intermediate), _____, _____
Interests	_____
References	_____

E

At the interview, match the interviewer's questions with candidate's answers. Then say what job is offered.

Example: Do you speak any foreign languages? Yes, I do. I speak English and French.

Interviewer's questions:

1. Why are you interested in this job?
2. What are your expectations?
3. What is your experience in this field?
4. Why did you quit your previous job?
5. What school did you graduate from?
6. Do you have any reference?
7. What are your qualities?
8. What are your weaknesses?
9. Would you like to ask anything?
10. What do you know about our company?

Candidate's answers:

- a) I have worked for a car company for 5 years.
- b) I would like to ask you about working in shifts.
- c) I am responsible and hard-working.
- d) It looks very creative to me.
- e) Possible promotion and travel opportunities.
- f) I graduated from a secondary technical school.
- g) I drink too much coffee when I work.
- h) You are a French company producing cars.
- i) I had to work at weekends too.
- j) Yes, of course. It is from my previous director.

F

Which factors from the list below will you consider when you search for a job in the future? Underline them and discuss their importance in pairs or small groups.

- full-time job/part-time job/working in shifts
- manual work/intellectual work
- self-employed/employee
- working alone/in a small team/in a big team
- working inside/outside/travelling for business
- medical benefits
- vacation days
- career development (possible promotion)
- good starting salary

SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 9 JOBS

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372.

Look at the pictures below. Describe what jobs these people have. Say which jobs are intellectual and manual. Talk about which qualities and skills are needed for each of them.



Task 2

Talk about your preparation for your future job. Talk about:

- what school you are attending,
- what jobs you can do after finishing your studies at your school,
- what skills and competences you need for that job,
- the quality of practice you have at your school (its length, place, trainers).

Task 3 Role-play

You: You are a fresh graduate from a secondary vocational school. You have no working experience. You have found an interesting job offer working as a secretary in a foreign financial company. You applied for it and now you are at the interview. You really want the job. You think that you have all the qualities and skills for it. Persuade the interviewer that you are the best candidate.

Your partner: You are a director in a foreign financial company. You need a good and experienced secretary. You are interviewing a fresh graduate who is interested in the job. You are not sure about his/her qualities and skills. Decide if he/she is the best candidate for the available position.

□ VOCABULARY JOBS**■ NOUNS**

application – prihláška
 career – kariéra
 competence – spôsobilosť
 construction worker – stavbár
 creativity – tvorivosť
 CV (curriculum vitae) – životopis
 data – údaje
 decision-making – rozhodovanie sa
 development – rast, rozvoj
 director – riaditeľ
 employee – zamestnanec
 employer – zamestnávateľ
 employment – zamestnanie
 expectation – očakávanie
 experience – skúsenosť
 facial massage – masáž tváre
 flexibility – prispôsobivosť, flexibilita
 foreign investor – zahraničný investor
 fresh graduate – čerstvý absolvent
 full-time (job) – (práca) na plný pracovný pomer

injury – zranenie
 interview – pohovor
 job centre – úrad práce
 labour market – trh práce
 lawyer – právnik
 length – dĺžka
 list – zoznam
 manufacturing – výroba
 medical benefit – nemocenská dávka
 opportunity – príležitosť
 part-time job – práca na čiastočný pracovný pomer
 patience – trpezlivosť
 physical strength – fyzická sila
 place – miesto
 position – pozícia, pracovné miesto
 preparation – príprava
 problem solving – riešenie problémov
 promotion – povýšenie
 reference – odporúčenie
 reliability – spoľahlivosť

responsibility – zodpovednosť

salary – plat

sales manager – obchodný zástupca

scientist – vedec

skill – zručnosť

social behaviour – spoločenské správanie

starting salary – nástupný plat

vacation day – voľný deň

weakness – slabá stránka

writing skill – zručnosť v písaní

■ ADJECTIVES

available – voľný, dostupný

calm – pokojný, kludný

dangerous – nebezpečný

foreign – zahraničný

hard working – pracovitý

manual – manuálny

oral – ústny

paid – platený

personal – osobný

previous – predchádzajúci

responsible – zodpovedný

self-employed – na voľnej nohe, živnostník

successful – úspešný

unemployed – nezamestnaný

■ VERBS

to apply for – uchádzať sa o

to attend (school) – navštevovať (školu)

to be fired – byť prepustený zo zamestnania

to be in danger – byť v nebezpečenstve

to be interested in – zaujímať sa o

to consider – zvažovať

to construct – stavať

to create – vytvoriť

to cut hair – strihať vlasy

to describe – opísať

to find something interesting – považovať niečo za zaujímavé

to fix taps – opravovať vodovodné kohútiky

to graduate (from) – vyškoliť sa, promovať (kde)

to hire – robiť nábor, najat' si niekoho

to include – zahŕňať

to invite – pozvať

to live on the dole – žiť na podpore

to lose – stratiť

to make dress – šiť šaty

to match – spojiť

to offer – ponúknuť

to persuade – presvedčiť

to quit – dať výpoveď

to require – vyžadovať, požadovať

to search for – pátrať po

to set up (a company) – založiť (firmu)

to take photographs – fotografovať

to work in shifts – pracovať na smeny

■ OTHER

clearly – zrozumiteľne

other – iný

pros and cons – za a proti

such as – ako napríklad

the least (+ adjective) – najmenej (+ príd. meno)

the most (+ adjective) – najviac + príd. meno)

10 PEOPLE AND NATURE

Seasons and weather (ročné obdobia a počasie)

Ecology (ekológia)

Nature around us – fauna and flora (príroda okolo nás – fauna a flóra)

Trip to the country (vylet na vidiek)

Talking about weather (rozhovor o počasí)

Prohibitions (vyjadrenie zákazu)



① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. Why do people go to forests?
2. What do you know about the activities of environmentalists?
3. Which natural disaster, do you think, is the most dangerous?

Slovakia has a continental climate with four seasons: spring, summer, autumn and winter. The weather in spring and autumn is **alike**: **light showers**, cloudy days and sunny intervals are typical. Winters are normally cold and **snowy**. Summers are hot, with many **sunny** days and a few summer **storms**.

The climate of a region **determines** what **plants grow** and what animals live in that region. Plants are an important part in the **cycle of nature**. There would be no life on Earth without them. Animals **depend directly** or **indirectly** on plants because they cannot make their own food. Plants also produce the **oxygen** we breathe. According to the **scientists**, there are about 260 000 **species** of plants and about 9 or 10 million species of animals. **Nowadays**, the existence of some plants and animals **is in danger**. For example elephants, tigers, pandas, **whales**, great **apes**, **marine turtles**, polar bears, **rhinos**, snow leopards and dolphins are at the top of the **Red List of Threatened Species**. In Slovakia **bisons**, **wolves**, **foxes**, **eagles** are also in danger.

The most serious ecological problems of today are the **pollution** of air, water and **soil**, **destruction** of ecosystems, **disappearance** of many species of animals and plants, changes in weather, **acid rain**, **global warming**, destruction of tropical rain forests and destruction of the ozone layer. Most of this damage, which **proceeds** faster and faster, has not been **caused** by natural catastrophes but by **man himself**. Technical **progress**, which **enables** us to live a more comfortable life, **leads to the degradation** of quality of **environment** we live in.

Professional organisations, **environmentalists**, ecologists, biologists, **volunteers** or just **nature lovers** **do their best** to protect nature and **save** life on Earth. We all can **contribute** to this by respecting the **laws of nature**. In forests, it is not **allowed** to **make noise**, **set fire**, **cut wood**, **drop litter**, **poison** air and lakes with chemicals and so on. People can be **fined** or even **imprisoned** for **breaking the laws**.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. What seasons are there in Slovakia?
2. Why are plants important for our life?
3. What animals are in danger?
4. What ecological problems are the most serious?
5. Who is responsible for the most damage in nature?
6. How should we behave in forests?

PRACTICE TASKS

A

Use the weather expressions in the box to answer the questions below.

cloudy	sunny	heavy rain	light rain	windy	foggy	frost
heat	snow	light showers	sunny intervals	thunderstorms		

1. What's the weather like today?
2. What's the weather forecast for tomorrow?
3. What kind of weather is ideal for summer holidays near the sea?
4. What kind of weather is ideal for winter holidays in the mountains?

B

Do the people make comments about good weather (G) or bad weather (B)?

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1. What a beautiful day, isn't it? _____ | 4. It's so nice and hot. _____ |
| 2. Oh, what an unpleasant day. _____ | 5. Nasty day, isn't it? _____ |
| 3. The rain, again the rain. I hate it. _____ | 6. Isn't it wonderful? _____ |

C

Put a tick ✓ to those activities which you usually do in the forests. Which of them do you need a special permission for?

walk	pick mushrooms	hunt animals	feed animals	build tents
drop litter	have a picnic	cut wood	ski	fish
plant trees	wash a car		set fire	

D Say what people are not allowed to do in the forests and what is prohibited.

Example: People must not shout in the forests.

People must not...

People are not allowed to...

It is prohibited/forbidden to...

It is not allowed to/permitted to...

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1. to shout | 7. to trespass |
| 2. to catch animals | 8. to use chemicals near water |
| 3. to damage forest land | 9. to fish in a forest |
| 4. to set fire | 10. to cut wood |
| 5. to hunt animals | 11. to feed animals with poisoned food |
| 6. to drop the litter | 12. to damage plants |

E Describe what happens when the following natural disasters hit. Which of them cause the biggest damage?

earthquakes fire droughts volcanoes tornadoes
hurricanes floods tsunamis waves

□ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 10 PEOPLE AND NATURE**Task 1**

See useful phrases on page 37

Look at the pictures below. Talk about the relationship between the people and animals in the pictures. Compare the living conditions of both animals.

**Task 2**

Talk about the kind of weather which you like most and which you hate most. Say what you usually do then, what you wear and how you feel.

Task 3 Role-play

You: It's Saturday morning and it's raining. Call your boyfriend/girlfriend to persuade him/her to go to the forest with your father and you to hunt rabbits.

Your partner: It's Saturday morning and it's raining. Your boyfriend/girlfriend has just called you. He/She is trying to persuade you to go to the forest with his/her father to hunt rabbits. You think it's a bad idea and you'd rather stay in bed. Anyway, you are against hunting. Give better ideas how to spend rainy Saturday together.

□ VOCABULARY PEOPLE AND NATURE**■ NOUNS**

acid rain – kyslý dážď
ape – ludoop
bison – bizón, zubor
cycle of nature – prírodný cyklus
degradation – zhoršenie
destruction – zničenie
disappearance – úbytok
drought – sucho
eagle – orol
Earth – Zem
earthquake – zemetrasenie
environment – životné prostredie
environmentalist – ochranca životného prostredia
flood (čítaj flad) – záplava
fox – liška
frost – mraz
global warming – globálne otepľenie
heat – horúčava
hurricane – hurikán
laws of nature – zákony prírody
light showers – spáska, slabý dážď
living conditions – životné podmienky
man – človek; muž
nature lover – milovník prírody
ozone layer – ozónová vrstva

oxygen – kyslík

permission – povolenie

plant – rastlina

pollution – znečistenie

progress – pokrok

prohibition – zákaz

rabbit – zajac

Red List of Threatened Species – Červený zoznam ohrozených druhov

rhino – nosorožec indický

soil – pôda

species – druh (rastlinný/živočíšny)

storm – búrka

scientist – vedec

thunderstorm – búrka

tornado – tornádo

turtle – korytnačka

volcano – sopka

volunteer – dobrovoľník

weather forecast – predpoveď počasia

whale – veľryba

wolf (množné číslo: wolves) – vlk

■ ADJECTIVES

cloudy – oblačný

forbidden – zakázaný

marine – morský

nasty – škaredý
 snowy – zasnežený
 sunny – slnečný
 unpleasant – nepríjemný
 wonderful – vynikajúci

■ VERBS

to behave – správať sa
 to be allowed to – mať niečo dovolené
 to be in danger – byť v ohrození
 to break the laws – porušiť zákony
 to breathe – dýchať
 to build tents – stavať stany
 to catch – chytať
 to cause – spôsobiť
 to contribute – prispieť
 to cut wood – štiepať drevo
 to damage – (z)ničiť
 to depend (on) – závisieť (na)
 to determine – určovať
 to do one's best – robiť niečo najlepšie ako sa dá
 to drop litter – odhodiť odpadky
 to enable – umožniť
 to feed animals – kŕmiť zvieratá
 to fine – pokutovať
 to grow – rásť
 to hunt – poľovať
 to imprison – dať do väzenia, uväzniť
 to lead (to) – viesť (k niečomu)
 to make noise – robiť hluk
 to permit – dovoliť
 to persuade – presvedčiť
 to pick mushrooms – zbierať hriby
 to plant trees – sadiť stromy
 to poison – otráviť
 to proceed – pokračovať

to prohibit – zakázať
 to protect – chrániť
 to save – zachrániť
 to set fire – založiť oheň
 to shout – kričať
 to suggest – navrhnúť
 to trespass – chodiť po zakázaných cestách
 to wear (clothes) – nosiť (oblečenie)

■ OTHER

alike – podobný
 directly – priamo
 indirectly – nepriamo
 nowadays – v súčasnosti
 rather – radšej

■ PHRASES

Talking about weather – rozhovor o počasí
What's the weather like today? Aké je dnešné počasie?
What's the weather forecast for tomorrow? Aká je predpoveď počasia na zajtra?
What a beautiful day! Aký krásny deň!
Nasty day, isn't it? Je nepríjemne, však?
Isn't it wonderful? Nie je nádherné?

Prohibitions – vyjadrenie zákazu
People must not... Ľudia nesmú...
People are not allowed to... Ľuďom nie je dovolené...
It is prohibited/forbidden to... Je zakázané...
It is not allowed to/not permitted to... Nie je dovolené...

11 SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

Scientific and technological progress (pokrok vo vede a technike)
Interesting inventions (pozoruhodné objavy)
What I use – computer, mobile, television
 (čo využívam – počítač, mobil, televízor)
Describing a machine – its size, shape, material and usage
 (ako prístroj – jeho veľkosť, tvar, materiál a použitie)



1 Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. Which technological inventions are the most important for you?
2. How often do you use a mobile phone?
3. What do people use computers for?

Technology is a product of science. Society depends on technology and technology exists thanks to the needs of society. New technological inventions make people's life easier. The industrial revolution, which started in the 18th century in England, brought many technological changes and inventions. Since then, technology has become part of our everyday life.

People made big scientific and technological progress in transport, medicine, biology and information technology. The progress in the car industry and aviation is also incredible. We can see it when we compare how people travelled in the past and how they travel today.

Great progress has been made in medicine. Science and technology helps ease the pain of some diseases, it cures them and prevents some of them too. Nowadays, doctors can help in surgeries that are taking place in another part of the country. On the video phone, a doctor can see the patient and speak directly to the doctors performing the operation.

During the last ten years, there was a great change in information and communication technologies, especially in wireless technology. Nowadays, computers are used almost everywhere. The inventions of a cell phone and the Internet help people communicate faster. Mobile phones are a symbol of comfortable and quick communication or fashion, mainly among the young. A cell phone, music player, camera and a palm computer are being put together into one little gadget.

The Internet saves our time and money to find information. Many professions and services depend on the Internet. Via the Internet, we send documents, buy things, book hotels, reserve tickets, transfer our money or find life partners. These days, more and more people use e-mail to communicate and send information or documents. Many Slovaks use the Internet as a type of entertainment. They can easily find articles about what they are interested in, download music

or films. Chatting, **joining** different discussion groups and reading **blogs** is very popular, especially among the young.

Modern technology helps us daily. **However**, it can also be **misused**. For example, **on the one hand**, we drive cars daily and **on the other hand**, they **pollute** the air.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. What technological inventions make our life easier?
2. In which sectors was the greatest technological progress made?
3. How does modern technology help in medicine?
4. What do people use the Internet for?
5. How can modern technology be misused?
6. What types of cell phones, do you think, will your children use one day?

□ PRACTICE TASKS

A

From the list below, choose the things which you use daily and things which you do not use at all. Then decide which thing is the most important and the least important for your life and say why.

hair dryer washing machine mobile phone car fridge
microwave oven television computer cooker lighter
CD player camera toaster vacuum cleaner

Start like this:

I daily use... The most important thing for me is... because...
I never use... The least important thing for me is... because...

B

Choose one thing from the list above and describe it. Talk about its size, shape, material it is made of and its usage. Then explain what you use it for. Your classmates guess what it is.

SIZE: It's small/little/big/large/heavy/light/short/long...

SHAPE: It's round/square/rectangular/oval...

MATERIAL: It's made of plastic/leather/glass/metal/wood/paper/stone...

USAGE: It's a machine/an instrument/an equipment which I use **for...** -ing.
It is used **to...**

C

Fill the sentences with the missing words from the box below.

database mouse e-mail software modem keyboard printer monitor
word processor browser operating system

Example: You have to click the left button on the mouse.

1. She sent me a short message through _____.
2. I use a _____ to connect to the Internet at home.
3. Which _____ do you use? I use Windows.
4. I always find it hard to find ž and ň on the _____.
5. The screen on my _____ is too small.
6. I'm getting better at writing letters using my new _____.
7. He uses a _____ to keep a record of his video collection.
8. Computer piracy is when you illegally copy _____.
9. My _____ has run out of ink.
10. Microsoft Explorer is the most popular _____.

D

What do you use a computer for? Choose from the box.

Start like this:

daily	use a computer	for... -ing
sometimes		to...
never		

write documents play games browse the Internet watch DVDs
listen to CDs make music download music read online books
learn English send e-mails do online shopping draw pictures
take photographs burn CDs chat on the Internet pay bills
look for life partners

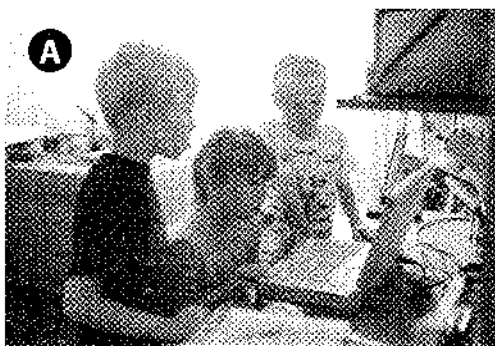
□ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 11 SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 37

Look at the pictures below. Describe them and talk about:

- what children are using the computer for,
- what the older person is using it for,
- what skills children learn when they use the computers,
- the barriers of older people to learn how to use computers,
- how people can become dependent on using computers.



Task 2

Talk about the advantages and disadvantages of using modern technology such as mobile phones, televisions and cars. Say which of them, you think, the most needed for people. Explain your reasons. Say how cars will look like fifty years. Talk about their size, shape and material they will be made of.

Task 3 Simulation

A friend of yours wants to buy your mobile phone. First, describe it and then explain him/her all the functions it has.

□ VOCABULARY SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

■ NOUNS

advantage – výhoda
 aviation – letectvo
 barrier – bariéra
 blog (weblog) – internetový denník, v ktorom autor pravidelne vyjadruje svoje názory na rôzne témy
 browser – prehliadač
 camera – fotoaparát
 cell phone/mobile phone – mobilný telefón
 cooker – sporák
 disadvantage – nevýhoda
 disease – choroba
 entertainment – zábava
 equipment – zariadenie
 fridge – chladnička
 gadget – zariadenie
 glass – sklo
 hair dryer – fén
 ink – atrament
 invention – vynález
 keyboard – klávesnica
 leather – koža
 lighter – zapalovač
 metal – kov
 microwave oven – mikrovlnná rúra
 need – potreba
 pain – bolesť
 palm computer – počítač do dlane
 printer – tlačiareň
 progress – pokrok
 science – veda
 screen – obrazovka
 service – služba
 shape – tvar
 size – veľkosť
 taste – chuť
 texture – tkanina
 surgery – chirurgický zákrok, operácia
 transporter – hliankovač
 transport – preprava
 vacuum cleaner – vysávač
 washing machine – práčka

wood – drevo
 word processor – textový editor

■ ADJECTIVES

comfortable – pohodlný
 dependent on – závislý na
 heavy – ťažký (o váhe)
 important – dôležitý
 incredible – neuveriteľný
 light – ľahký (o váhe)
 misused – zneužitý
 quick – rýchly
 rectangular – obdĺžnikový
 round – okrúhly
 scientific – vedecký
 square – štvorcový
 wireless – bezdrôtový

■ VERBS

to book (hotel) – rezervovať si (hotel/ ubytovanie)
 to burn (CD) – napáliť (CD)
 to close down – zatvoriť
 to cure – liečiť
 to decide – rozhodnúť sa
 to depend (on) – závisieť (na)
 to describe – opísať
 to ease – uľahčiť
 to explain – vysvetliť
 to find (hard) – považovať za (ťažké)
 to get better (at) – zlepšovať sa
 to guess – hádať
 to join – pridať sa
 to keep a record – zachovať si záznam
 to look like – vyzeráť
 to perform (the operation) – uskutočniť (operáciu)
 to pollute – znečisťovať
 to save – šetriť; uchovávať
 to switch on – zapnúť
 to switch off – vypnúť
 to take place – konať sa
 to transfer (money) – previesť (peniaze)
 to use – používať

■ OTHER

daily – denne

however – avšak

not at all – vôbec (nie)

on the one hand – na jednej strane (pri porovnávaní)

on the other hand – na druhej strane (pri porovnávaní)

on your own – sám

pros and cons – klady a zápory

since then – odvtedy

the least – najmenej

the most – najviac

via the Internet – cez internet

■ PHRASES

Describing a machine – its size, shape material and usage

(opis prístroja – jeho veľkosť, tvar, materiál a použitie)

*It's a machine/an instrument/an equipment which I use **for... -ing**.* Je to stroj/ná-stroj/zariadenie na...*It is used **to**...* Používa sa na...*It's made of...* Je vyrobený z...

12 PEOPLE AND SOCIETY

Social behaviour of the young and the old (spoločenské správanie mladých a starších ľudí)**Social etiquette, greetings, meetings, visits, social conversation** (spoločenská etiketa, pozdravy, stretnutia, návštevy, spoločenská konverzácia)**Communication among people** (komunikácia v rôznych situáciách)**Making requests** (žiadost)**Offering help** (ponúknuť pomoc)

① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. What do you understand by *social behaviour*?
2. How should the young behave towards the old?
3. What do you know about the table etiquette?

Etiquette describes formal rules and traditions of behaviour in a certain society and culture. Modern etiquette teaches us to greet people with respect, offer hospitality to guests, wear clothing appropriate for certain occasions, join the conversations without dominating them. It also describes how to behave in specific situations. It teaches us to offer a chair, help those who need it, eat neatly and quietly, not to play loud music or make noise and arrive in time when visiting somebody.

Different social rules are followed at home, at work and in business. The social rules of hosting guests, dining, clothing, etc. are specific for different cultures. What is appropriate in one culture (for example in a European country) can be totally unacceptable in another culture (for example in a Muslim country). Some rules are the same all around the world. It is important to be polite and to use the magic words: "Thank you", "Please", "Sorry". When somebody invites us for a visit, we should come in time. We should bring a small present to the host, for example flowers, chocolate or a bottle of wine. It is not polite to visit somebody without arranging it in advance. The food etiquette includes some rules. For example, it is impolite to ask for more food. It is fine to have more food when it is offered by the hosts. The tea should be poured from a teapot after a minute or two it has been made. Soup should be eaten quietly. Hands should never be used for eating.

Children learn the social rules from their parents, teachers and friends. It is important to teach them what behaviour is correct and wrong. Family is the place where social behaviour is formed. If parents speak rudely, children will imitate their "models". If parents have only TV dinners, children will not know how to behave at the table. Small things, such as talking to people with respect, listening to them and showing empathy, should be normal in every family.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. What are the basic rules of modern etiquette?
2. Why are some social rules specific for different cultures?
3. Why is the loss of manners a serious problem in the modern society?
4. How can parents raise their children tolerant, respectful and empathic?
5. How can teachers teach children the rules of social behaviour?
6. Name three examples of the table etiquette.

PRACTICE TASKS

A What are the features of people having good manners and people having bad manners?

tolerant	angry	impolite	friendly	sympathetic	respectful
polite	rude	loud	egoistic	generous	selfish
helpful	reliable	willing			

B Which things are polite (P) and which are impolite (I) during a conversation?

- | | | | |
|---|-------|--------------------------------|-------|
| 1. to have eye contact with the partner | _____ | 6. to speak quietly | _____ |
| 2. to touch the partner | _____ | 7. to speak a lot | _____ |
| 3. to speak loudly | _____ | 8. to use polite language | _____ |
| 4. to ask for repetition | _____ | 9. to interrupt a conversation | _____ |
| 5. to bite fingernails | _____ | 10. to listen to the partner | _____ |

C When we ask other people to do something for us, we make REQUESTS (R). When we want to help people, we OFFER HELP (O).

Example: I'll do this for you if you want. O
 Do you think you could drive me home? R

1. Could you lend me some money? _____
2. Shall I open the window? _____
3. May I offer you some drink? _____
4. I'll pay that for you. _____
5. Do you think you could call me? _____
6. Would you mind coming a bit later? _____
7. Can I help you with your bags? _____

8. Is it all right if I come later? _____
9. Could you pass me the book, please? _____
10. Shall I help you with your homework? _____

D What would you DO and what would you SAY in the following situations?

1. You are travelling by bus. You are sitting on the seat. A pregnant woman is getting on. All seats are taken.
2. An old man with a walking stick is going up the stairs.
3. A woman with shopping bags is trying to open the door.
4. A little boy is crying in the street.
5. A young woman has difficulties to park her car.

E How would you react if you were offered help in the situations above?

What would you say if you were:

1. the pregnant woman _____
2. the old man _____
3. the woman with shopping bags _____
4. the little boy _____
5. the young woman with bad parking skills? _____

F Who would say the following lines during a home visit: GUESTS (G) or HOSTS (H)?

Example: Sorry, we are late. (G)

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. The food is delicious. _____ | 7. Here's a small gift for you. _____ |
| 2. Would you like more salad? _____ | 8. Please, sit down. _____ |
| 3. Welcome. _____ | 9. Would you like some slippers? _____ |
| 4. May I take your coat? _____ | 10. What a beautiful house! _____ ! |
| 5. Shall we go? _____ | 11. It was nice to visit you. _____ |
| 6. I'll call a taxi for you. _____ | 12. Do you want to see the house? _____ |

□ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 12 PEOPLE AND SOCIETY

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372.

Look at the picture below. Talk about:

- the people in the picture – who they are and what their relationship is,
- their physical appearance,
- their social behaviour,
- how they “communicate” together,
- what the boy is telling the man.

Have you ever talked or listened to somebody like this? To whom? When and why?



Task 2

- Explain the meaning of the following statement.

Good manners will open doors that the best education cannot.
(Clarence Thomas)

- Give few examples of good social manners.
- Say how parents can give good social model to their children.
- Talk about the attitude of some young people towards modern etiquette. Say which manners they accept and which manners they refuse.

Task 3 Simulation

Your English friend is coming to visit you and your family. He wants to know some basic rules of how to behave as a guest in a Slovak family. Tell him about greetings, gifts for the hosts, frequent topics of conversations, the basic rules of table etiquette (what to do/say if you do not like the food, etc.) and when it is polite to leave.

□ VOCABULARY PEOPLE AND SOCIETY

■ NOUNS

attitude – postoj
behaviour – správanie
 difficulty – ťažkosť, problém
empathy – empatia, vcítenie sa
 feature – črta, vlastnosť
 fingernail – necht
 gift – darček
 greeting – pozdrav
guest – hosť
hospitality – pohostinnosť
host – hosťiteľ
 manner – mravy, správanie, chovanie
occasion – príležitosť
 offer – ponuka
 physical appearance – vonkajší vzhľad
 relationship – vzťah
 repetition – opakovanie
 request – žiadosť
respect – úcta
rule – pravidlo
 seat – miesto (na sedenie)
 slippers – papuče
 social behaviour – spoločenské správanie
 social model – spoločenský vzor
society – spoločnosť
 stairs – schody
 statement – výpoveď, výrok
teapot – čajník
 topic – téma
TV dinner – večera pri TV
 walking stick – vychádzková palica

■ ADJECTIVES

angry – nahnevaný
appropriate – vhodný
 basic – základný
correct – správny, vhodný
 cruel – krutý
 delicious – výborný, chutný
 generous – štedrý
impolite – nezdvorilý
magic – čarovný
polite – zdvorilý

pregnant – tehotná
 reliable – spoľahlivý
 respectful – rešpektujúci
 rude – hrubý
 selfish – sebecký
 sensitive – citlivý
social – spoločenský
 sympathetic – súcitný
unacceptable – neprijateľný
 willing – ochotný
wrong – nesprávny, nevhodný

■ VERBS

to accept – prijať
to arrange in advance – dohodnúť, zariadiť vopred
to arrive in time – prísť včas
to behave – správať sa
 to bite – obhrýzať si (nechty)
 to cry – plakať
to describe – opisovať
to follow – (na)sledovať
to greet – zdaviť
to host – hostiť
to imitate – napodobňovať
to include – zahŕňať
 to interrupt – prerušiť
to invite – pozvať
to join – pridať sa
 to leave – odísť, opustiť
 to lend – požičať niekomu
to make noise – robiť hluk
to offer – ponúknuť
to pour – lievať
 to refuse – odmietnuť
 to sort out – roztriediť
 to touch – dotknúť sa
 to welcome – vítať

■ OTHER

neatly – slušne
quietly – ticho
rudely – neslušne, hrubo
 towards – voči

■ PHRASES

Making requests – požiadať o niečo

Could you lend me some money? Mohli by ste/Mohol/-la by si mi požičať nejaké peniaze?

Would you mind coming a bit later? Vadilo by vám, keby ste prišli/Vadilo by ti, keby si prišiel/-la trochu neskôr?

Is it all right if I come later? Je to v poriadku, ak prídem neskôr?

Offering help – ponúknuť pomoc

Shall I open the window? Mám otvoriť okno?

May I offer you some drink? Smiem vám/ti ponúknuť niečo na pitie?

I'll pay that for you. Zaplatím za vás/teba.

Can I help you with your bags? Môžem vám/ti pomôcť s taškami?

13 THE YOUNG AND THEIR WORLD

The young, their characteristics, hobbies and activities

(mladí ľudia, ich charakteristika, záujmy a aktivity)

Place of the young in the society (postavenie mladých v spoločnosti)

Friendship and love (priateľstvo a láska)

Describing people – their appearance, qualities, lifestyle, opinions, problems
(opis ľudí – ich zovňajšok, vlastnosti, životný štýl, názory, problémy)



① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. What does a typical teenager look like?
2. How does a typical teenager behave?
3. What are common problems of the young in our society?

People from the age of thirteen to the age of nineteen are called “teenagers” because their age ends in “teen” in English. During puberty, most children go through dramatic physical changes. Teenagers also undergo mental developments. Their emotional life is more **intensive** than before. Love and **friendship** become the most **important values**. Teenagers **prefer relationships** with their **peers** to their parents.

Young people often feel **unstable** and **look for security**. They **search** for a **unique identity**. Sports players, rock stars, film actors, reality show stars often become their **role models**. Teenagers care a lot what they **look like**. They **follow** the fashion **trends closely** and they always want to be “in”. They have **similar** interests, such as music, dance, film or fashion. They **identify** themselves with others, but **at the same time** they want to be different and **develop** their own **individuality**.

This **age of revolt** often leads to conflicts between the generations, called a **generation gap**. Young people think that their parents **care** too much and are **overprotective**. Children often have different ideas about their future, different life **expectations** and **opinions** on **drug use** or politics than their parents do. All this **creates tension** between parents and children. They also **differ in clothing** and hairstyles. Most teenagers would like to start their own **independent** lives but are **still** financially **dependent on** their parents. In this age, young people are under **pressure**. They have to decide about their **future** career.

Unemployment is a big problem in our **society**. **Financial worries**, frustration, unstable emotions and **lack of emotional intelligence** among some adolescents may also **lead to** youth crime, such as vandalism and **violence**. Groups of **youngsters** with **racial prejudice** often provoke conflicts in many countries. Alcoholism, drug use and **gambling** are the **results** of frustration, family conflicts or other teenage problems.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. What is puberty?
2. What changes do teenagers go through?
3. How do most teenagers feel?
4. What interests do teenagers have?
5. What do you understand by "generation gap"?
6. What are the common teenage problems?

□ PRACTICE TASKS

A Look at the picture below. Which adjectives from the box below best describe the man on the left, the boy in the middle and the man on the right?

independent alone unemployed friendly unstable worried
 busy addicted tired overprotective careless frustrated mature
 easy-going prejudiced secure responsible stressed ignoring



B Describe the people in the picture above by giving answers to the questions below.

Who are the people? What do they look like? What are they like? Where are they?
 What are they doing? Why are they there?

C What do you think about the boy in the middle? Who are his role-models? What kind of a person will he be one day? Like the man on the right or the man on the left?

D Compare and contrast the lifestyle of the people in the picture in task A. Talk about their families, daily duties, activities and hobbies. What do they have in common?

To compare: *like, similar, the same as* To contrast: *unlike, different, in contrast*

E What are the people in the picture in task A thinking about? Would they ever talk to each other? Would they criticise or give compliments to each other? Which of them would probably say the following lines?

1. "What an awful hairstyle!"
2. "I don't care about anything and anybody."
3. "I need more space for sitting."

F Talk about teenagers, their feelings, opinions, behaviour, problems and lifestyle. Use the phrases below and develop them.

Example: provoke conflicts

Some teenagers provoke conflicts with their parents when they have different ideas.

- * go through physical and mental changes
- * have different opinions
- * look for security
- * differ in clothing and hairstyle
- * follow fashion trends
- * feel under pressure
- * be independent
- * identify with role models
- * search for a unique identity
- * depend on parents

□ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 13 THE YOUNG AND THEIR WORLD

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372.

Read the text below. Compare the changing approach of some American parents towards their children with the Slovak parents' approach. Talk about how good relationship between parents and their teenage children can be created.

American psychologists say that the authoritative approach towards children is not so frequent any more. They say that the generation gap is getting smaller in many families. There are less and less strict authoritative parents and more and more parents that are friends to their children. They share interests with their children and are more open. Discussions on subjects, such as sex and drugs, are becoming normal. They try to make their children happy – the word "fun" is more frequent than the word "responsibility". Good parents try to show sympathy and understanding towards their children if they are in trouble.

Task 2

Talk about teenagers, their appearance, behaviour, opinions, problems, lifestyle, activities and hobbies. Explain why there often is a generation gap between parents and their teenage children.

Task 3 Role-play

You: Look at the picture in task A. You are the man in the suit. You are in bad mood because you were fired today and your job was given to some unexperienced teenager. Criticise young people, their opinions, lifestyle, appearance and behaviour.

Your partner: Look at the picture in task A. You are the teenage boy in the middle. You are sitting next to an angry man who was fired today and whose job was given to some unexperienced teenager. The man in the suit is very angry and he criticises all the young, their opinions, lifestyle, appearance and behaviour. You cannot listen to him anymore. Defend yourself, your hairstyle and the young people.

□ VOCABULARY THE YOUNG AND THEIR WORLD**■ NOUNS**

age – vek
appearance – výzor
approach – prístup
behaviour – správanie
clothing – obliekanie
development – rozvoj
drug use – užívanie drog
duty – povinnosť
expectation – očakávanie
friendship – priateľstvo
fun – zábava
gambling – hazardné hranie
generation gap – generačný rozdiel
identity – identita
individuality – osobnosť
intelligence – inteligencia
lack of – nedostatok
mood – nálada
opinion – názor
peer – rovesník
prejudice – predsudok
pressure – tlak
reason – príčina

relationship – vzťah
responsibility – zodpovednosť
result – výsledok
revolt – vzburá, odpor
role model – vzor, príklad
security – bezpečie
society – spoločnosť
suit – oblek
sympathy – súcit
tension – napätie
unemployment – nezamestnanosť
value – hodnota
violence – násilie
youngster – mladík
worry – trápenie, starosť

■ ADJECTIVES

addicted – závislý
angry – nahnevaný
authoritative – autoritatívny
careless – ľahostajný, nedbalý
common – spoločný
daily – denný
dependent (on) – závislý (na)

different – odlišný
easy-going – bezstarostný, ľahkomyselný
financial – finančný
fired – prepustený (z práce)
frustrated – frustrovaný
future – budúci
ignoring – nevšímavý
important – dôležitý
independent – nezávislý
intensive – intenzívny
mature – zrelý
mental – psychický
overprotective – príliš ochraňujúci
prejudiced – zaujatý, s predsudkami
racial – rasistický
responsible – zodpovedný
secure – istý, bezstarostný
similar – podobný
stressed – stresovaný
strict – prísny
tired – unavený
unemployed – nezamestnaný
unexperienced – neskúsený
unique – osobitý, originálny
unstable – nestály

■ VERBS

to behave – správať sa
to be "in" – byť "in", byť moderný
to be in trouble – mať problém
to care – starať sa
to compare – porovnať, nájsť spoločné znaky
to contrast – nájsť odlišné znaky
to create – vytvoriť
to defend – brániť sa
to develop – rozvinúť
to differ – líšiť sa
to follow trends – sledovať trendy
to get smaller – zmenšovať sa
to give compliments – dať komplimenty
to go through – prejsť čím
to have in common – mať spoločné
to identify – určiť, označiť
to lead (to) – viesť (k čomu)
to look for – hľadať
to look like – vyzeráť ako

to prefer – uprednostňovať
to search – pátrať po
to share – deliť sa o
to try – skúsiť, pokúsiť sa
to undergo – podstúpiť

■ OTHER

alone – sám
at the same time – zároveň
closely – tesne, blízko
each other – jeden druhému
ever – (vôbec) niekedy
in contrast – v porovnaní
in the middle – v strede
like – ako
once – raz
still – stále, ešte
the same as – rovnaký ako
towards – smerom k
unlike – na rozdiel od

■ PHRASES

Describing people – opis ľudí

What does he/she look like? Ako vyzerá?

He/She is quite/rather/very tall/skinny/stylish.
Je dosť/skôr/veľmi vysoký/-á/vychudnutý/-á/moderný/-á.

He/She has got short/black/curly hair. Má krátke/čierne/kučeravé vlasy.

He/She cares about himself/herself. Stará sa o seba.

What is he/she like? Aký/Aká je?

He/She is quite/rather/very friendly/responsible/careless. Je dosť/skôr/veľmi priateľský/-á/zodpovedný/-á/nedbanlivý/-á.

He/She cares a lot about other people. Veľmi sa zaujíma o druhých ľudí.

He/She is the sort of a person who... Je to typ človeka, ktorý...

He/she makes me happy./Som šťastný/-á, keď som s ním/ňou.

How old is he/she? Koľko má rokov?

He/She is in his/her early/mid/late twenties. Má niečo po dvadsiatke/asi 25/takmer 30.

14 FOOD

Food and drinks – breakfast, lunch, dinner (jedlá a nápoje – raňajky, obed, večera)

National cuisines (národné kuchyne)

Eating at home, at school, at a restaurant (stravovanie doma, v škole, v reštaurácii)

My favourite food (moje obľúbené jedlo)

Describing the process of food preparation – recipes (opis procesu varenia – recepty)

Expressing compliments and criticism about the food (hodnotenie jedla)



① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. What is your favourite food?
2. Who are vegetarians?
3. What meals can you prepare?

Normally, we eat three times a day – we have **breakfast, lunch** and **dinner**. Eating habits depend on the lifestyle of people. Busy managers do not eat regularly, young people often choose **fast food**, women who want to **lose weight** eat as little as possible and kids are often **fussy** about their food.

Slovaks usually have bread with butter, jam, **honey**, ham or cheese for breakfast, some **prefer scrambled eggs** or **sausage**. The English usually begin the day with a cup of tea or coffee. The traditional English breakfast starts with **cereals** – **porridge** or **cornflakes**. This is sometimes **followed by fried bacon** and eggs or sausages with fried tomatoes, often on the weekends.

In our country lunch is the **main meal consisting of soup**, a **main course** with a **side dish** and a **dessert**. Slovaks like to eat **meat**, usually **pork, beef** or **poultry** with potatoes or rice. *Bryndzové halušky* (**gnocchi** with **sheep cheese**) is **considered** a Slovak national meal. Hungarian **cuisine**, typical for **spicy** meals, is quite popular in the southern parts of Slovakia. Italian cuisine, mostly **pizza** and **pasta**, has become very popular in our country and it is preferred to traditional Slovak meals in many restaurants. Some Slovaks like going to Chinese or Mexican restaurants. Schoolchildren have lunch in **canteens**. Businessmen eat in restaurants where a **daily menu at reduced prices** is **offered** during lunchtime. In Britain lunch is a **light** meal consisting of a warm **dish** (rarely soup) and a dessert, or just sandwiches, some fruit, pudding or ice cream. Beef, chicken or **lamb is served with** potatoes, vegetables and **gravy**. Many Americans like to have lunch and dinner “out” – at snack bars, fast food restaurants or expensive hotels. They also use **take-away** services.

Dinner, the main meal in Britain and America, is served in the evening at between 6 and 7 o'clock when all the members of the family are at home. This meal is often eaten in front of the television. Most dinners during the week are **simple**, often using **pre-cooked food** with **frozen** vegetables, which can be **heated** quickly.

Many supermarkets sell frozen “TV dinners”, which can be quickly prepared in the oven or a **microwave**. Typical take-away food **includes** pizza, Chinese food and the traditional **fish and chips**. The Slovaks prepare dinner themselves at home. It is **either** a warm meal **or** a sandwich. Sometimes they **order** pizza. Some people have a **light supper**, often cheese and **biscuits** and a glass of milk or a **mug** of cocoa before going to bed.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. What does the traditional English breakfast consist of?
2. What do the Slovaks have for lunch?
3. What is the main meal of the day for the English?
4. Explain the expression “fast food”.
5. What are take-away services?
6. What should people do to stay healthy?

PRACTICE TASKS

A Which food or meals below do you eat for breakfast, lunch and dinner?

bread roll sausage garlic soup cornflakes chicken with rice pizza cake
bread and butter scrambled eggs ham and eggs sandwich cabbage soup
ice cream fish and chips tuna salad lettuce fried bacon vegetable salad
pasta beef with potatoes cheese lentil soup French fries

B Read the British recipe for the cabbage soup. Compare the ingredients and the process of its preparation with the cabbage soup cooked in Slovakia.

Cabbage soup Overall timing: 2 hours. To serve 4 persons.

125g onions, 1 garlic, 3 tbsp oil, 350g beef, 350g canned cabbage, salt, 2 litres stock, 125g bacon, 2 frankfurters, paprika, flour, water, sour cream

Peel and slice onions. Peel and crush garlic. Heat oil in large saucepan. Add onions and garlic and fry till golden. Cut beef into small cubes, add to pan and brown all over.

Add canned cabbage and salt to the pan. Add the stock and simmer gently for 1 hour or till meat is tender. Chop the bacon. Fry bacon in a frying pan till crisp, then add the sliced frankfurters and paprika. Cook for 5 minutes, then add to the saucepan. Mix flour with cold water in a bowl till smooth, then stir into the soup mixture and cook for further 5 minutes. Add the sour cream and serve with slices of brown bread.

C

Now talk about your favourite food. Say what ingredients you need to prepare it. Describe how to prepare it. Use the following expressions:

add salt	fry bacon	pre-heat the oven
beat eggs	heat oil	sprinkle with herbs
chop the bacon	grate cheese	sift flour
bring to the boil	melt sugar	simmer gently
cook for 5 minutes	peel onions	slice tomatoes
cut the meat	pour water	serve with brown bread

D

Which sentences below express compliments and which express criticism about the food? → 8

How's your (soup, meat, cake...)?

How do you like (the soup, meat, cake...)?

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. It tastes good/delicious. | 4. It's tasteless. |
| 2. I think it's too spicy/salty/overcooked. | 5. There's not enough salt in it. |
| 3. It's not salty enough. | 6. I love it. It's very tasty. |

E

In a restaurant. Who says the following lines? A waiter (W) or a customer (C)? → 8

Example: Have you ordered yet? W

- | | |
|---|-------|
| 1. What would you like to eat/drink? | _____ |
| 2. I'd like to have two burgers, please. | _____ |
| 3. Can I have the bill, please? | _____ |
| 4. I'd like to order a pizza, please. | _____ |
| 5. What are you going to have for dessert? | _____ |
| 6. I'm afraid there's a fly/hair in my soup. | _____ |
| 7. Could you pass me the salt, please? | _____ |
| 8. I can't decide. What do you recommend? | _____ |
| 9. I recommend our chocolate ice cream. | _____ |
| 10. Did you enjoy your meal? | _____ |
| 11. I like it. I like it a lot. It's fantastic. | _____ |
| 12. Are you fine? | _____ |
| 13. Oh, I'm very sorry about it. | _____ |
| 14. Enjoy your meal. | _____ |

□ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 14 FOOD

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372.

Read the text below and discuss the changing trends of eating habits in Britain. Say what the British eat to stay fit and healthy. Express your opinion about vegetarians.

Recently, there have been great changes in eating habits. English favourites, sausages, fried eggs, bacon and chips are now on decline. Many people think that too much fat may cause diseases, such as diabetes and heart disease. Therefore they drink more skimmed milk, prefer wholemeal or brown bread to the white one and eat less butter. They also cut down on meat. The British eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, food rich in fibre, and low-fat products with no sugar or cholesterol. Many young people in Britain are now vegetarian, which means that they do not eat meat or fish. Vegetarian food is easily available in British shops and supermarkets. Britain's food industry now also produces more tasty low-fat food.

Task 2

Talk about the eating habits of young people. Talk about:

- * the food the young usually have for breakfast/lunch/dinner,
- * favourite food of young people,
- * pros and cons of fast food restaurants.

Task 3 Role-play

You: You are having a dinner in an expensive restaurant with your parents. Unfortunately, there are some problems. Complain to the manager of the restaurant about the quality of the food, service and waiting time. Your parents are not willing to pay for the food.

Your partner: You are the manager of an expensive restaurant. Some guests are complaining about the food, service and waiting time. They even refuse to pay for the food. Apologise to them and charge only for drinks.

□ VOCABULARY FOOD

■ NOUNS

beef – hovädzie mäso

bowl – misa, miska

bread and butter – chlieb s maslom

bread roll – rohlík

breakfast – raňajky

biscuits – sušienky

cabbage – kapusta

cake – koláč

canned cabbage – kapusta z konzervy

canteen – jedáleň

cereals – obilniny

cornflakes – kukuričné lupienky

cube – kocka

cuisine – (národná) kuchyňa

daily menu – denné menu

dessert – dezert

diabetes – cukrovka

dinner – večera

dish – jedlo, chod

eating habits – stravovacie návyky

fast food – rýchle jedlo

fibre – vláknina

fish and chips – ryba s hranolkami

flour – múka

French fries – hranolky (amer. angl.)

fried bacon – pečená slanina

frying pan – panvica na vyprážanie

garlic – cesnak

gnocchi (čítaj ňoki) – halušky

gravy – šťava z mäsa, omáčka

heart disease – ochorenie srdca

honey – med

ingredient – prísada

lamb – jahňa

lentil – šošovica

lettuce – hlávkový šalát

lunch – obed

main meal, main course – hlavné jedlo

meat – mäso

microwave – mikrovlnná rúra

mug – hrnček

oil – olej

onion – cibuľa

oven – rúra

overall timing – celkový čas

pan – panvica, pekáč, hrniec

paprika – paprika

pasta – cestoviny

pork – bravčové mäso

porridge – kaša

poultry – hydina

pre-cooked food – predvarené jedlo,
polotovár

preparation – príprava

price – cena

recipe – recept

salt – soľ

saucepan – panvica, kastról

sausage – párok, klobása

scrambled eggs – praženica

sheep cheese – ovčí syr

side dish – príloha

skimmed milk – odstredené mlieko

slice of bread – krajec chleba

soup – polievka

sour cream – kyslá smotana

stock – mäsový vývar, bujón

supper – (druhá) večera

take-away (food) – jedlo so sebou

tbsp (tablespoon) – polievková lyžica

tuna salad – tuniakový šalát

TV dinner – večera pri televízore

vegetable salad – zeleninový šalát

■ ADJECTIVES

available – dostupný

favourite – obľúbený

frozen – zamrazený

fussy – stále nespokojný

golden – zlatistý

healthy – zdravý

light – ľahký

low-fat – nízkoenergetický

simple – jednoduchý

smooth – hladký

spicy – pikantný

tender – mäkký (o mäse)

wholemeal – celozrnný

tasty – chutný

willing (to) – ochotný

■ VERBS

to add – pridať

to apologise – ospravedlniť sa

to beat eggs – vyšľahať vajcia

to bring to the boil – priviesť k varu

to brown – pražiť

to cause – spôsobiť

to charge – účtovať za

to chop – jemne nakrájať, nasekať

to complain – sťažovať sa

to consider – považovať

to consist of – pozostávať z

to cover – zakryť

to crush – rozdrviť

to cut – nakrájať

to cut down – znížiť, zredukovať

to depend (on) – závisieť (na)

to follow – nasledovať

to fry – vyprážať, smažiť

to grate cheese – strúhať syr

to heat – zohriať

to include – zahŕňať

to lose weight – schudnúť

to melt sugar – roztopiť cukor

to offer – ponúknuť

to order – objednať si

to peel – olúpať, očistiť

to pour water – naliať vodu

to prefer – uprednostňovať

to pre-heat the oven – predhriať rúru

to prepare – pripraviť

to refuse – odmietnuť

to remove – odstrániť

to serve with – podávať s

to sift flour – preosiať múku

to simmer – variť na miernom ohni

to slice – nakrájať

to sprinkle with herbs – posypať bylinkami

to stay fit – byť fit

to stir – miešať

■ OTHER

at reduced prices – za znížené ceny

either... or – buď... alebo

gently – jemne

on decline – na úpadku

recently – nedávno

unfortunately – nanešťastie

■ PHRASES

Expressing compliments and criticism

about the food – hodnotenie jedla

It tastes good/delicious. Chutí to dobre.

It's very tasty. Je to veľmi chutné.

I think it's too spicy/salty/overcooked. Myslim, že je to príliš korenisté/slané/prevarené.

It's not salty enough. Nie je to dosť slané.

It's tasteless. Je to bez chuti.

There's not enough salt in it. Nie je tam dosť soli.

At a restaurant – v reštaurácii

What would you like to eat/drink? Čo si

dáte/dáš na jedenie/na pitie?

I'd like to have... please. Daľ/-a by som si..., prosím.

Can I have the bill, please? Môžem dostať účet, prosím?

How do you like it? Ako vám/ti chutí?

I'm afraid there's a fly/hair in my soup. Obávam sa, že v mojej polievke je mucha/vlas.

Could you pass me the salt, please? Podali by ste mi/Podal by si mi soľ, prosím?

Enjoy your meal. Dobrú chuť.

15 HOBBIES, LEISURE AND LIFESTYLE

How to spend free time (možnosti trávenia voľného času)

Organised leisure activities – extracurricular activities, clubs

(organizované mimoškolské aktivity a kluby)

Individual interests – art, books, hiking (individuálne záujmy – umenie, knihy, turistika)

Expressing opinion (vyjadrenie názoru)

Asking for information (získavanie informácií)

Expressions to fill time in conversation (frázy na vyplnenie času počas konverzácie)



① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. Which traditional hobbies do the Slovaks practise?
2. Do you keep a pet? If so, how do you look after it?
3. Which sports do you practise as a hobby?

Free time after work or study is called **leisure time**. It is the time for fun, **entertainment**, going out or doing hobbies. Hobbies are **connected to** lifestyles. Some people like **to be on their own** and learn new things by reading books. Others **enjoy company** and often go out or do collective sports. Our hobbies should fit our character and **complement** well our work or study.

Teenagers have their own special leisure interests. These **include** playing team sports, dancing at a favourite disco, going to parties or **joining** some clubs. They like to spend their leisure time actively in groups, **in good company**. Those who prefer staying at home usually watch DVDs, listen to music, browse the Internet or chat on the Internet. Typical teenage sports are **roller-skating** and skateboarding.

Many children and young people join different clubs where they practise their hobbies. The most popular are football, tennis, dance or **horse riding** clubs. Sometimes, it is not their choice but the choice of their parents. Some parents **force** their children to **play an instrument** or do some sport because they think they will **prevent** them from taking drugs or drinking alcohol.

Many people have **creative** hobbies, such as **acting**, **choir singing**, folk dancing and playing pop-music in amateur groups. Photography, **painting** and **drawing** are also popular hobbies. There are many **opportunities** for people to **develop** their talents in these areas.

A lot of people, both children and adults, **keep a pet**. Older people like gardening, doing practical jobs around their houses (**DIY – do it yourself**), fishing, reading, going to theatre, concerts or **art exhibitions**. Slovak **pensioners** are quite traditional and prefer staying at home.

At present, more and more people of all ages spend their leisure time doing exercises to **keep fit**. **Hiking**, cycling, **rowing**, playing golf and tennis are enjoyed by

people all over the world. It is **quite common** to see **parties of hikers**, cyclists or fivers spending their weekends **outdoors**. Those who prefer **indoor** physical exercises, such as **body building** or aerobics, go to fitness centres. A relatively **recent** sport enjoyed by the young is snow-boarding, which **combines** skiing, surfing and skateboarding. Many Slovaks travel **abroad** to practise less common sports, such as **scuba diving**, **yachting** and playing golf.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. What is leisure time?
2. Why are hobbies connected to lifestyles?
3. What do teenagers do during their leisure time?
4. Why do some parents tell their children what hobbies to practise?
5. What are creative hobbies?
6. Which indoor and outdoor sports do people practise as their hobbies?

PRACTICE TASKS

A Which of the following hobbies are individual/collective hobbies or both?

collecting stamps	dance	skateboarding	horse riding	playing the piano
choir singing	aerobics	body building	gardening	
reading	tennis	hiking	yachting	diving
			photography	DIY

B What instruments/equipment/tools/special clothes do you need to practise the hobbies above?

Example: tennis – racket, tennis ball, net, good trainers

C Which hobby/hobbies would you recommend to these people? Which hobby/hobbies wouldn't you recommend them? Explain the reasons of your choice.

Example: a young businessman who loves adventure and fun

I think that this person *should* practise some adrenaline sports, such as scuba diving or yachting. These are adventurous sports and they will bring him/her a lot of relax and fun in a team.

I don't think that he/she *would be* interested in something like collecting stamps. I think it would be boring for him/her.

1. a bored teenager who likes movement, fun and company of friends
2. a talented girl who likes singing
3. an older man who works physically a lot
4. a middle-aged woman who wants to lose some weight
5. a pregnant woman
6. a middle-aged man who underwent an operation
7. a retired couple who like spending time together
8. a hyperactive small child
9. a teenage girl who loves adrenaline sports
10. the only child who feels lonely

D

You are interested in attending the course of diving. Ask questions about the age limit, number of lessons, study material, other participants, diving instructors, practical part of the course, equipment for diving, the price of the course. Start to ask like this:

Sorry, what/who/where/why/how...?

Excuse me, do you know...?

Excuse me, could you tell me...?

I'm interested in...

I'd like to know/ask if...

Could you tell me how to...?

Could you give me some information about...?

I wonder if you could tell me...

E

Now role-play the dialogue with the diving instructor. Use the questions from the previous activity.

□ Role Play

F

YOU: Your parents force you to play the piano. You hate going to the music school. You think that you are not talented enough. You do not like the teacher and the teacher doesn't like you. You want to start to play football instead. Explain this to your parents and give strong logical arguments. Start like this:

Mum, Dad, I want to tell you something.

How should I say this?

You know, I think that...

Ok, so it's about my...

Well, my teacher says that...

I'd rather ...

I would prefer...

I hate...

I promise I will...

I'd like to...

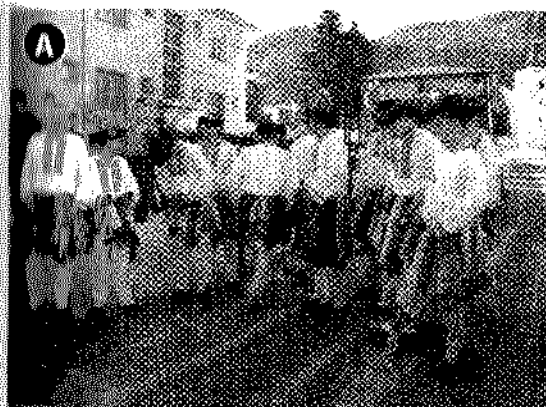
YOUR PARENTS: Your child attends the music school to learn how to play the piano. You think that he is very talented. You want him/her to continue because you think it is the best hobby for him/her.

□ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 15 HOBBIES, LEISURE AND LIFESTYLE

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372.

Look at the pictures below. Talk about how people in the pictures usually spend their free time. Say why some people prefer spending their free time alone.



Task 2

Talk about the most popular hobbies in Slovakia among the children, teenagers and adults. Talk about your hobbies. Say how often you practise them, who with, where and why. Say what other hobbies you would like to practise in the future.

Task 3 Simulation

Your younger brother has decided to attend a diving course. You are not happy about it because you think it is very dangerous for him. He is not a very good swimmer and he is not very brave either. You are worried. How would you persuade him to give up the idea of learning how to dive? What other sports or hobbies would you recommend him to start practising?

□ VOCABULARY HOBBIES, LEISURE AND LIFESTYLE

■ NOUNS

abroad – zahraničie
 acting – hranie divadla
 adventure – dobrodružstvo
 age limit – veková hranica
 argument – dôvod
 art exhibition – umelecká výstava
 body building – kulturistika
 choir – spevácky zbor
 couple – pár, dvojica
 diving – potápanie
 DIY (do it yourself) – urob to sám
 drawing – kreslenie
 entertainment – zábava
 equipment – výstroj
 fun – zábava
 hiking – turistika
 horse riding – jazda na koni
 instrument – náradie
 leisure (time) – voľný čas
 movement – pohyb
 net – sieť
 opportunity – príležitosť
 painting – maľovanie
 participant – účastník
 party of hikers – skupina turistov
 pensioner – dôchodca

roller-skating – korčuľovanie na kolieskových korčuľoch
 rowing – veslovanie
 scuba diving – potápanie
 trainers (AmE: sneakers) – tenisky
 stamp – známka
 tool – náradie
 yachting (čítaj jóting) – jachting

■ ADJECTIVES

adventurous – dobrodružný
 brave – statočný
 creative – tvorivý
 indoor – vnútorný, izbový, halový
 middle-aged – v strednom veku
 own – vlastný
 pregnant – tehotná
 recent – nedávny
 retired – na dôchodku
 worried – ustarostený

■ VERBS

to attend – navštevovať (kurz, školu)
 to be connected to – mať súvislosť s
 to be on their own – byť sami (samy)
 to collect – zbierať
 to combine – spájať

to complement – dopĺňať
 to develop – rozvíjať
 to enjoy (company) – tešiť sa (zo spoločnosti ľudí)
 to explain – vysvetliť
 to fit – patriť medzi, pasovať
 to force – nútiť
 to give up (the idea) – vzdať sa (myšlienky)
 to hate – nenávidieť
 to include – zahrňať
 to join – pridať sa
 to keep (a pet) – chovať (domáce zviera)
 to keep fit – udržiavať sa v dobrej kondícii
 to look after – dávať pozor na
 to lose weight – schudnúť
 to persuade – presvedčiť
 to play an instrument – hrať na hudobný nástroj
 to prevent – predísť
 to undergo an operation – podstúpiť operáciu

■ OTHER

all over the world – po celom svete
 both – obaja, obe
 either – ani
 in good company (of people) – v dobrej spoločnosti (ľudí)
 instead – namiesto
 outdoors – vonku
 quite common – celkom bežné

■ PHRASES

Expressing opinion – vyjadrenie názoru
I think that he/she should... Myslím si, že on/-a by mal/-a...
I don't think that he/she would be interested in... because... Nemyslím si, že on/-a by sa zaujímal/-a o..., pretože...

Asking for information – získavanie informácií

Sorry, what/who/where/why/how...? Prepáčte, čo/kto/kde/prečo/ako...?
Excuse me, do you know...? Prepáčte, viete/poznáte...?
Excuse me, could you tell me...? Prepáčte, mohli by ste mi povedať...?
I'd like to know/ask if... Chcel/a by som vedieť/spýtať sa či...
Could you tell me how to...? Mohli by ste mi povedať, ako...?
Could you give me some information about...? Mohli by ste ma informovať o...?
I wonder if you could tell me... Mohli by ste mi povedať...?

Expressions to fill time in conversation – frázy na vyplnenie času počas konverzácie

How should I say this? Ako to mám povedať?
You know, I think that... Viete/Vieš, myslím si, že...

16 MULTICULTURAL SOCIETY

Multiculturalism and its understanding (multikultúrnosť a jej chápanie)

Bicultural families (bikultúrne rodiny)

Holidays, habits and traditions (sviatky, zvyky a tradície)

Countries and nationalities (krajiný a národnosť)

How to gain time for thinking (ako získať čas na premyslenie si odpovede)

How to say you don't know (ako povedať, že nevieš)

How to come up with some ideas (ako sa vynájsť)



① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. Can you give any examples of countries with multicultural society?
2. Is Slovakia also a multicultural country?
3. What are the common problems of immigrants?

A multicultural society is a country where different cultural groups live together. They try to **preserve** their cultures, **habits** and traditions. Cultural differences should be respected and tolerated. This is the official **policy** in Canada, Australia and the UK. **Immigrants** can have **dual citizenship**, they can use their **minority** language and they can keep their culture and **religion**. In some countries they are expected to mix and **integrate** into the national culture. A typical example is the USA where immigrants preserve their own culture but also become Americans. Cultural adaptation is more difficult when immigrants have to adapt to different cultural **values** or religion. Lack of cultural integration can cause the **isolation** of immigrant minorities. This can provoke reactions of **xenophobia** and **racism**, which can **lead to** serious **incidents**.

In 2004, Slovakia became part of a larger community – the European Community. Many Slovaks decided to leave the country for study or work; a lot of them got married **abroad** and created **bicultural** families. Living in a bicultural (or **cross-cultural**) family **requires** a lot of tolerance and understanding from **both sides**. Practising the traditions and habits of two cultures can be a good compromise and **benefit** for the **couple** and their children. Nowadays, there are many study programmes which make student **exchange** possible. Students go to live and study in a culturally different country in a “host family”. Such exchanges are usually very **beneficial**. People learn about new cultures, make friends and become tolerant.

Slovakia is also a multicultural country. The **majority** of Slovak population is Slovak. The country also has **several** minorities, the biggest of which are Hungarian, Roma, Ruthenian and Ukrainian. The Roma population in Slovakia has problems to **adapt** and is often a **victim** of racist **attacks**.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. What does multiculturalism mean?
2. What rights do immigrants have in multicultural countries?
3. How can people profit from cultural exchanges?
4. What are the minorities living in Slovakia?

PUBLIC HOLIDAYS

Public holidays in Great Britain are called “bank holidays”. All the banks, offices, schools, shops and factories are closed. Bank holidays **include** **Easter** and **Christmas**. **Easter** is a typical spring holiday. In Britain it is celebrated over several days. On **Good Friday**, people eat hot cross buns and on Sunday people give each other chocolate eggs. There is nothing like Slovak traditions with water and **willow whips**. In the USA children like this holiday very much because the **Easter Bunny** comes with coloured chocolate eggs and **candies**. At **Christmas** houses, shops and streets are decorated with coloured lights, Christmas trees, **holly**, **ivy** or **mistletoe**. **Christmas carols** are sung in houses, cathedrals and churches. In Slovakia carol singers mostly sing in the villages. People buy presents and send Christmas cards to their **relatives** and friends. In Slovakia people open their presents, which they find under the Christmas tree on December, 24. In Britain children **hang** their **stockings** at the foot of the bed for Santa Claus (or Father Christmas) to fill them. In the morning on **Christmas Day**, December, 25, children get up early to open their Christmas presents. Families have a traditional Christmas dinner: in Britain it is **stuffed turkey** and Christmas pudding **afterwards**. In Slovakia it is fish (usually **carp**) with potato salad. The following day is the **Boxing Day** (December, 26) when many people visit other members of their families. In Slovakia people also visit their families on this day.

In the USA the **Independence Day** (July, 4) is one of the most important public holidays. It **celebrates** the **independence** of American colonies from Britain. The oldest American holiday is the **Thanksgiving Day**. It **reminds** us of the first **successful harvest** which helped the colony at Plymouth to **survive** the winter. **Halloween** is a typical American holiday celebrated on October, 31. According to an old tradition, it is a **witches'** holiday. It is popular with both young and old people, who dress themselves in **fancy** costumes and go to parties to have fun. The most famous holiday of the Irish people is the **St. Patrick's Day**, named after the **patron saint** of Ireland, who brought **Christianity** to Ireland. On this day, people dress in green, eat Irish food and drink Guinness. St. Patrick's **parades** are seen in many towns and cities in Ireland and the USA.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. What are the most important public holidays in Great Britain?
2. Compare and contrast Christmas habits in Great Britain and Slovakia.
3. Which are the most famous public holidays in the USA?
4. How is St. Patrick's Day celebrated?

PRACTICE TASKS

A Which of the following words are countries and which are nationalities? Pair them.

Example: Slovakia (country) – Slovak (nationality)

Sweden Wales China Austrian France Spanish English
Slovakia Czech Slovak Poland Dutch Greek Italy Hungarian
Italian Greece French the Czech Republic Welsh Austria Swiss
Hungary the Netherlands Spain England Chinese Ireland

B Correct the names of countries and languages in the text.

I went on holiday to ~~German~~^{Germany} last year where I met some really interesting people. The first one was Mario. He was an Italy but we spoke England together. He was really intelligent and could speak Hungary and Spain, but he didn't know any Slovakia. My other great friend there was Isabelle. She was France, but her mother was Poland so she could understand most of what I said. The three of us had a great time. We went to see a Russia film and then had a Greece meal. We're hoping to meet again next year in Dutch or maybe Irish.

C Which holidays are described below? Choose the word from the box.

Boxing Day Christmas Easter St. Patrick's Day Independence Day
New Year's Eve Thanksgiving Day Valentine's Day

1. It is the day of all lovers and friends. They send postcards to each other.
2. In the USA children like this holiday very much because they get many coloured chocolate eggs and candies. This holiday usually lasts several days. In Slovakia we have traditions with water and willow whips on the Monday.

3. It is an American holiday which celebrates the independence of American colonies from the British. It is the anniversary of the signing of the Declaration of Independence in 1776.
4. It is the oldest American holiday. It was first celebrated in 1621 after the first successful harvest which helped the colony at Plymouth to survive the winter.
5. Long before this holiday, people decorate their homes and offices with coloured lights and trees. There are church services where people sing carols. People give presents to each other and spend more time together.
6. It is the Irish holiday named after the patron saint who brought Christianity there. People dress in green and drink Guinness. There are parades in towns and cities in Ireland or the USA.
7. It is the day after Christmas Day. People usually visit their families this day.
8. It is the last day of the year when people normally go to work. They don't go to bed early but stay up till midnight to see the fireworks.

D Which of the following customs and traditions are also typical for your region at Christmas? Describe other customs and traditions you keep in your family at Christmas.

1. We decorate our Christmas tree on December, 24 in the morning.
2. We sing and listen to Christmas carols on CDs.
3. Before Christmas dinner, we read the passage from the Bible about the birth of Jesus.
4. We eat Christmas waffles filled with honey, garlic and black pepper.
5. For Christmas dinner, we eat lentil soup with dry plums and fried carp with potato salad.
6. When we finish dinner, our father rings the bell to tell us that Santa Claus (Father Christmas) has come and brought us presents.
7. At midnight, we go to church and we go to see the Bethlehem.

E How would you celebrate Christmas if your life partner was British? Would you keep the Slovak or British traditions and habits?

- * **To gain time for thinking:** Well, that's a very interesting question. It's difficult to say...
- * **To say you don't know:** I'm afraid I can't answer this question. I actually don't know. I have never experienced anything like that.
- * **To come up with some ideas:** Maybe I would... It depends on... I think I would... I certainly would not... I would prefer...

□ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 16 MULTICULTURAL SOCIETY

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372.

Look at the picture of a Slovak man and his Japanese wife. Describe them and talk about the advantages and disadvantages of bicultural relationships.



Task 2

Compare how Christmas is celebrated in Britain and Slovakia. Talk about:

- the Christmas decoration,
- what people do at Christmas,
- when they get Christmas presents,
- where they find Christmas presents,
- what they eat at Christmas.

What do you like about the British way of celebrating Christmas? What do you like about the Slovak way of celebrating Christmas?

Task 3 Simulation

You are having a serious relationship with a British person. You are going to get married soon. You have to decide where you are going to live – in Britain, in Slovakia or somewhere else. If you leave Slovakia, you will lose your job and you will be far from your friends and family. However, it is the same for your partner. You know that your qualification is not sufficient to get a good job abroad. How will you decide so that both of you are happy?

□ VOCABULARY MULTICULTURAL SOCIETY

■ NOUNS

abroad – zahraničie
 anniversary – výročie
 attack – útok
 benefit – osob, prospech
 Bethlehem – Betlehem
 bible – biblia
 both sides – obe strany
 candies (AmE) – cukríky
 carp – kapor
 Christianity – kresťanstvo
 Christmas carol – vianočná koleda
 church – kostol
 church service – bohoslužba
 couple – pár, dvojica
 custom – zvyk
 dry plums – sušené slivky
 dual citizenship – dvojité občianstvo
 Easter Bunny – veľkonočný zajac
 exchange – výmena
 factory – továreň
 fancy costume – karnevalový kostým
 fireworks – ohňostroj
 habit – zvyk
 harvest – žatva
 holly – cezmína
 hot cross buns – veľkonočný bochníček
 immigrant – imigrant, prisťahovalec
 incident – incident
 independence – nezávislosť
 isolation – izolácia
 ivy – brečtan
 Jesus – Ježiš
 lentil soup – šošovicová polievka
 majority – väčšina
 mass – omša
 minority – menšina
 mistletoe – imelo
 parade – sprievod
 patron saint – svätec (ochranca)
 policy – politika, konanie
 public holiday – štátny sviatok
 racism – racizmus
 region – región, oblasť
 relative – príbuzný

religion – náboženstvo
 stocking – pančucha
 stuffed turkey – plnený moriak
 value – hodnota
 victim – obeť
 waffle – oplátka
 willow whip – korbáč z vrby
 witch – striga
 xenophobia – xenofóbia, chorobná
 nenávisť k cudzincom

Boxing Day – (u nás Druhý sviatok vianočný)

Christmas – Vianoce

Good Friday – Veľký piatok

Easter – Veľká noc

Independence Day – Deň nezávislosti

New Years Day – Nový rok (1. január)

New Year's Eve – Silvester (31. december)

Thanksgiving Day – Deň vďakyvdania

■ ADJECTIVES

beneficial – prospešný
 bicultural – dvoj kultúrny
 common – spoločný
 cross-cultural – medzikultúrny
 following – nasledujúci
 multicultural – mnohonárodný
 racist – rasistický
 several – zopár
 successful – úspešný
 sufficient – postačujúci

■ VERBS

to adapt – prispôbiť sa
 to celebrate – oslaviť
 to compare – porovnať
 to decide – rozhodnúť sa
 to describe – opísať
 to hang – zavesiť
 to include – zahrňať
 to integrate – integrovať, spojiť
 to join – spojiť sa, pridať sa
 to keep (traditions) – uchovávať (tradície)
 to lead to – viesť k

to leave – odísť, opustiť
 to lose – stratiť
 to preserve – uchovať
 to profit – profitovať, mať zisk
 to remind – pripomenúť
 to require – vyžadovať
 to sign – podpísať
 to survive – prežiť

■ OTHER

according to – podľa (niekoho)
 afterwards – potom, neskôr
 lack of – nedostatok
 the same – rovnaký

Dutch – Holanďan, holandský

Poland – Poľsko

Roma – Róm

Ruthenian – Rusín, rusínsky

Ukrainian – Ukrajinec, ukrajinský

Swiss – Švajčiar, švajčiarsky

Welsh – Welšan, welšský

■ PHRASES

How to gain time for thinking – získanie času na premyslenie si odpovede alebo pri vyjadrení názoru

Well, that's a very interesting question. Nuž, to je veľmi zaujímavá otázka.

It's difficult to say... To je ťažko povedať...

How to say you don't know – ako povedať, že nevieš

I'm afraid I can't answer this question. Obávam sa, že na toto neviem odpovedať.

I actually don't know. Vskutku, neviem.

How to come up with some ideas – ako sa vynájsť

Maybe I would... Možno by som...

It depends on... To závisí na...

I think I would... Myslím, že by som...

I would prefer... Uprednostnil/-a by som...

17 TOWNS AND PLACES

Important places in my life (dôležité miesta v mojom živote)

Guiding tourists (sprevádzanie turistov)

Interesting places for tourists (turisticky zaujímavé miesta)

Describing a place (opis miesta)

Recommendations (odporúčenia)

(Pozri aj doplnkový materiál na strane 355.)



1 Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. What is your birthplace famous for?
2. Which are the most beautiful places in Slovakia?
3. Which are the most beautiful places in the world?

People live in different places during their life. They **move** from place to place for a new living, job, studies or marriage. Some people live in one place all their life. Our **birthplace** is the place where we were **born** and where our family and friends live. Many young people move when they **decide** to study in a different town or country. **From time to time**, all people **leave** their homes when they travel away for holidays. Some people look for **quiet, peaceful** places in the **countryside** which are far away from **fast** and **hectic** life in cities. The others **search for** places full of **adventure** and **excitement**.

Slovaks spend their holidays **either** in Slovakia **or** abroad. When they choose to go abroad for holidays, they usually contact a **travel agency**. They choose a **holiday resort** from a catalogue and the travel agent gives them all the **necessary** information about the stay. During their holidays, they communicate with a **guide** who represents the travel agency.

There are many beautiful towns and places in the world. Some of them are **surprising, inspiring** and **exciting**. The most beautiful cities in the world are *Prague, London, New York, Paris* and many others. They **offer** many cultural **events**, possibilities for **sightseeing**, shopping in the most **luxurious** shops, restaurants, casinos, night clubs. The *Hawaiian Islands* and the *Seychelles* are called "**paradise**" places. They are **preferred** by those who **look for** the exotic and **relaxation**. *The Amazon, the Grand Canyon* and *the Sahara* belong to the most beautiful **wild** places. The **wonders** of the world, such as the *Acropolis*, the *Giza Pyramids* or the *Great Wall* and others, are **perhaps** the most **mysterious** places in the world. The most **favourite destinations** of the Slovaks are *Croatia, Greece, Italy* in summer and *the Alps* in winter.

Slovakia also offers many interesting places for relaxation. Beautiful **sceneries**, **caves**, **waterfalls** attract many **domestic** and **foreign tourists**. The *High* and the *Low Tatras* are great places for spending active holidays **all year round**. **Mountaineering**, **hiking**, **skiing**, **cross-country skiing**, **cycling** and **horse riding** are also very popular. The *National Park of Low Tatras*, *Demänovská Ice Cave*, the **spa** with mineral and **thermal springs** in *Piešťany* or *Sliač*, the **castle** of *Orava*, *Spis* or *Trenčín* are the **favourite tourist** destinations. The most famous cultural events are folklore festivals, which **annually take place** in *Detva*, *Myjava* and **elsewhere**.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. Why do people move?
2. What is your favourite holiday destination?
3. Which cities of the world would you like to visit and why?
4. Which world places would you recommend to nature lovers to see?
5. What does Slovakia offer to tourists?
6. If you could choose a new place to live, where would it be?

PRACTICE TASKS

A Which of the following things can be found in the place where you live?

art gallery swimming pool shopping centre park factory football
stadium cinema ZOO university bar train station castle
disco museum theatre restaurant river bank post office
petrol station hospital hill casino

B Which adjectives best describe your birthplace?

small-sized clean agricultural loud medium-sized damaged
cheap old expensive peaceful safe dangerous large
hectic historic modern crowded isolated famous industrial
reconstructed representative

C Describe the place where you were born by answering the questions below.

1. Where were you born?
2. Is it a village, town or city?
3. Where is it situated?
4. How big is it?
5. How many inhabitants are there?
6. What is it famous for?
7. What makes it interesting/boring?
8. What do you like about your birthplace?
9. What don't you like about it?
10. What should be built in your place?
11. What needs to be reconstructed there?
12. What cultural events are there?
13. What sport facilities are there?
14. What schooling possibilities are there?
15. What job opportunities are there?
16. Are there any attractions for tourists?

D Which of the following towns and places would be interesting for nature lovers, history lovers and adventure lovers? Which towns or places would you like to visit? Why?

Prague Niagara Falls London the Sahara New York City the Alps
Venice the Great Chinese Wall Paris the Grand Canyon the Amazon
the Antarctica the Giza Pyramids Jerusalem the Seychelles

E A group of American students came to study to Slovakia. Which places from the list below would you recommend them to go to? Why?

*I would certainly take them to... because... I think they might be interested in...
I am sure that they would like... because... I am not sure if they would like to...*

- * the High Tatras : mountaineering, hiking, skiing, cycling and horse riding
- * Veľká and Malá Studená Dolina: waterfalls, hiking
- * Demänovská Ice Cave
- * open-air thermal pool in Bešeňová
- * castle in Bojnice
- * Detva – the folklore festival
- * Tatralandia Aqua Park
- * spa in Piešťany – mud bath procedures
- * Bratislava – jazz festival

F

Invite your American friends to spend a weekend with you in some interesting places in Slovakia. Inform them where you want to take them and what you can do there.

Would you like to spend a weekend in...?

How about visiting some interesting places in Slovakia?

I would like to take you to... where we can...

□ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 17 TOWNS AND PLACES

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372.

Read the information from a tourist guide about the High Tatras in Slovakia. Say what it is famous for and what activities tourists can do there. Say whether you would like to go there once and which places from the text you would like to see.

The High Tatras is situated in the north of Slovakia and creates the natural border between Slovakia and Poland. The highest peaks of the High Tatras are: Gerlach (2 655 m), Lomnický štít (2 632 m) and Kriváň (2 494 m). The most frequently visited lake of the High Tatras is Štrbské pleso. It is popular not only for wonderful views of the surrounding mountain peaks but also for excellent climate, which is good for healing some diseases of the respiratory system. Visitors to Štrbské pleso can stay in modern hotels Panorama and Patria. For tourists interested in older architecture there is Starý Smokovec, founded at the end of the 18th century. The town of Vysoké Tatry is an important administrative centre and the most important resort for mountain tourism, winter sports and year-round recreation.

Task 2

- Explain the meaning of the following statement.

My home is not a place, it is people.
(Lois McMaster Bujold)

- Talk about the place where you were born. Say what people and important relationships is your birthplace connected with.
- Talk about the place you would like to live in the future. Explain the reasons of your choice.

Task 3 Simulation

You are a tour guide. Which places in Slovakia would you recommend to a group of American tourists who are interested in Slovak history, culture and traditions? Explain the reasons of your choice.

□ VOCABULARY TOWNS AND PLACES

■ NOUNS

abroad – zahraničie
adventure – dobrodružstvo
attraction – atrakcia
birthplace – rodiisko
castle – hrad, zámok
cave – jaskyňa
countryside – vidiek
cross-country skiing – bežkovanie
cycling – bicyklovanie
decision – rozhodnutie
destination – vzdialenosť
event – udalosť
excitement – vzrušenie
experience – skúsenosť
facility – zariadenie
factory – továreň
guide – sprievodca
hiking – turistika
hill – kopec
holiday resort – rekreačné stredisko
horse riding – jazdecko
inhabitant – obyvateľ
mountaineering – horolezectvo
opportunity – príležitosť
paradise – raj
relaxation – relax
scenery – scenéria
sightseeing – prehliadka pamätihodností
skiing – lyžovanie
spa – kúpele
swimming pool – bazén
thermal spring – termálny prameň
tourist (čítaj turist) – turista; turistický
travel agency – cestovná kancelária
waterfall – vodopád
wonder – div, zázrak

■ ADJECTIVES

agricultural – poľnohospodársky
boring – nudný
crowded – preplnený
damaged – zničený
dangerous – nebezpečný
domestic – domáci
exciting – vzrušujúci
famous – známy
fast – rýchly
favourite – obľúbený
foreign – cudzí
hectic – hektický, rušný
historic (event, building, monument, centre) – historický
important – dôležitý
industrial – priemyselný
inspiring – inšpirujúci
loud – hlučný
luxurious – luxusný
medium-sized – stredne veľký
mysterious – záhadný
necessary – potrebný
peaceful – pokojný
quiet – tichý
reconstructed – zrekonštruovaný
situated – umiestnený
small-sized – malej veľkosti
surprising – prekvapujúci
wild – divý, divoký
year-round – celoročný

■ VERBS

to attract – priťahovať
to be born – narodiť sa
to be interested in – zaujímať sa o
to create – vytvoriť

to decide – rozhodnúť sa
 to describe – opísať
 to enjoy – tešiť sa
 to invite – pozvať
 to leave – odísť, opustiť
 to look for – hľadať, vyhľadávať
 to move – presťahovať sa
 to offer – ponúknuť
 to prefer – uprednostňovať
 to recommend – odporučiť
 to search for – vyhľadávať
 to take place – konať sa

■ OTHER

all year round – po celý rok
 either... or... – buď... alebo...
 elsewhere – inde
 annually – každoročne
 far – ďaleko
 from time to time – občas
 perhaps – snáď

■ PHRASES

Describing a place – opis miesta
 This place is famous for... Toto miesto je
 známe pre...

It's situated in... Nachádza sa...

How to recommend interesting places
 to tourists – ako odporučiť turistom
 zaujímavé miesta

I would certainly recommend them...

Určite by som im odporučil/-a...

I am sure that they would like... Som si
 istý/-á, že by sa im páčilo...

I think they might be interested in... Myslím,
 že by sa zaujímali o...

I am not sure if they would like to... Nie som
 si istý/-á, či by chceli...

How to invite friends to see interesting
 places – ako pozvať priateľov pozrieť si
 zaujímavé miesta

Would you like to spend a weekend

in...? Chceli by ste/Chcel/-a by si stráviť
 víkend v...?

How about visiting some interesting places
 in Slovakia? Čo tak navštíviť zopár zaujímavých miest na Slovensku?

I would like to take you to... Chcel/-a by
 som vás/ta vziať...

18 FASHION

Attitude of people towards fashion (postoje ľudí k móde)

Weather and clothing (počasie a oblečenie)

Clothes for different occasions (oblečenie na rôzne príležitosti)

Taking care of clothes (starostlivosť o oblečenie)

Tailored clothes versus ready-made clothes (šaty šité na mieru verzus hotové šaty)

Giving compliments/criticising (komplimenty a kritika)



① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. What clothes are you wearing now?
2. Who do you dress up for?
3. Explain the old saying "Clothes make the man".

Fashion is the way people dress in a certain period of time. It changes very fast. Sometimes, it is quite difficult to say what is still trendy or what is already out of fashion. The clothes people wear tell us about their age, origin, religion, interests and financial situation. Fashion is a way of self-expression, especially for the young. They show their mood, interests, attitudes and status in society through styles, colours, patterns, materials and accessories. Most young people get dressed according to their own taste. They wear casual clothes, such as jeans, baggy trousers, loose sweatshirts and sneakers. Some young people buy brand name clothes in expensive shops and boutiques to be "in".

Clothing is connected with weather. In summer, light and airy materials, such as cotton or silk, are preferred. We wear short-sleeved or sleeveless shirts, T-shirts, loose blouses, skirts, shorts, sandals and slippers. For swimming, we wear a swimming costume. In winter, warmer materials like cotton, wool and nylon are preferred. Long-sleeved T-shirts, shirts, sweaters, jumpers, pullovers, cardigans, polo necks, jackets, anoraks, coats, gloves, hats, caps, scarves and boots are worn.

People dress differently for various occasions. Balls and banquets require formal smart clothes. Especially women take special care of being dressed-up and looking good at such occasions. They spend a lot of money on ball dresses, shoes, accessories, decorative items and jewellery (necklace, bracelet, earrings, rings). Ladies' handbags should match their dresses and shoes. Gentlemen wear a dark suit or tuxedo, a white shirt with cuff links, a single colour bow tie and dark shoes.

Not only special occasions require special clothes. In some jobs people wear uniforms, denims, white coats, costumes, aprons. In some private British schools, children have to wear uniforms to hide social and financial differences.

Another important part of our image is hair. Nowadays, there is great freedom in hairstyles and colours. Boys grow their hair long, have highlights done, while girls have their hair very short, spiky and often dyed, highlighted or bleached.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. What does fashion reflect?
2. Why is fashion so important for some people?
3. What are the most favourite clothes among the young?
4. How is clothing connected with weather?
5. What do men and women wear for special occasions?
6. Why is hair also an important part of our image?

PRACTICE TASKS

A Put the following words into the categories.

skirt bleached cufflinks tuxedo sneakers blouse suit sandals
dress shirt slippers dyed earrings necklace highlighted

ladies's clothes			
men's clothes			
types of shoes			
accessories			
hair			

B Which word does not fit into the line? Why doesn't it fit?

Example: sandals – slippers – scarf (scarf – it is not worn on the feet)

1. baggy – loose – casual – denims
2. uniform – handbag – white coat – apron
3. tie – sweater – jumper – pullover
4. anorak – coat – jacket – costume
5. cap – hat – gloves
6. silk – cotton – wool – airy
7. boots – shoes – swimming costume – sneakers
8. bracelet – ring – necklace – nylon

C What clothes, shoes and accessories would you wear for the following situations?

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. the first date | 5. skiing |
| 2. school-leaving exam | 6. discotheque |
| 3. green ribbon ball (stužková) | 7. work in the garden |
| 4. barbecue party | 8. beach |

D Do the following sentences express compliments (CO) or criticism (CR)?

1. What a nice sweater! _____
2. 'This blouse doesn't suit you good.' _____
3. 'These shoes don't go well with your dress.' _____
4. 'That's an elegant handbag.' _____
5. It doesn't match your skirt at all. _____
6. 'That's a beautiful scarf.' _____
7. What a good material! _____
8. What an awful pattern! _____
9. 'This jumper fits you fine.' _____
10. 'This T-shirt is too tight. It doesn't look good.' _____

E Match the halves of the sentences together. If you do it correctly, you will get some advice how to care about your clothes.

Example: 1. a) All clothes require special care if you want to wear them for a longer time.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. All clothes require special care if | a) you want to wear them for a longer time. |
| 2. Follow carefully the washing and ironing | b) with stain removers. |
| 3. Some clothes wash easily, others require | c) are washed together with white ones. |
| 4. If you wash your clothes in a washing machine on a high temperature, | d) instructions on the clothes labels. |
| 5. Greasy stains can be washed | e) they can shrink or become larger. |
| 6. The worst happens when coloured clothes | f) dry-cleaning or must be washed only by hand. |
| 7. If you are not sure how to care about certain clothes, | g) use the service of a local laundrette. |

□ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 18 FASHION

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372.

Read the text below. Talk about why people go to tailors and dressmakers. Say what tailors have to do before the clothes fit fine.

A few years ago, the possibilities to follow fashion were quite limited in Slovakia. Shops were only selling a few models. Therefore, many women sewed the clothes themselves. Nowadays, more and more people prefer ready-made clothes to tailored ones. If women want to have a unique dress for a special occasion, such as a ball, they go to dressmakers and have their dress made. Men sometimes have their suits or coats made too. Some people go to tailors to have their old clothes repaired or adjusted to the latest fashion. Tailors take measurements of the entire body: waist, hips, sleeves and bust. Customers can choose the cut, design, material and a pattern of cloth. Before the clothes are ready, customers must try them on a few times so that they fit perfectly. The finest tailors can charge you a lot of money for designing and sewing.

Task 2

Talk about your attitude towards fashion. Say who you usually dress for and what you usually wear (what clothes, shoes, accessories). Describe your favourite clothes. Express your opinion about people who want to be "in" and dress according to the latest trends and not according to their own taste or style.

Task 3 Simulation

You are in a boutique with your mother, who wants to buy you a dress/tuxedo for your green ribbon ball (stužková). She is a bit traditional and has different taste. She doesn't follow fashion very much and is critical about people who wear eccentric clothes. She wants to buy you conservative clothes which are not very appropriate for the young. Tell her that you'd rather choose the clothes on your own and explain why. Describe what kind of a dress/tuxedo you would like to get for your green ribbon ball.

□ VOCABULARY FASHION

■ NOUNS

accessories – doplnky
advice – rada
anorak – vetrovka
apron – zásterá
attitude – postoj
ball – bál, ples, zábava
banquet – banket
barbecue – piknik s opekaním na ražni
beach – pláž
blouse – blúzka
boots – čižmy
bow tie – motýlik (namiesto kravaty)
bracelet – náramok
bust – miera cez prsia
cap – čiapka
cardigan – sveter
care – starostlivosť
clothes – oblečenie
coat – kabát
cotton – bavlna, vlna
cuff links – manžetové gombíky
cut – strih
date – schôdzka, rande
decorative item – ozdobný predmet,
doplnok
denims – montérky
design – strih
dress – spoločenské oblečenie; ženské
šaty
dressmaker – dámsky krajčír (krajčírka)
dry cleaning – chemické čistenie
earrings – náušnice
freedom – sloboda
glove – rukavica
green ribbon ball – stužková
hairstyle – účes
half – polovica
handbag – kabelka
hat – klobúk
highlight – melír
hips – boky
ironing – žehlenie
jacket – bunda

jewellery – šperky
jumper – tenký sveter
label – etiketa, štítok
laundrette – práčovňa
mood – nálada
necklace – náhrdelník
nylon (čítaj najlon) – nylon
occasion – príležitosť
origin – pôvod
pattern – vzor
polo neck – rolák
possibility – možnosť, príležitosť
ready-made clothes – konfekčný odev
religion – náboženstvo
ring – prsteň
scarf (množ. číslo: scarves) – šál, šatka
school-leaving exam – maturitná skúška
self-expression – sebaujavenie
service – služba
shirt – košeľa
shorts – krátke nohavice
silk – hodváb
skirt – sukňa
sleeve – rukáv
slippers – papuče
sneakers – tenisky
stain remover – odstraňovač škvŕn
status – spoločenské postavenie
suit – oblek
sweater – sveter
sweatshirt – tepláková bunda
swimming costume – dámske plavky
tailor – (pánsky) krajčír
taste – vkus
trousers – nohavice
T-shirt – tričko
tuxedo – smoking
waist – pás
washing – pranie
washing machine – práčka
way – spôsob
white coat – biely pracovný plášť
wool – vlna

■ ADJECTIVES

airy – vzdušný
appropriate – vhodný
baggy – voľný, neforemný (o oblečení)
bleached – odfarbený, zosvetlený
brand name clothes – značkové oblečenie
casual – každodenný
dark – tmavý
dyed – zafarbený (o vlasoch)
eccentric – extravagantný
entire (body) – celé (telo)
greasy – mastný
highlighted – melírovaný
light – ľahký
local – miestny
long-sleeved – s dlhým rukávom
loose – voľný
short-sleeved – s krátkym rukávom
single colour – jednofarebný
sleeveless – bez rukávov
smart – bystrý
spiky – účes na ježka
tailored – šitý na mieru
trendy – módný
unique – jedinečný

■ VERBS

to adjust – prispôbiť, upraviť
to be connected with – byť spojený s, súvisieť s
to care about – starať sa o
to charge (money) – účtovať si (peniaze)
to describe – opísať
to dress (oneself) – oblieť sa
to dress up – vyobliekať sa
to fit – byť dobre veľkosťou
to follow (fashion) – sledovať, ísť podľa niečoho (módy)
to get dressed – obliecť sa

to grow – rásť
to hide – skryť sa
to match – hodiť sa (k niečomu)
to reflect – odrážať
to repair – opraviť
to require – vyžadovať
to sew – šiť
to shrink – zraziť sa
to take care of – dávať pozor, dbať na
to take measurements – vziať miery
to wear – nosiť oblečené

■ OTHER

according to – podľa
on my/your/his/her own – sám
out of fashion – nemoderný

■ PHRASES

Giving compliments and criticising – komplimenty a kritika
What a nice sweater! Aký pekný sveter!
That's an elegant handbag. To je elegantná kabelka.
That's a beautiful scarf. To je krásna šatka.
What a good material! Aký dobrý materiál!
This jumper fits you fine. Tento sveter ti je dobrý.
This blouse doesn't suit you. Táto blúzka ti nepristane.
These shoes don't go well with your dress. Tieto topánky sa ti nehodia k šatám.
It doesn't match your skirt at all. Vôbec sa ti to nehodí k sukni.
What an awful pattern! Aký hrozný vzor!
This T-shirt is too tight. Toto tričko je príliš úzke.
It doesn't look good on you. Nevyzerá to na tebe dobre.

19 ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES

Country and its inhabitants (krajina a jej obyvatelia)
Places I would like to visit (miesta, ktoré by som rád navštívil/rada navštívila)
Habits and traditions (zvyky a tradície)
Expressing wishes (vyjadrenie želania)
 (Pozri aj doplnkový materiál na strane 355.)



① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. Which English-speaking countries have you been to?
2. Which English-speaking countries would you like to visit?
3. Have you ever met any British people or Americans?

English is a **mother tongue** for most people living in *the United States of America, Canada, the United Kingdom, Ireland, Australia and New Zealand*. These countries share the same language, but every one of them has its own traditions and **habits**.

Great Britain **comprises** *England, Wales and Scotland*. Together with *Northern Ireland*, it forms *the United Kingdom*. It **includes** four nations: the English, Scottish, Welsh and Irish. They **differ** in their way of life, **customs, values** and traditions. In *England* people are said to be **reserved in manners**, dress and **speech**. They are **conservative** and **stick to traditions**. They are **famous** for their **politeness, self-discipline, reliability** and for their specific **sense of humour**. It is true that the British **rarely shake hands** when they meet. They like sport, especially football, cricket, golf, tennis and **horse racing**.

Scotland is a country where special traditions are kept, such as playing **bagpipes** and wearing **kilts** (typical **knee-length** skirts for both men and women). There are many whisky **distilleries** with a long tradition. The Scottish people speak various dialects of English and **Gaelic**.

Wales is **rich in** culture and history. The **Welsh** people are known for their love of music and **poetry**. There are two languages spoken in Wales – English and Welsh, which is a Celtic language and very different from English.

Northern Ireland **lies** on the north of the **island** of Ireland and is a part of the United Kingdom. Most of the country is **rural** and over half of the **population** is Protestant. *The Republic of Ireland* is a **sovereign** state and is mostly Catholic. Conflicts between Protestants and Catholics are still **alive**. The Catholic community wants Northern Ireland to **join** the Republic of Ireland, **whereas** the Protestant community wants to **remain** part of the UK. The Irish people are **hospitable** and friendly, they like music and dancing. Social life concentrates in **pubs** where live music and drinking is very **common**.

The United States of America is home to people **mostly** of European origin but also of Afro-American, Native American, Japanese, Chinese and other origins. The people in the USA also speak their **minority** and **immigrant** languages. Spanish is an important language, especially in the southern states.

It is said that Americans are loud, extremely **self-conscious**, dressed in **tasteless** clothes. However, when you **get to know** them better, you find out that they are open, friendly, hard-working and independent. America is a **wealthy** country and Americans enjoy high standard of living. However, there are also many poor people there.

It is a typical custom to teach children **independence** from an early age. Each **adult** member of a typical American family has his/her **own** car. Most Americans drive to work and students often drive to school. Americans like travelling and they often drive long **distances through** the country, especially during the holidays, to visit their friends and **relatives**.

Americans do not usually stay in the **same** town all their lives. They like to **move**. It is not unusual for families to move house or go to live in another town or state more than once every ten years.

Nowadays, more and more Americans **take care of** their health. They do some sport, eat healthier food, smoke less and drink less alcohol. Smoking is **banned** in some public places.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. In which countries is English spoken as the mother tongue?
2. What is the difference between the United Kingdom and Great Britain?
3. What are the English people like?
4. What do you know about the conflicts in Northern Ireland?
5. How are Americans often presented in American films?
6. What do you know about the lifestyle of an American family?

□ PRACTICE TASKS

A Make the pairs from the following words.

Example: South Africa – South African

Canada England Ireland Scotland the USA Wales Australia
New Zealand

B

Test your knowledge in this quiz about English-speaking countries. There are four incorrect facts. Can you find and correct them?

1. England, Wales and Scotland form Great Britain.
2. The United Kingdom comprises England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland.
3. London is the capital of England and of Great Britain.
4. The official currency in England is the euro.
5. Queen Elizabeth II has the main political power in the United Kingdom.
6. New Zealand is famous for its hot springs and geysers.
7. The USA is a federation of 52 states including Alaska and the island state of Hawaii.
8. New York is the capital city of the USA.
9. Official languages of Canada are English and French.
10. Australia is an island continent.

C

Which English-speaking countries are these places connected with? What are they famous for?

the Grand Canyon Buckingham Palace Pentagon Hollywood
Niagara Falls Harvard Loch Ness Quebec Sydney Heathrow
Manhattan Edinburgh the Statue of Liberty Wimbledon

D

Talk about the English-speaking country you would like to visit. Say what towns or places you wish you could see and why. Would you like to live/study/work once in one of these countries? Say where and give your reasons.

- * I wish I saw.../went to... because...
- * I wish I lived/studied/worked...
- * I would really like to see... because...
- * Once, I would like to live/study/work in... because...

E Which extracts describe the English, Americans, Irish, Scottish and Canadians?

1. _____ are open, friendly, hard-working, independent and self-reliant. The people enjoy one of the highest standards of living in the world. There are some rich people who live in luxurious houses and drive expensive cars. However, there are also high levels of poverty in many of the cities. The majority of the people do not live in great luxury. They have to work hard for the money they earn. They know the value of money and do not like to "throw" it away. People usually do not stay in the same town all their lives. Families often move house or go to live in another town or state more than once every ten years.

2. _____ are said to be reserved, conservative and traditional. They are famous for their politeness, self-discipline, reliability and for their specific sense of humour. They never seem to be in a hurry. Many traditional customs and habits have changed as the way of life has changed. It is no longer true to say that all families eat bacon, eggs, sausages and tomatoes for breakfast. Most people rather have toast, a bowl of cereal or even have nothing at all.

3. _____ Outdoor activities and sports play an important part in their lives. Ice hockey is the most popular sport there. Curling is also very popular, especially among the young. In curling, two four-person teams slide a large "stone" over ice towards a target. Eating habits vary according to the ethnic background, but there are regional specialities. In some provinces, the food has a strong French influence. Local specialities include thick yellow pea soup and cabbage soup, *tourtière* (a minced pork pie) and *cipate* (beef pie). Maple syrup is produced there too. It is often used as an ingredient in desserts.

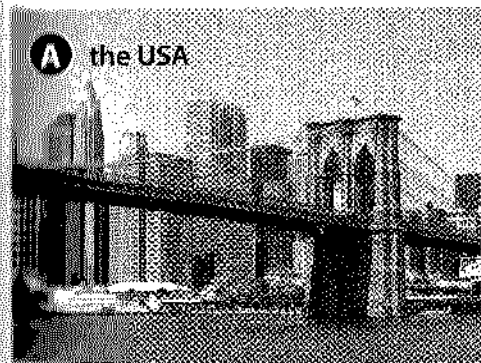
4. _____ speak various dialects of English, Gaelic or their original ancient language. They keep special traditions there, such as playing bagpipes and wearing kilts. One of the most typical meals is haggis, which is made of the heart, liver and lungs of a sheep, together with oatmeal, salt, onions, spices, packed into a sheep's stomach and boiled.

5. _____ are very friendly people. The people love old folk legends, epic poetry, songs, dances. Festivals play a crucial role in their life and are often dedicated to St. Patrick, James Joyce, sailing, fishing, music or matchmaking. Music is their national passion. It is the only country in the world to have the harp as a national emblem. Drinking also plays an important part in their culture. Social life concentrates in pubs where live music is very common. The most popular sports are Gaelic football and hurling. Horse racing attracts many fans too.

SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 19 ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES
Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372.

Look at the pictures below. Say what cities of English-speaking countries they show and what they are famous for. Say which city from the pictures below you would like to go to and explain your reasons.


Task 2

Compare and contrast the lifestyle of the English, Americans and Slovaks. Talk about:

- * their characteristics,
- * their way of life,
- * hobbies,
- * typical customs and traditions.

Task 3 Simulation

You are planning to go to England to study English at a summer course. Your friend wants to go to the USA for the same reason. Persuade him to go with you. Tell him/her about the country, interesting places, people, lifestyle, habits, traditions, food.

VOCABULARY ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES

NOUNS

bagpipe – gajdy
capital – hlavné mesto
currency – mena
custom – zvyk
difference – rozdiel
distance – vzdialenosť
distillery – liehovar
geyser – gejzír
Gaelic – gaelský, gaelčina
habit – zvyk
horse racing – jazda na koni
immigrant – prisťahovalec
independence – nezávislosť
island – ostrov
kilt – škótska károvaná sukňa
manner – chovanie, správanie
minority – menšina
mother tongue – materinský jazyk
nationality – národnosť
origin – pôvod
poetry – poézia
politeness – zdvorilosť
population – obyvateľstvo
pub – krčma
relative – rodinný príbuzný
reliability – spoľahlivosť
self-discipline – sebadisciplína
sense of humour – zmysel pre humor
speech – reč
spring – prameň
value – hodnota
Welsh – welšský, welština

ADJECTIVES

adult – dospelý
alive – živý
banned – zakázaný
common – spoločný
connected with – súvisiaci s
famous – známy
hospitable – pohostinný
incorrect – nesprávny
knee-length – dĺžka po kolená
reserved – rezervovaný

rich in – bohatý na
rural – vidiecky
self-conscious – sebavedomý
sovereign – zvrchovaný (štát)
tasteless – nevkusný
wealthy – bohatý

VERBS

to comprise – zahŕňať
to include – zahŕňať
to differ – líšiť sa
to get to know – spoznať
to join – spojiť sa
to lie – ležať, nachádzať sa
to move (house) – sťahovať sa
to remain – zostať
to persuade – presvedčiť
to shake (hands) – podať si (ruky)
to share – deliť sa
to stick to traditions – dodržiavať tradície
to take care of – starať sa o

OTHER

including – vrátane
mostly – zväčša
once – raz
own – vlastný
rarely – zriedkavo
same – rovnaký, istý
through – cez
whereas – zatiaľ čo, kým

PHRASES

How to express wishes – ako vyjadriť želanie
I wish I saw.../went to... because... Želám si, aby som videl/-a.../išiel/išla do..., pretože...
I wish I lived/studied/worked... Želám si, aby som žil/-a/študoval/-a/pracoval/-a...
I would really like to see... because... Veľmi rád by som videl/-a..., pretože...
Once, I would like to live/study/work in... because... Raz by som rád/rađa žil/-a/študoval/-a/pracoval/-a..., pretože...

20 SLOVAKIA – MY HOMELAND

Country and its inhabitants (krajina a jej obyvatelia)

Places I would recommend to foreigners to visit (miesta, ktoré by som odporučil cudzincom navštíviť)

Habits and traditions (zvyky a tradície)

Describing unfamiliar words typical for a certain culture (papiš neznámych, pre danú kultúru typických slov)

Expressing agreement/disagreement/no opinion

(vyjadrenie súhlasu/nesúhlasu/žiadneho stanoviska)

Giving a short presentation about Slovakia (prezentácia Slovenska)

(Pozri aj doplnkový materiál na strane 355.)



① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. How would you describe a typical Slovak person?
2. Which towns and places in Slovakia are the most attractive for foreign tourists?
3. What should be done to attract more tourists to Slovakia?

The Slovak Republic is an **independent** state **situated** in Central Europe. Tourists come here to see **spectacular sceneries**, old towns and cities, **fairytale** castles, caves and **spa resorts**.

Foreign visitors can learn the history of the *Great Moravian Empire* or the *Austrian-Hungarian Monarchy*. They are also interested in the **events** of the *Velvet Revolution* in November 1989. Nowadays, they visit an independent country, which is a member of the European Union.

There are many interesting places to visit in Slovakia. There are **several** national parks and **protected** natural resorts, such as the *High Tatras*, the *Low Tatras*, the *Slovak Paradise* and others. The *High Tatras* is situated in the **north** of Slovakia and it creates a natural **border** between Slovakia and Poland. Its highest **peaks** are *Gerlachovský štít* (2 655 m), *Lomnický štít* (2 632 m) and *Kriváň* (2 494 m). The *High Tatras* is also famous for its **valleys** and **lakes** (*Štrbské pleso*). The *High Tatras National Park* is Slovakia's largest. With its natural beauties, this area **attracts** many tourists **all the year round**. The *Slovak Paradise* is a romantic and **picturesque** region **located** in the north-east. There are beautiful caves, **waterfalls** but also **vast** plains with **fascinating** views of the area. *Dobšinská ľadová jaskyňa*, located in the west part of this valley, is the oldest ice **cave** in Europe.

Bratislava, the **capital** of Slovakia, is a political, cultural and industrial centre of the country. The larger towns of Slovakia **include** *Košice*, *Prešov*, *Nitra*, *Žilina* and *Banská Bystrica*. The smaller towns are visited by tourists because of their rich cultural history and beautiful architecture. *Banská Štiavnica* is known for its **mining**.

history. The largest **wooden altar** in the world, made by Master Paul in the early 16th century, made *Levoča* famous. Other small Slovak towns, for example *Bojnice*, *Zvolen*, *Trenčín* and many others, are famous for their beautiful castles. The *Spiš Castle*, the largest **medieval** castle in Central Europe and *Vlkolínec*, a mountain village, are **included** in the *UNESCO World Cultural Heritage List*.

The Slovaks **keep** their folklore traditions through **traditional costumes**, songs and dances. The most typical food is *bryndzové halušky* (**gnocchi** with **sheep cheese**) and typical alcoholic drinks are *borovička* (**juniper gin**) and beer. The Slovaks are also famous for being **patriots**. They have a positive **attitude** to their country.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. What does Slovakia offer to foreign tourists?
2. Which historic events are the most important for Slovaks?
3. What national parks are there in Slovakia?
4. Which towns and villages are interesting for foreign tourists? Why?
5. What food and drinks are typical for Slovakia?
6. When did Slovakia join the European Union?

PRACTICE TASKS

A Which word does not fit into the line? Why not?

Example: castles – spa resorts – caves – beer (beer does not fit because it is not a place to see)

1. scenery – waterfalls – rivers – lakes
2. castle – village – capital – town – city
3. mountain – hill – peak – traditions
4. spectacular – picturesque – fascinating – view
5. songs – dances – costumes – patriots
6. caves – typical – traditional – famous

The following words are difficult to translate to English because they are connected with Slovak culture, habits and traditional food. Try to describe some of them to your classmates without telling them which word you are describing. Your classmates will guess.

kaliba	bryndzové halušky	veľkonočná oblievačka	valaška	fujara
čimbál	skanzen	krpce	lokše	parenica

It is the thing which is used for... It is made of... It looks like...

It is the food which is...

It is the place where...

It is when... For example...

C What is true and false about the Slovaks? Express your opinion.

I agree with: That's exactly what I think./I can't agree more.

I disagree with: I'm sorry, but I can't agree./I don't think so.

Neutral answers: I think that it depends on.../I am not sure about it.

1. Slovaks are hospitable, hard-working and willing to help others.
2. Slovaks underestimate themselves and lack self-esteem.
3. Slovak parents help their children a lot even when they grow up.
4. Slovaks move a lot from place to place.
5. Slovak men do a lot of housework.

D Give a short presentation to a group of English exchange students who want to have basic information about Slovakia and who want to get some recommendations.

OPEN THE PRESENTATION: Dear students, welcome to Slovakia, my homeland. I would like to tell you some facts about my country and recommend you some interesting places to visit.

GIVE THE PRESENTATION: Slovakia is an independent state situated in (*say where*). Its rich historical background attracts many tourists who want to learn about (*say which historic events*). Slovakia is a favourite tourist destination for nature lovers. There are several national parks (*say where*) and protected places which offer (*say what*). Tourists come here all the year round because (*say why*). The most famous castles are (*say which ones*). I would certainly recommend you to see (*say which castle*). There are many beautiful towns here. I, personally, like (*say which town*) because (*say why*). If you want to try typical Slovak food, you should have (*say what food*) and drink (*say what*). Slovak people are very (*say what they are like*).

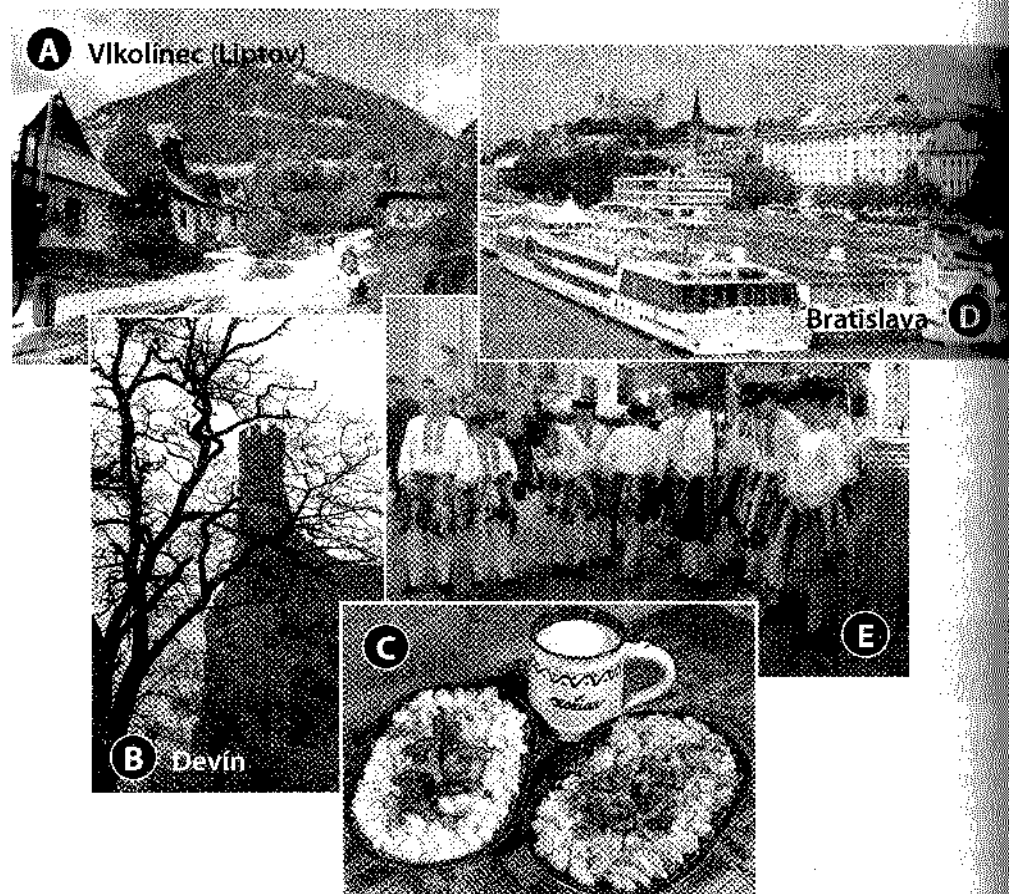
CLOSE THE PRESENTATION: At the end, I would like to wish you a pleasant stay in Slovakia. I hope that you will see (*say what*) and meet (*say who*).

□ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 20 SLOVAKIA – MY HOMELAND

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372.

Look at the pictures below. Say how you would introduce Slovakia through these pictures to foreigners who have never been there.



Task 2

Talk about the most interesting towns and places in Slovakia. Which of them would you recommend to nature lovers/history lovers/shopping lovers to visit?

Task 3 Simulation

Your English friend is coming to visit you and your family. This will be his/her first time in Slovakia. He/she wants to know something about the people, their lifestyle and manners. Tell him what the Slovaks are like and how they live.

□ VOCABULARY SLOVAKIA – MY HOMELAND

■ NOUNS

advice – rada
 altar – oltár
 attitude – postoj (k niečomu)
 background – pozadie
 border – hranica
 capital – hlavné mesto
 cave – jaskyňa
 century – storočie
 event – udalosť
 exchange student – výmenný študent
 gnocchi (čítaj ňoki) – halušky
 homeland – vlasť
 juniper gin – borovička
 lake – jazero
 mining – baníctvo
 north – sever
 patriot – vlastenec
 plain – planina, rovina, nížina
 peak – vrchol
 presentation – prezentácia
 recommendation – odporúčenie
 scenery – scenéria
 self esteem – sebaúcta
 sheep cheese – bryndza
 spa resort – kúpeľné stredisko
 stay – pobyt
 traditional costume – kroj
 valley – údolie
 waterfall – vodopád

Austrian-Hungarian Monarchy – Rakúsko-uhorská monarchia
 Great Moravian Empire – Veľkomoravská ríša
 Velvet Revolution – Zametová revolúcia

■ ADJECTIVES

attractive – príťažlivý
 basic – základný
 fairytale – rozprávkový, krásny
 false – nepravdivý
 fascinating – fascinujúci
 foreign – cudzí, zahraničný
 hard-working – pracovitý
 hospitable – pohostinný
 important – dôležitý
 independent – nezávislý, samostatný
 located – situovaný
 medieval – stredoveký
 picturesque – malebný
 pleasant – príjemný
 protected – chránený
 several – niekoľko
 situated – umiestnený
 spectacular – veľkolepý
 true – pravdivý
 vast – šíry, rozľahlý
 willing to – ochotný
 wooden – drevený

■ VERBS

to attract – prilákať, priťahnúť (turistov)
 to behave – správať sa
 to create – vytvoriť
 to describe – opísať
 to fit – hodiť sa
 to grow up – vyrásť
 to guess – hádať
 to include – zahŕňať
 to introduce – predstaviť
 to keep traditions – dodržiavať tradície
 to lack – mať nedostatok, chýbať

to offer – ponúknuť
 to recommend – odporučiť
 to underestimate – podceňovať (sa)
 to welcome – vítať

■ OTHER

all the year round – po celý rok
 through – cez

■ PHRASES

Describing unknown/culturally typical

words – popis neznámych, pre danú kultúru typických slov

It is the thing which is used for... Je to vec, ktorá sa používa na...

It is made of... Je vyrobený z...

It looks like... Vyzerá to ako...

It is the food which is... To je jedlo, ktoré...

It is the place where... To je miesto, kde...

It is when... Je to keď...

For example... Napríklad...

Expressing agreement/disagreement/no

opinion – vyjadrenie súhlasu/nesúhlasu/žiadneho stanoviska

To agree with – vyjadrenie súhlasu

That's exactly what I think. To je presne to, čo si myslím.

I can't agree more. Viac nemôžem súhlasiť.

To disagree with – vyjadrenie nesúhlasu

I'm sorry, but I can't agree. Je mi ľúto, ale nemôžem súhlasiť.

I don't think so. Nemyslím si to.

Neutral answers – neutrálne odpovede

I think that it depends on... Myslím si, že to závisí na...

I am not sure about it. Nie som si tým istý.

Giving a short presentation about Slovakia

– prezentácia Slovenska

1. **OPEN THE PRESENTATION** (ako začať prezentáciu)

Dear students, welcome to...

Milí študenti, vitajte...

I would like to tell you some facts about...

Rád/-a by som vám povedal/-a zopár faktov o...

2. **GIVE THE PRESENTATION** (obsah prezentácie)

3. **CLOSE THE PRESENTATION** (ako skončiť prezentáciu)

At the end, I would like to wish you...

Nakoniec by som vám chcel/-a zaželať...

I hope that you will... Dúfam, že budete...

21 HUMAN RELATIONSHIPS

Formal and informal human relationships (formálne a neformálne medziľudské vzťahy)

Quality of human relationships (kvalita medziľudských vzťahov)

Describing people and their human traits (opis ľudí a ich vlastností)

Expressing opinion, agreement and disagreement (vyjadrenie názoru, súhlasu a nesúhlasu)

Expressing feelings and moods (vyjadrenie pocitov a nálad)

① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. What are the qualities of your best friend?
2. What does friendship mean to you?
3. What is your relationship with your parents like?

Human relationship describes the way people **get on with** each other and **behave towards each other**. **Informal** relationships are created **between** parents, children, **married couples** or friends. **Formal** relationships are **formed among** people at school, work or in the streets. These relationships are not very **deep** and open. They are formed among people of different **social** positions: teachers and students, employers and employees, doctors and patients, etc. Such relationships **require** respect and **politeness**.

Nowadays, human relationships are very complicated. Many people are **stressed out**, busy and tired. A good relationship is something that **cannot be bought for money**. It is about feelings, **empathy**, understanding, **trust**, **care**, politeness and **satisfaction**.

Friendship is a relationship between people who **have something in common** and spend a lot of time together. They **support** and help **each other** when necessary. Friends are people who laugh together, speak about everything, **share secrets**. They show their true feelings. They accept each other as they are. Friends share memories, **tears** and smiles. True friends are people who are always there for you. Friendship is about giving and **receiving equally**. The saying "**Friend in need is a friend indeed**" shows the full value of friendship. There is no place for **jealousy**, ignorance and **excuses**.

There are **short-term** and **long-term** relationships. Some friendships **last** for a short period of time, others for our whole life. We **make friends** during all **stages** of life. If we want to keep our friends for a long time, we should **stay in touch** with them, send e-mails, call them and spend some time together. Some friendships **lose importance** and **die out**. It happens when friends stop contacting each other. Sometimes, there is a conflict between them. When there is a conflict, it should be **resolved** by discussion.

Families are the basic social units in which informal relationships are formed. Children learn the **social rules** from their parents, teachers and friends. It is im-

portant to teach them which **behaviour** is correct and which is wrong. Family is the place where social behaviour is formed. If parents speak **rudely**, children will **imitate** their "models". If parents have only TV dinners, children will not know how to behave at the table. Small things, such as talking to people with respect, listening to them and showing empathy, should be normal in every family.

After reading the text, answer the following questions.

1. What are formal and informal relationships?
2. Why are relationships difficult nowadays?
3. Explain the meaning of the saying "A friend in need is a friend indeed".
4. What should we do to keep our friends?
5. Why do some friendships end?
6. What kind of relationship should there be between students and their teachers?

□ PRACTICE TASKS

A The words below are used to describe people. Put them into categories.

casual elderly person in his forties well-built straight ponytail
skinny slim curly teenager middle-aged shiny blond baby
wearing glasses plump dyed round wrinkled pale smart
old-fashioned neat trendy moustache tall

HEIGHT and BUILD	AGE	FACE	HAIR	CLOTHES

B Which are good (G) and bad (B) features or moods in relationships between best friends?

1. trust	4. empathy	7. ignorance	10. responsibility
2. care	5. satisfaction	8. support	11. interest
3. politeness	6. jealousy	9. stress	12. intelligence

C Make adjectives from the nouns in the previous exercise.

- Example: 1. trust – trustworthy 7.
2. 8.
3. 9.
4. 10.
5. 11.
6. 12.

D What are the opposites of the adjectives below? Add a prefix DIS-, IM-, IR- or UN-.

FEATURE	OPPOSITE	FEATURE	OPPOSITE
responsible	irresponsible	rational	
reliable		happy	
polite		helpful	
intelligent		organised	
patient		friendly	

E Discuss the qualities of an ideal life partner. Use the phrases below and vocabulary from the exercises B, C and D.

To express opinion:

I think that an ideal life partner should be...

He/she shouldn't be...

He/she mustn't...

To agree with opinion:

Yes, that's right and he/she should always be...

Yes, I think so. And he/she should never be...

To disagree with opinion:

Well, I don't think so. In my opinion he/she should rather be... than...

Actually, I don't feel that...

F

Describe some of the people below, what they look like and what they are like. Talk about your relationships with them. Use the phrases below.

your brother/sister
your best friend

your boyfriend/girlfriend
your favourite teacher

your parents
your grandparents

I like/admire him/her/them...

I get on well with my... because...

I don't get on well with my... because...

I respect him/her/them because...

I care about him/her/them...

My... and I have a very formal/informal relationship because... treats me nicely/badly.

G

What would you say in the following situations? For help, see useful phrases on page 372.

Example:

Your classmate has been taken to hospital. (*express worry*)

I'm really worried about you. I hope that you will feel better soon.

1. Your best friend has split up with his girlfriend/boyfriend. (*express sympathy*)
2. Your father is very tired and he shouts at you for nothing. (*calm your father down*)
3. Your grandmother has baked your favourite cake. (*express thanks*)
4. Your brother is studying hard to get to university. (*express hope*)
5. Your favourite teacher will not teach you next year. (*express disappointment*)
6. Your sister has just given birth to twins. (*express happiness*)
7. Your younger brother has lost your favourite CD. (*express anger*)
8. Your mother asked you nicely to stop smoking. (*make a promise*)
9. You don't agree with your teacher's opinion. (*express disagreement*)
10. You have come late for the appointment with your doctor. (*make an apology*)

□ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 21 HUMAN RELATIONSHIPS

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372.

Read the lonely hearts adverts. Try to find a suitable partner for Phil and Carol. Explain the reasons of your choice.

1. Phil, 24

"I'm looking for someone about my age who has similar interests to me. I don't like going out to the theatre much, but I like pubs."

2. Carol, 28

"I'm a single mother, and I'd like to meet someone who can spend some evenings with me and will have a good relationship with my son."



Lonely Hearts

YORKSHIREMAN, 26, educated, interesting, good-looking, great body, wants to meet similar woman (17+) for good times and fun. Photo please. BOX M23

DIVORCED MALE, 33, unhappy, missing his two sons, probably takes things too seriously, seeks female music lover with sense of humour. BOX M65

MANCHESTER GIRL, 20s, attractive, lovely, intelligent, bored. Seeking adventure. BOX F81

MY LITTLE BOY needs a daddy. Must be single, funny and clever. We need someone strong enough to take care of us. BOX F52

RETIRED ROMEO looking for his Juliet for a serious relationship. BOX M41

Task 2

Describe your best friend – both physically and his/her characteristics. Talk about the things which really impress you or annoy you about him/her.

Task 3 Role-play

You: You would like to tell your mother that you are going to live with your boyfriend/girlfriend. You know that she will be against this. Therefore, you'd better prepare some logical arguments. Try to persuade her that your boyfriend/girlfriend is a nice boy/girl and that you know what you are doing. Then, talk to your Dad who is watching a football match. Disturb him and tell him the news. You love your boyfriend/girlfriend and you really want to live with him/her. You need to explain it to your parents.

Your partner A:

Mum: Your son/daughter has just told you that he/she is going to move away to live with his/her girlfriend/boyfriend. You totally disagree with this because you think that he/she is too young for a serious relationship. You are very conservative and you will never let him/her live with his/her girlfriend/boyfriend without being married. Tell your son/daughter what you think about it.

Your partner B:

Dad: You are watching a very exciting football match between Manchester and Liverpool. Your son/daughter has just told you that he/she is going to move away to live with his/her girlfriend/boyfriend. First, you are just pretending that you are listening to him/her. Later, you realise what he/she has told you. You are a liberal person and you think that your son/daughter is intelligent enough to make his/her own decisions. Tell him/her what you think about his/her decision.

□ VOCABULARY HUMAN RELATIONSHIPS**■ NOUNS**

adventure – dobrodružstvo
 anger – hnev
behaviour – správanie
 build – postava, telesná konštrukcia
care – starostlivosť, ohľad
 decision – rozhodnutie
 disagreement – nesúhlas
 disappointment – sklamanie
empathy – empatia, ľútosť
excuse – výhovorka
 female – žena, ženský
human relationships – ľudské vzťahy
jealousy – žiarlivosť
 male – muž, mužský
married couple – manželský pár
 mood – nálada
 moustache – fúzy
politeness – zdvorilosť
 ponytail – vrkoč
rule – pravidlo
satisfaction – uspokojenie
stage – obdobie, etapa
tear – slza
trust – dôvera
 worry – trápenie sa, starosť

■ ADJECTIVES

casual – neformálny, všedný
 clever – múdry, šikovný, inteligentný
 curly – kučeravý
deep – hlboký
 divorced – rozvedený
 dyed – zafarbený
 elderly (person) – postarší (človek)
formal – formálny
 good-looking – dobre vyzerajúci
informal – neformálny
long-term – dlhodobý
 neat – upravený
 pale – bledý
 patient – trpezlivý
 plump – plnoštíhly, zaguľatený
 rational – rozumný
 reliable – spoľahlivý
 responsible – zodpovedný
 shiny blond – svetlý blond
short-term – krátkodobý
 skinny – chudý
 slim – štíhly, útlý
 smart – bystrý
social – spoločenský
 straight – rovný
stressed out – vystresovaný

suitable – vhodný
 sympathy – pochopenie, náklonnosť
 trendy – módný
 trustworthy – dôveryhodný, spoľahlivý
 well-built – dobre stavaný
 wrinkled – vráskavý

■ VERBS

to annoy – znepokojovať, ísť na nervy
to admire – obdivovať
to behave towards each other – správať sa jeden k druhému
to be in his/her forties – mať okolo 40 rokov
to be in need – potrebovať niečo
to be like – byť aký (vlastnosťami)
to calm (sb.) down – ukladiť (niekoho)
to care about – dbať o
to die out – vymiznúť
to disturb – vyrušiť
to express – vyjadriť
to form – vytvoriť
to get on with somebody – vychádzať s niekým
to have something in common – mať niečo spoločné
to imitate – imitovať
to impress – nadchnúť
to last – trvať (časovo)
to look like – vyzeráť ako (po fyzickej stránke)
to lose importance – strátiť dôležitosť
to make an apology – ospravedlniť sa
to make a promise – prisľúbiť
to make friends – skamarátiť sa
to pretend – predstierať
to realise – uvedomiť si
to receive – dostať, prijímať
to require – vyžadovať
to resolve – (vy)riešiť
to seek – hľadať
to share secrets – podeliť sa o tajomstvá
to stay in touch – zostať v kontakte
to support – podporiť
to take care of – dávať pozor na, starať sa o
to treat (sb.) – chovať sa k niekomu

■ OTHER

among – medzi (viac než dvoma)
between – medzi (dvoma)
each other – jeden druhému
equally – rovnocenne
indeed – vskutku, naozaj
It cannot be bought for money. Nedá sa to kúpiť za peniaze.
rudely – neslušne
 sense of humour – zmysel pre humor

■ PHRASES

How to express opinion – ako vyjadriť názor
I think that an ideal life partner should be...
 Myslím si, že ideálny životný partner/-ka by mal/-a byť...
How to agree with opinion – ako súhlasiť s názorom
Yes, that's right and he/she should always be... Áno, správne a on/-a by vždy mal/-a byť...
Yes, I think so. And he/she should never be... Áno, myslím si to. A on/-a by nikdy nemal/-a byť...
How to disagree with opinion – ako nesúhlasiť s názorom
Well, I don't think so. Nuž, ja si to nemyslím. In my opinion, he/she should rather be... than... Podľa mňa, on/-a by skôr mal/-a byť... ako...
Actually, I don't feel that... Popravde, nemám pocit, že...

How to calm somebody down – ako niekoho ukladiť
Calm down, please... Ukladni sa, prosím ťa.
Don't worry. It'll be all right... Neboj sa, všetko bude v poriadku.
How to express hope – ako vyjadriť nádej
I really hope that you... Naozaj dúfam, že...
I hope that everything will be all right... Dúfam, že všetko bude v poriadku.
How to express happiness – ako vyjadriť šťastie

That's wonderful news! I'm so happy about it... To sú fantastické správy. Veľmi sa z toho teším.

How to express anger – ako vyjadriť hnev

You should be more careful! – Mal/-a by si dávať väčší pozor.

You are always losing things! – Stále niečo strácaš.

It's getting on my nerves. – Lezie mi to na nervy.

That's a shame! What a pity! – To je škoda.

How to make a promise – ako niečo sľúbiť
I promise I will... – Sľubujem, že...

I'll do my best to... – Urobím všetko, čo je v mojich silách, aby...

22 COMMUNICATION AND LANGUAGES

Forms, ways and means of communication (formy, spôsoby a prostriedky komunikácie)

Learning foreign languages (štúdium cudzích jazykov)

Problem solving: Asking for advice and giving advice (riešenie problémov, ako požiadať o radu, ako poradiť)

Expressing thanks (vyjadrenie vďaky)

Expressing opinion (vyjadrenie názoru)

① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. How does modern technology influence human communication?
2. How will people communicate in the future?
3. Why do people learn foreign languages?

Communication means **exchanging thoughts**, ideas, messages or information through speaking, writing, signals, sounds and **behaviour**.

Direct communication happens in real time when **participants communicate face to face**. Besides words they use body language, which is different in every culture. Our **facial expressions**, eye contact, **gestures** and **body posture** talk for us too. **Indirect communication** means that **senders** and **receivers** of information do not see each other (and sometimes do not know each other). These participants communicate **through various communication channels** – telephones, letters, songs, posters, pictures, etc.

The **means of mass communication**, such as radio, television and computers, **enable** communication among people in a very short time. The number of people using mobile phones has rapidly **increased** in the last years, especially in Eastern Europe. **Skype** or **ICQ** are modern and **efficient ways** of communication. They enable people to talk in real time and send and receive documents or pictures very quickly.

Nowadays, almost all professions **require** excellent communication skills and **knowledge of foreign languages**. Using foreign languages helps us communicate with people **abroad**, **make new friends** or meet business partners. We **learn** about other countries and their cultures. We are happy when we read texts in a foreign language, understand songs and watch films without **subtitles**. These are the personal goals of many **language learners**.

After the **integration** of Slovakia **into the European Union** in 2004, the possibilities for learning foreign languages increased. Some children learn English or another foreign language **from a very early age**. There are children, who are **raised** in bilingual families. This means that they have two **mother tongues**. English, German, Spanish, French and other foreign languages are taught at secondary schools. Russian has almost **disappeared** from our schools.

Students at secondary schools **take a final exam** in one foreign language. The final language exam tests language **skills**, such as listening **comprehension**, reading comprehension, writing and speaking. Many students take **extra classes** at various language schools. Language learners can **receive** different language **certificates** on different levels. The most popular English ones are TOEFL (Test of English as a Foreign Language), the Cambridge certificates or City & Guilds.

After reading the text above, answer the following questions.

1. What is communication?
2. What are the advantages of using Skype and ICQ?
3. What are the differences between direct and indirect ways of communication?
4. What does non-verbal communication mean?
5. What jobs and professions require good communication skills and knowledge of foreign languages?
6. What does the final exam in English test secondary school students?

□ PRACTICE TASKS

A Look at the symbols below. Match them with the message they give.



1. smoking is not permitted
2. theatre
3. airport nearby
4. peace
5. restaurant
6. parking place
7. danger of poison

B Which means of mass communication would you use in the following situations?

- if you wanted to send a photo to your friend,
- if you wanted to send a postcard to your grandparents,
- if you wanted to order a new English textbook,
- if you wanted to talk to your friends about your weekend,
- if you wanted to know the weather forecast for tomorrow,
- if you wanted to know the latest news.

C

What are your greatest difficulties when learning English as a foreign language? Read the list below and put a tick (✓) by those which bother you too.

- I cannot spell some words in English.
- I have difficulties in understanding native speakers.
- I have to translate everything in my head before I say something.
- I do not understand the grammar tenses in English.
- I cannot remember new words.
- I think that my pronunciation is terrible.
- I cannot concentrate on long texts in English because I do not understand them.
- I am not able to write letters in English because I do not know what to write about.
- I do not speak in lessons because I am afraid that nobody will understand me.
- I think I have a very bad accent.

D

What other problems do you face when learning English? What can you do about them? Ask your classmates to help you overcome your difficulties. Some ideas below can help you.

My problem is _____

Possible solutions:

*listen to English songs watch films in English read books in English
record yourself repeat the words after native speakers use dictionaries
practise speaking with my classmates practise speaking in front of the mirror*

*chat with somebody via the Internet sing songs in English speak English in the shower
learn three new words daily go to an English-speaking country
write words on posters and put them on the wall*

My solutions are:

Asking for advice:

Excuse me, I've got a problem/some difficulties with...

Do you think you could help me with it?

I am afraid I am totally bad at... Could you give me some advice about what to do?

Giving advice:

Of course. The best thing would be to...

You certainly/definitely should...

Firstly/Secondly/Thirdly/, you should try to...

Expressing thanks for advice:

Thank you very much.

I will try to do my best.

Thanks for your advice.

E Express your opinion about the statements below according to the scale provided.

1. Children should start learning a foreign language as early as possible.
2. If somebody wants to learn a foreign language, he/she should spend some time abroad.

FULLY DISAGREE – DISAGREE – NOT SURE – AGREE – FULLY AGREE

SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 22 COMMUNICATION AND LANGUAGES**Task 1**

See useful phrases on page 372.

Read the text below about communication strategies. Then talk about those which speakers can use during their communication when their knowledge of foreign language is not perfect. What other "tricks" do you use when you speak and listen to English?

Do you speak English?

People learning any foreign language face huge barriers when they are expected to use it. There is no need to be afraid of speaking a foreign language. If learners are not confident enough, they can use some of the following communication strategies which might help them improve their communication:

1. If you can't find the words you want to use, try to express the meaning as closely as you can by using simple words which you know.
2. Use mime and gestures. You will be surprised how much your body language can help you.
3. Get help from outside. Use a dictionary or ask others to find the meaning.
4. Be inventive! Take risks to create new words. For example, "ATM (AmE) or cash dispenser (BrE)" might be perfectly understood if you create a new word like "bank machine".

In conclusion, be confident enough to say YES to the question "Do you speak English?" by using any of these strategies.

Task 2

Talk about the modern forms of communication, such as mobile phones, e-mails, the Internet, ICQ or Skype. Talk about:

- what they are,
- when people use them,
- what people use them for,
- their advantages and disadvantages.

Task 3 Simulation

Your classmate is very shy and modest. He/she is afraid to speak English in front of your teacher and the class. He/she thinks that nobody would understand him/her and that other people do not make as many mistakes as he/she does. What advice would you give to your friend to overcome these communication barriers?

□ VOCABULARY COMMUNICATION AND LANGUAGES

■ NOUNS

abroad – zahraničie
accent – prízvuk
advantage – výhoda
advice – rada
barrier – bariéra
behaviour – správanie
body posture – postoj, pozícia tela
certificate – certifikát, oprávnenie
communication channel – komunikačný kanál
comprehension – porozumenie
dictionary – slovník
extra classes – hodiny navyše, doučovanie
gesture – výraz, gesto
goal – cieľ
grammar tense – gramatický čas
integration (into the European Union) – integrácia, začlenenie (do Európskej Únie)
knowledge – znalosť
language learner – ten, kto sa učí jazyk
mass communication – masová komunikácia
means – prostriedok, prostriedky
mother tongue – materinský jazyk
native speaker – rodený hovoriaci
participant – účastník
poster – plagát
pronunciation – výslovnosť
receiver – prijímateľ
sender – odosielať
skill – zručnosť
statement – výpoveď, výrok
subtitles – titulky
thought – myšlienka
way – cesta, spôsob

■ ADJECTIVES

abroad – v zahraničí, do zahraničia
confident – sebaistý
efficient – účinný
facial (expression) – výraz tváre, mimika

foreign (language) – cudzí (jazyk)

huge – obrovský
inventive – vynaliezavý
modest – skromný
non-verbal – neverbálny
shy – hanblivý
various – rôznorodý

■ VERBS

to be able to – byť schopný
to communicate face to face – komunikovať tvárou v tvár
to disappear – zmiznúť, stratiť sa
to enable – umožňovať
to exchange – vymeniť
to face – čeliť
to happen – stať sa, prihodiť sa
to increase – zvýšiť, narásť do množstva
to learn (about) – dozvedieť sa (o), učiť sa (o)
to make friends – spriatelieť sa
to order – objednať
to overcome – prekonať
to raise – vychovať
to receive – prijať
to record – nahráť (sa)
to repeat – opakovať
to require – vyžadovať
to spell – hláskovať
to take a final exam – robiť záverečnú skúšku
to take risks – riskovať

■ OTHER

as early as possible – čo najskôr
besides – okrem toho, navyše
etc. (lat. et cetera) – atď. (a tak ďalej)
from a very early age – od veľmi mladého veku
in conclusion – na záver, nakoniec
There is no need to... – Nie je potrebné...
through – cez, prostredníctvom

■ PHRASES

How to ask for advice – ako požiadať o radu

Excuse me, I've got a problem/some difficulties with... Prepáč/-te mi, mám problém/-y s...

Do you think you could help me with it? Maybe/te, že mi s týmto môžeš/-te pomôcť?

I am afraid I am totally bad at... Obávam sa, že vôbec nedokážem/nezvládam/neviem...

Could you give me some advice what to do about it? Môžeš/-te mi poradiť, čo sa s tým dá spraviť?

How to give advice – ako poradiť

The best thing would be to... Najlepšie by bolo...

You certainly/definitely should... Určite by si mal/-a/by ste mal/-i...

Firstly/Secondly/Thirdly, you should try to...

Po prvé, po druhé, po tretie... by si mal/-a/by ste mal/-i skúsiť...

How to express thanks for advice – ako sa poďakovať za radu

Thank you very much. Veľmi ďakujem.

I will try to do my best. Vynasnažím sa.

Thanks for your advice. Ďakujem za tvoju/vašu radu.

23 MASS MEDIA

Different types of mass media: radio, television, newspapers, the Internet

(rôzne typy masmédií: rádio, televízia, noviny, internet)

Main role of mass media (hlavná úloha masmédií)

Negative impacts of some mass media (negatívne vplyvy niektorých masmédií)

Persuading others (ako presvedčiť ostatných)

① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. What is your favourite TV channel? Why?
2. What do people read about in newspapers?
3. What do you use the Internet for?

We are in **daily contact** with different types of **mass media**. We **receive** information **through** television, **newspaper**, radio or **the Internet**. They are called mass media because they **reach** a very large **audience**. Mass media **inform**, **educate** and **entertain**. They **allow** us to **follow world affairs**. Most people follow the national and international news regularly because they want to be **well-informed**. Many people watch them on TV or read them in newspapers; some read them on the Internet.

RADIO, TELEVISION

There are people who like to watch **documentary programmes** because they take them to places they would never have a chance to see. People like to relax watching films, **sitcoms**, **soap operas** or **series**. Some people prefer reality shows. Watching TV for several hours a day **damages the eyesight**. It also **prevents people from** doing sports or being outside. **Violence** in films **influences** people in a bad way. **Advertising** helps finance TV channels. It has a **great impact** on people.

Slovak television is a public television network. **STV1** **broadcasts** news, political discussions, films, series and children programmes. **STV2** specialises in documentaries, **quiz shows**, educational programmes and music. **STV3** is a sports channel. Foreign language films on Slovak TV channels are **dubbed**, sometimes **subtitled**. Commercial stations, such as *TV Markíza* or *TV Joj*, also **enjoy wide popularity**. Thanks to *T43*, the first Slovak news channel, Slovaks can watch **current news** **throughout the whole day**.

Radio and television broadcasting in Britain is **provided** by *BBC (British Broadcasting Corporation)* which has a very good international **reputation**. In the USA hundreds of radio stations broadcast in foreign languages for **minorities**. About 160 radio stations **throughout the USA** broadcast only in Spanish.

NEWSPAPERS

Most newspapers are **daily** newspapers. The most popular Slovak daily newspapers **include** *SME*, which is a **broadsheet**, and *Pravda*. Both of them are **widely read** and **influential**. The **tabloid** *Nový Čas* and its **supplements** *Nový čas víkend* and *Nový čas pre ženy* is very popular. Economic periodicals include the daily *Hospodárske noviny* and the **weekly** *Trend*. *The Slovak Spectator* is a weekly English language newspaper which informs its readers about Slovakia in English. Most of the newspapers now have their online **editions**. There are also many weekly and **monthly** lifestyle **magazines** for men, women, teenagers, for people interested in sports, gardening, cars, etc. There are five **quality** daily papers in Britain – *The Times*, *The Guardian*, *The Financial Times*, *The Independent* and *The Daily Telegraph*. They **contain** national and international news, business news, sport news and **reports**. The most popular tabloids are *The Daily Mirror* and *The Sun*. The largest daily newspapers published in the USA are *The Wall Street Journal*, *The New York Times*, *The Washington Post* and *The New York Post*.

THE INTERNET

The Internet **presents** a true revolution in many **areas** of our life. It has changed the way we study, work or spend free time. **Via the e-mail**, Skype or ICQ we can easily communicate with family, friends, business partners or the people we do not know. It is easy to find information of different types on the Internet. It is much quicker now to find out the information about **departures** of trains, **opening hours** or details about products or services. **Search engines**, online dictionaries and encyclopedias help us find **relevant** information. Many people use the Internet as a form of **entertainment**. **Access** to the Internet **has** also **become easier** in our country. Most schools, companies and institutions **have access to it**. It is **becoming normal** to use the Internet at home too. There is a lot of discussion about the **safety** of the Internet. They mostly **concern** the viruses or safety of personal information.

After reading the text above, answer the following questions.

1. What is the main role of mass media?
2. Which types of programmes do people like watching to relax?
3. Which are the most popular newspapers in Slovakia? Describe them.
4. What is tabloid?
5. In what ways has the Internet changed our lives?
6. What do you mostly use the Internet for?

□ PRACTICE TASKS

A There are 10 words about mass media hidden in the grid. One of them has already been given as an example. Find the others.

S	E	B	R	O	A	D	C	A	S	T
K	R	A	D	I	O	C	H	Z	B	T
Y	T	I	L	L	S	W	A	N	N	A
P	W	I	N	T	E	R	N	E	T	B
E	M	A	G	A	Z	I	N	E	Z	L
N	E	W	S	P	A	P	E	R	L	O
O	E	W	P	L	A	P	L	R	E	I
T	E	L	E	V	I	S	I	O	N	D
W	E	I	V	M	O	C	T	I	S	W

B Match the definitions below to the words you found in the previous exercise.

Example: to send out signals to a wide area to broadcast

1. weekly or monthly publication with pictures, stories and articles
2. a publication printed daily or weekly containing news
3. a machine which receives broadcast sounds
4. a machine which can show pictures on a screen
5. software which allows users to make phone calls over the Internet
6. the electronic network of connected computers
7. a station which sends out TV programs
8. a newspaper with stories, scandals and entertainment
9. a situation comedy in episodes (for example *Friends*)

C Talk about the negative impacts of television on health of young people. You can talk about:

- time spent in front of TV vs. doing sports, reading books and other creative activities,
- problems with eyesight,

- developing the habit of eating in front of TV,
- violence and crime in films,
- creating pseudo-idols,
- lack of communication among the family members and friends.

D Role-play the following dialogue between an interviewer and a person who believes that he met aliens.

You: You are the interviewer. You are interviewing a man who says that he has seen aliens landing their spaceship in his garden. You think that his story is total nonsense but you have to make a good interview for the evening news.

Your partner: You believe you have seen Martians landing in your garden. They told you that it was very important that everybody on Earth should stop using electricity for two hours because it was interfering with their spaceship when they wanted to take off. You really want to use the interview to get this message across to the wider public. Persuade the interviewer that your story is true.

How to persuade:

I am sure about it...

I swear that it is true.

I would never lie about it.

I am telling you...

I DID see them.

□ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 23 MASS MEDIA

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372.

Read the titles of some articles below. Talk about:

- what kind of papers or magazines they might appear in,
- what/who the articles are about,
- what kind of readers would like reading such articles.

SECONDARY SCHOOL STUDENTS PROTEST AGAINST THE NEW SCHOOL LAW

10 TIPS TO FEEL FIT IN SUMMER

Ethiopia asks for food aid

Warnings over body piercing boom

Are Slovaks ready to use the euro?



Task 2

Express the meaning of the following quotation and explain your opinion.

TV is chewing gum for the eyes. (Frank Lloyd Wright)

Talk about your favourite TV channels and TV programmes. How much time do you spend in front of a TV daily?

Task 3 Simulation

Your grandmother is very old-fashioned and she has no idea about the latest mass media, such as the Internet. Explain to your grandmother what the Internet is and what it can be used for.

VOCABULARY MASS MEDIA**NOUNS**

aid – pomoc
access – prístup
advertising – reklama, propagácia
area – oblasť
article – článok
audience – publikum
broadsheet – noviny veľkého formátu
chewing gum – žuvačka
daily (newspaper/paper) – denník
departure – odchod
documentary programme – dokumentárny program
edition – vydanie
entertainment – zábava
eyesight – zrak
grid – mriežka
lack of – nedostatok
magazine – časopis
Martian – Martan
mass media – masmédiá
minority – menšina
monthly (magazine) – mesačník
newspaper (paper) – noviny
opening hours – otváracie hodiny
quiz show – televízny kvíz, súťaž
report – záznam, reportáž
reputation – dobré meno, reputácia

safety – bezpečnosť
school law – školský zákon
search engine – vyhľadávač (informácií na internete)
series – televízny seriál
sitcom – situačná komédia
soap opera – telenovela
spaceship – vesmírna loď
supplement – príloha
tabloid – bulvárne noviny
the Internet – internet
TV channel – televízny kanál
violence – násilie
weekly (newspaper/paper) – týždenník
world affair – udalosti, dianie vo svete

ADJECTIVES

current – aktuálny
dubbed – dabovaný
hidden – skrytý
influential – vplyvný
old-fashioned – staromódny
quality – kvalitný
relevant – relevantný, príslušný
subtitled – (film) s titulkami
well-informed – dobre informovaný

VERBS

to allow – dovoliť
to appear – objaviť (sa)
to broadcast – vysielat'
to concern – týkať sa
to contain – obsahovať
to damage – ničiť, zničiť
to educate – vzdelávať, vychovávať
to entertain – zabávať
to follow – sledovať
to get the message across – objasniť niečo
to include – zahŕňať
to influence – mať vplyv
to interfere – rušiť, narušiť
to lie – klamať
to present – predstavovať
to provide – poskytovať
to reach – zasahovať
to receive – dostať, prijať
to swear – prisahat'

OTHER

in daily contact – v dennom kontakte
it has a great impact on people. Má to na ľudí veľký dopad.
it has become easier... Stalo sa jedno-

duchším...

It is becoming normal... Stáva sa bežným...
It is widely read. Je veľmi čítaný.
It prevents people from... zabráňuje ľuďom (robiť niečo)
through – cez
throughout the USA – po celých Spojených štátoch amerických
throughout the whole day – počas celého dňa
to enjoy wide popularity – tešiť sa širokej popularite
to have access to – mať prístup k
via the e-mail – prostredníctvom mailu

PHRASES

How to persuade – ako presvedčiť
I am sure about it... Som si istý/-á, že...
I swear that it is true. Prisahám, že je to pravda.
I would never lie about it. Nikdy by som o tom neklamal.
I am telling you... Hovorím ti/vám, že...
I DID see them. Ja som ich NAOZAJ videl.

24 THE BOOK – THE FRIEND OF PEOPLE

Literary genres and their readers (literárne žánre a ich čitatelia)

Reading crisis and the future of books (kríza v čítaní a budúcnosť kníh)

My favourite author and book (môj obľúbený autor a kniha)

Describing a book (opis knihy)

(Pozri aj časť Literatúra na str. 337 – 354.)

① **Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.**

1. What kinds of books do you like to read and why?
2. What do you prefer – a book or a film version?
3. Why do people read less than they did before?

Our first books are usually read to us by our parents or grandparents. These are **fairy tales** or stories and they **normally** have more pictures than text. The **children's books** by *Hans Christian Andersen* and the *Brothers Grimm* are popular **worldwide**. English classic children's books like *Alice in Wonderland* (written by *Lewis Carroll*) and *Winnie the Pooh* (written by *A. A. Milne*) have been read and loved by many generations of English children.

Nowadays, people in Slovakia can read both original Slovak books and books **translated from** different languages, **mainly** English. They read **fiction** and **non-fiction genres**. Boys usually read **adventure stories** or science fiction, girls prefer **romances** or **novels**. Many young Slovaks have started to read in English. Adults like to read detective stories, **historical novels** or **books of travels**. Some also read non-fiction genres, such as **biographies** or **scientific papers**. Some people read **poetry**, but this **genre** is not easy to read. **Fantasy series** for children have become very popular genres in **recent** years. People also enjoy watching **film versions** of famous books which they have read. **Books make us think, amuse** us and give answers to some questions. A good book is also a **pleasant** way to **escape** from the real world.

Books can be bought in a **wide range of** bookshops. Some are small and quite **specialised**; others are situated in big shopping centres. It is becoming more and more popular to buy a book **via the Internet**. It is also possible to read a book in electronic form; such a book is called an **e-book**.

People read less than they did in the past. They do not **look for** information in books (such as encyclopedias or textbooks) as much as they used to. They need to **save as much time as possible**. **Therefore**, they prefer to **look up the information on the Internet**. **Instead of** reading good fiction, they watch films. Reading a book **takes days or weeks**, watching a film just one or two hours. People do not need to **concentrate** so much; they do not need to imagine things. Everything is ready for them on the screen. Adults read more and more **magazines** because it takes less time and concentration than reading a book.

Some people think that books will **die out** one day. They say that everything will be read in electronic form and people will have less and less time to read books. Others **argue** that reading is a hobby for many people and books are a part of the cultural **heritage** of every nation. That is why they think that books will always be here and are **irreplaceable**.

After reading the text above, answer the following questions.

1. Did you read a lot as a child? Do you remember your first book?
2. What kinds of books do the young Slovaks read?
3. What are your favourite genres?
4. Where can you buy books?
5. Do you think that people read less than before?
6. Do you think that books will disappear one day?

□ PRACTICE TASKS

A

Which literary genres from the box below would you recommend to somebody who likes reading about...?

1. folklore heroes, fairies, princesses and talking animals
2. science and technology and the future of life on Earth
3. detectives who investigate a crime, usually a murder
4. somebody's life
5. experiences and adventures from journeys
6. cartoon characters in a dynamic story

Example: deep feelings and dreams of poets which are written in verse **poems**

fairy tales ~~*poems*~~ *detective stories* *science fiction* *comic books*
biographies *books of travel*

B

What genres are the following books? Who were they written by?

1. *Romeo and Juliet*
2. *A Farewell to Arms*
3. *Harry Potter*
4. *The Catcher in the Rye*
5. *Hamlet*

C

Which books in the previous exercise are the following characters from?

1. a wounded soldier fighting on the Italian front during World War I is sent to a hospital in Milan where he falls in love
2. a Prince of Denmark who wants to revenge the death of his father
3. a 16-year-old boy who is describing his experiences in New York
4. an orphan wizard boy who attends a school to learn magic
5. a teenage couple who love each other despite the hatred of their families and die together in the end

D

Read the short paragraphs below. Which book from the exercise B do they describe? Which paragraph describes:

- author,
- main characters,
- plot,
- main conflict,
- setting.

1. The books describe several years of life of an orphan. They concentrate mostly on this young adolescent. Two of his classmates and best friends are also quite well-described. Throughout the story, the orphan learns more and more about his dead parents. The story is mostly set in a school, where the main character and his classmates meet a lot of teachers. They get on well with many of them. However, some of the teachers are not very popular.
2. The beginning of the story is set in a family house, while most of the events take place in an old school. Most of it is set in a fantasy world.
3. The main character, the orphan, discovers that he is a wizard. He is sent to a wizard school to learn the magical skills. He meets a lot of friends and has to overcome many problems there.
4. The main character struggles against the evil wizard who killed his parents.
5. She has become a multi-millionaire and a popular celebrity. She has participated in creating film versions of her books.

E

Talk about the book you have read recently. Talk about its:

- author (What is the full name of the author? Where is the author from? What other books has he/she written?),
- the time when it was written (which century),
- main characters/protagonists (their characteristics, names of other characters and their relationships),
- main conflict (between whom? why?),
- setting (Where is the story happening? what country? real world? fantasy world?),
- plot (Describe the story.).

F

Talk about your reading habits.

1. Which book have you read recently?
2. How many books per year do you read?
3. How many books per year do you buy?
4. Who do you usually buy books for?
5. Do you ever go to the library? What for?
6. What kind of books do you buy as a gift?
7. Do your friends read books or do they prefer going to the cinema to watch films?
8. If they like reading books, which genres do they prefer? Why?
9. Have you ever read any e-book?
10. Do you think that books will die out in the future?

☐ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 24 THE BOOK – THE FRIEND OF PEOPLE

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372.

Look at the pictures below and describe them. Talk about:

- the places in the pictures,
- what people go to these places for,
- what they can do there.

Do you also visit such places? How often? Where?



Task 1

There is a new library being built in your school. Your school has a budget of 1000 euro to spend on books. Talk about:

- the books you could buy for this money,
- genres and titles of the books which should not miss there,
- how you would attract other students from your school to attend the library regularly.

Task 3 Role-play

You: You like reading detective stories. Your friend wants you to go to the cinema with him/her to watch some detective film because he/she knows that you like such genre. However, you prefer staying at home to finish reading the last chapter of your book. You find the book very exciting. Refuse your friend's invitation in a polite way and give him/her clear reasons for it.

Your friend: You like going to the cinema. You want to go to watch a new detective film based on Agatha Christie. Your friend loves reading detective stories. Invite him/her to go with you.

☐ VOCABULARY THE BOOK – THE FRIEND OF PEOPLE

■ NOUNS

adventure – dobrodružstvo
 adventure story – dobrodružný príbeh
 biography – životopis
 book of travel – cestopis
 budget – rozpočet
 cartoon – kreslený film
 character – postava (z knihy)
 children's book – detská kniha
 e-book – internetová kniha (v elektronickej forme)
 experience – zážitok, skúsenosť
 fairy – víla
 fairy tale – rozprávka
 fantasy series – séria kníh žánru fantasy
 farewell – zbohom
 fiction – beletria
 film version – filmové spracovanie (knihy)
 genre – žáner
 hatred – nenávisť
 heritage – dedičstvo
 hero – hrdina
 historical novel – historický román
 magazine – časopis
 murder – vražda
 non-fiction genre – nebeletristický žáner
 novel – román
 orphan – sirota
 plot – dejová línia
 poem – báseň
 poetry – poézia
 revenge – pomsta
 romance – láboštný román
 spy – špión
 scientific paper – vedecká štúdia
 setting – prostredie
 verse – verš
 wizard – čarodejník

■ ADJECTIVES

evil – zlomyseľný
 irreplaceable – nenahraditeľný

pleasant – príjemný
 recent – nedávny
 specialised – špecializovaný
 wounded – zranený

■ VERBS

to amuse (sb.) – zabaviť (niekoho)
 to argue – hádať sa
 to attract – prilákať
 to be set (in) – byť zasadený (do)
 to concentrate (on) – sústrediť sa (na)
 to disappear – zmiznúť, stratiť sa
 to discover – objaviť
 to die out – vymrieť
 to escape – uniknúť
 to investigate – pátrať
 to look for – hľadať
 to recommend – odporučiť
 to struggle – zápasť
 to take place – konať sa
 to translate (from) – prekladať (z)
 to win an award – vyhrať cenu

■ OTHER

a wide range of... – široká škála...
 Books make us think. Knihy nás nútia premýšľať.
 despite – napriek
 instead of – namiesto niečoho
 mainly – najmä
 normally – bežne
 therefore – preto, z toho dôvodu
 to fall in love – zaľúbiť sa
 to get on well with somebody – vychádzať s niekým dobre
 to look up (the information on the Internet) – vyhľadať informáciu na internete
 to save as much time as possible... – ušetriť toľko času, koľko je len možné
 to take days or weeks – trvať dni alebo týždne
 via the Internet – cez internet
 worldwide – po celom svete

25 IDOLS AND CELEBRITIES

Idols and heroes (idoly a hrdinovia)

Role models and celebrities (vzory a celebrity)

Fictional heroes (fiktívni hrdinovia)

Positive and negative human traits (kladné a záporné vlastnosti ľudí)

Giving biographic facts about a famous person (biografické fakty známej osoby)

① Discuss the following questions in class. Then read the text below.

1. What kind of people do you admire?
2. How do people become famous?
3. Have you ever met any famous celebrity?

An **ideal** person does not exist because every individual has positive and negative **traits**. We often speak about **heroes**. Every country has important personalities in their history who become **idols** for many generations. They often **include** politicians or artists. **War** heroes died for the ideas they **believed in: defend-**ing their country, fighting for peace. They saved many people's lives. Heroes are also people who have difficult or **challenging** jobs, such as **volunteers** in regions of war or natural catastrophes, **rescuers, fire-fighters, soldiers** or doctors. We admire their qualities, such as **courage**, talent, energy, charm, **sense of humour**, etc.

During **adolescence**, young people often search for a **unique** identity. At this age, sports players, rock stars, film and television performers (e.g. reality show stars) become **role models** for them. Many stars became idols through **publicity** in the mass media. Idols are usually **well-known** in society. They are usually young and always look good and **stylish**. They have their own fashion designers and stylists. **However**, their popularity does not **last** a very long time. Mass media often inform people about idols' lives and create various **scandals**. Role models are often **criticised**. *Pop Idol* is the most famous talent **contest** to find the best young singer or pop idol in the country. **Viewers vote** for their idols by mobile phone **text messages**. These types of idols **have a great influence** on people of a certain age. Young people copy their image and **behaviour** because they want to **resemble** them. Reality show stars are "pseudo-idols", which means they are not real idols. They are **admired** for no real reasons.

Fictional heroes – heroes from books, films or plays often become idols admired by generations of readers. Some film heroes are handsome, strong and **brave**; others are **violent** or **possess superhuman characteristics**.

Most of us admire people who are not at all famous but are **ordinary**. **Still**, they are idols for us because they represent certain **human** traits which we admire. Our parents, grandparents, **siblings** or friends are often idols for us for their love, help, friendship, **support** and courage to fight against **difficulties** in life.

After reading the text above, answer the following questions.

1. Who are idols?
2. Who are war heroes?
3. How do mass media "produce" new idols?
4. Can you name any "pseudo-idols" known in our country?
5. Who are fictional heroes?
6. What human traits do you admire?

□ PRACTICE TASKS

A

Are the following words taken from the text nouns (N), adjectives (A) or verbs (V)? Make sentences talking about idols and celebrities and use these words.

ideal idol courage challenging unique admire difficulty
possess resemble fictional ordinary behaviour

B

Explain the meaning of the following positive and negative human traits.

Example: Friendly is somebody who *has got many friends*.

1. Respectable is somebody who...
2. Selfish is somebody who...
3. Brave is somebody who...
4. Smart is somebody who...
5. Violent is somebody who...
6. Charismatic is somebody who...

C

Read the facts below about a very famous actor. Can you guess who it is? Which of the following information is NOT mentioned in the text below?

marital status family background health problems friendship
interests work experience ups and downs

He created many famous movie characters that are physically very strong. He was born in a family which had an Italian background. Facial defects, which existed from his birth, left him with speech problems. He was a sickly child who suffered from rickets. His younger brother, Frank, became a movie actor. When he was 5, his parents moved to Maryland where he spent a difficult time. He attended about 12 schools from which he was expelled for bad behaviour. At the age of 15, he moved

to Philadelphia. He stayed there with his mother and her new husband. He became more interested in sports, which helped him to build up his body. In 1969, he moved to New York where he had a variety of odd jobs. He finally decided to become an actor. It became a successful career for him. Many people remember him best for the roles of *Rocky* and *Rambo*. The movie *First Blood* was one of the bloodiest movies of its time. The film *Rocky*, whose script was also written by him, was his first major success.

D Talk about the actor described in the previous exercise. What is he admired for? What kind of a hero is he? Why is he an idol for many young people, especially men?

He is famous/well-known because...

He is admired for...

He became famous when...

He played roles of...

I like him because...

I don't like him because...

E Now describe some famous actor/actress/singer/sportsman/sportswoman. Your classmates will guess who it is. Talk about his/her:

- image and lifestyle (clothes, hair style, jewels, cars, hobbies, holidays...),
- what he/she is famous for,
- some scandals from celebrity's life.

□ SAMPLE EXAM PAPER 25 IDOLS AND CELEBRITIES

Task 1

See useful phrases on page 372.

Read the short paragraph below. Then talk about "heroes" of the kind described in the text. Say whether you know any person whom you could call a hero for similar reasons. What other acts in life are brave?

Every year, we hear about people who have saved somebody's life or did some other brave act that needed a lot of courage. They saved people who nearly drowned, or were injured in a car accident, they gave blood many times or performed a very difficult surgery. In our country every year, one of these heroes is awarded with the title of "the bravest act of the year."

Task 2

Explain the meaning of the following quotation. Then talk about advantages and disadvantages of being a celebrity.

A celebrity is a person who works hard all his life to become well-known, then wears dark glasses to avoid being recognised. (Fred Allen)

Task 3

Talk about the talent contests which are run on Slovak television channels (e.g. *Slovensko hľadá Superstar*, *Slovensko má talent*). Explain the rules of the contests, talk about the criteria for selecting the candidates, say who decides about the winner. Mention some candidates from the previous years of similar contests who became popular this way.

□ VOCABULARY IDOLS AND CELEBRITIES

■ NOUNS

adolescence – dospievanie

award – oceniť

behaviour – správanie

blood – krv

characteristics – charakteristika

contest – súťaž

courage – odvaha

defect – chyba, defekt

difficulty – problém, prekážka, obtiažnosť

fame – sláva

fire-fighter – požiarnik

hero – hrdina

idol – idol

publicity – publicita, propagácia

rescuer – záchranár

tickets – krivica (choroba)

role model – vzor

rule – pravidlo

scandal – škandál

script – scenár

sense of humour – zmysel pre humor

sibling – súrodenec

soldier – vojak

support – podpora

surgery – operácia

talent contest – súťaž talentov

text message – textová správa (SMS)

trait – vlastnosť

viewer – divák

volunteer – dobrovoľník

■ ADJECTIVES

brave – statočný, odvážny

challenging – náročný

charismatic – charizmatický

expelled – vylúčený

facial – tvárový, na tvári

fictional – neskutočný

human – ľudský

ideal – ideálny, dokonalý

injured – zranený

odd (job) – nestála, príležitostná práca

ordinary – obyčajný

previous – predchádzajúci

recognised – spoznaný, odhalený

respectable – vážený

selfish – sebecký

sickly – chorľavý, slabý

smart – bystrý

stylish – štýlový

superhuman – nadľudský
 unique – jedinečný
 violent – násilnícky
 war – vojnový
 well-known – dobre známy

■ VERBS

to admire – obdivovať
 to avoid – vyhnúť sa
 to believe in – veriť v
 to criticise – kritizovať
 to defend – chrániť, obraňovať
 to drown – utopiť sa
 to explain – vysvetliť
 to have a great influence – mať obrovský vplyv
 to include – zahŕňať
 to last (time) – trvať (o čase)
 to mention – zmieniť sa, spomenúť
 to perform (surgery) – operovať
 to possess – mať, vlastniť
 to resemble – podobáť sa (komu)
 to select – vyberať

to suffer (from) – trpieť (na)
 to vote – hlasovať

■ OTHER

however – avšak
 still – jednako, predsa len

■ PHRASES

Giving biographic facts about a famous person – biografické fakty známej osoby

He/she is famous/well-known because... Je známy/-a, pretože...

He/she is admired for... Je obdivovaný/-á pre...

He/she became famous when... Stal/-a sa známy/-a, keď...

He/she played roles of... Hral/-a v úlohách...
I like him/her because... Páči sa mi, pretože...

I don't like him/her because... Nepáči sa mi, pretože...

KEY

klúč k ústnej časti

1 FAMILY

A brother – sister mother-in-law – father-in-law aunt – uncle niece – nephew
 grandfather – grandmother daughter – son sister-in-law – brother-in-law
 husband – wife

2 CULTURE AND ARTS

A subtitles – film portrait – painting stone – architecture poem – literature
 ballerina – dance interior design – architecture painter – painting conductor – music
 tango – dance choreography – dance actor – film novel – literature architect – architecture poet – literature
 gallery – painting orchestra – music cinema – film

3 SPORTS AND GAMES

A *Individual sports:* triathlon, tennis, squash, marathon running, 100 metres, golf, cross country skiing, badminton. *Played in teams:* rugby, handball, ice hockey, cricket, basketball, baseball.

B *Sample answers:* 1. skating, figure skating, ice hockey 2. tennis 3. gymnastics, basketball, volleyball, fitness, aerobics 4. swimming 5. skiing, cross-country skiing, ski jumping, snow-boarding, tobogganing 6. squash

C 1. squash 2. ice hockey 3. basketball 4. tennis

E 1. g 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. e 6. f

5 SHOPPING AND SERVICES

A 1. baker's 2. butcher's 3. greengrocer's 4. chemist's 5. clothes shop, boutique

B *Shop assistant:* 2., 4., 5., 8., 10., 12
Customer: 1., 3., 6., 7., 9., 11.

6 HEALTH CARE

A 1. ear 2. neck 3. shoulder 4. chest 5. elbow 6. stomach 7. wrist
 8. palm 9. thumb 10. hip 11. finger 12. thigh 13. knee 14. ankle 15. toe

C *Doctor:* 1., 3., 4., 7., 9., 10., 11., 13.

Patient: 2., 5., 6., 8., 12.

7 TRAVELLING

- A car – motorway ship – seaport plane – airport train – railway station
coach – bus station
- B expensive – cheap boring – exciting dangerous – safe polluted – clean slow – fast
- C expensive – more expensive – the most expensive boring – more boring – the most boring dangerous – more dangerous – the most dangerous polluted – more polluted – the most polluted slow – slower – the slowest fast – faster – the fastest exciting – more exciting – the most exciting safe – safer – the safest cheap – cheaper – the cheapest clean – cleaner – the cleanest

8 EDUCATION

- C secondary school, training centres, school attendance, school subjects, school exam, school activities, school teams, school centres, school entrance, compulsory attendance, compulsory subjects, compulsory exam, compulsory activities, entrance exam, extracurricular activities, sport centres, sport school, sport activities, sport teams

9 JOBS

- A 1. policeman, policewoman, police officer, police inspector 2. plumber
3. dressmaker, tailor 4. hairdresser 5. cosmetician 6. butcher 7. journalist
8. baker 9. photographer 10. postman, postwoman 11. librarian 12. car-mechanic
- E 1. D 2. E 3. A 4. I 5. F 6. J 7. C 8. G 9. B 10. H

10 PEOPLE AND NATURE

- B *good weather*: 1, 4, 6. *bad weather*: 2, 3, 5.

11 SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

- C 1. e-mail 2. modem 3. operating system 4. keyboard 5. monitor 6. word processor 7. database 8. software 9. printer 10. browser

12 PEOPLE AND SOCIETY

- A *good manners*: tolerant, friendly, sympathetic, respectful, polite, generous, helpful, reliable, willing
bad manners: angry, impolite, rude, loud, egoistic, selfish, cruel
- B *polite*: 1, 4, 8, 10.
impolite: 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 9.

- C *request*: 1, 5, 6, 8, 9.
offer: 2, 3, 4, 7, 10.

- F *guest*: 1, 5, 7, 10, 11
host: 2, 3, 4, 6, 8, 9, 12

14 FOOD

- D *compliments*: 1, 6. *criticism*: 2, 3, 4, 5
- E *waiter*: 1, 5, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14.
customer: 2, 3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 11

15 HOBBIES, LEISURE AND LIFESTYLE

- A *Individual hobbies*: collecting stamps, skateboarding, horse riding, playing the piano, body building, gardening, reading, photography, DIY. *Collective hobbies*: choir singing, aerobics. *Both*: dance, tennis, hiking, yachting, diving.

16 MULTICULTURAL SOCIETY

- A *countries*: Sweden, Wales, China, France, Slovakia, Poland, Italy, Greece, the Czech Republic, Austria, Hungary, the Netherlands, Spain, England, Ireland.
nationalities: Austrian, Spanish, English, Czech, Slovak, Dutch, Greek, Hungarian, Italian, French, Welsh, Swiss, Chinese.
- B I went on holiday to *Germany* last year where I met some really interesting people. The first one was Mario: He was an *Italian* but we spoke *English* together. He was really intelligent and could speak *Hungarian* and *Spanish*, but he didn't know any *Slovak*. My other great friend there was Isabelle. She was *French*, but her mother was *Polish* so she could understand most of what I said. The three of us had a great time. We went to see a *Russian* film and then had a *Greek* meal. We're hoping to meet again next year in *the Netherlands* or maybe *Ireland*.
- C 1. Valentine's Day 2. Easter 3. Independence Day 4. Thanksgiving Day
5. Christmas 6. St. Patrick's Day 7. Boxing Day 8. New Year's Eve

18 FASHION

A

ladies's clothes	skirt	blouse	dress
men's clothes	tuxedo	suit	shirt
types of shoes	sneakers	sandals	slippers
accessories	cuff links	earrings	necklace
hair	bleached	died	highlighted

B 1. denims 2. handbag 3. tie 4. costume 5. gloves 6. airy 7. swimming costume 8. nylon

D compliments: 1., 4., 6., 7., 9. criticism: 2., 3., 5., 8., 10.

E 1. A 2. D 3. F 4. E 5. B 6. C 7. G

19 ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES

A Canada – Canadian England – English Ireland – Irish Scotland – Scottish the USA – American Wales – Welsh Australia – Australian New Zealand – New Zealand

B Incorrect facts:

4. The official currency in England is the euro.
5. Queen Elizabeth II has the main political power in the United Kingdom.
7. The USA is a federation of 52 states including Alaska and the island state of Hawaii.
8. New York is the capital city of the USA.

Corrected facts:

4. The official currency in England is the **pound**.
5. Queen Elizabeth II has **little** real political power in the United Kingdom because the United Kingdom is governed by the Cabinet with 20 ministers and the Prime Minister.
7. The USA is a federation of **50** states including Alaska and the island state of Hawaii.
8. **Washington** is the capital city of the USA.

C the Grand Canyon – the USA Buckingham Palace – England
Pentagon – the USA Hollywood – the USA Niagara Falls – the USA/
Canada Harvard – the USA Loch Ness – Scotland
Quebec – Canada Sydney – Australia Heathrow – England
Manhattan – the USA Edinburgh – Scotland
the Statue of Liberty – the USA Wimbledon – England

E 1. the Americans 2. the English 3. the Canadians 4. the Scottish 5. the Irish

20 SLOVAKIA – MY HOMELAND

A 1. scenery 2. castle 3. traditions 4. view 5. patriots 6. caves

21 HUMAN RELATIONSHIPS

A

HEIGHT and BUILD	AGE	FACE	HAIR	CLOTHES
skinny	baby	wearing glasses	curly	smart
tall	teenager	moustache	straight	casual
well-built	elderly person	round	ponytail	old-fashioned
slim	middle-aged	wrinkled	dyed	neat
plump	in his forties	pale	shiny blond	trendy

B 1. G 2. G 3. G 4. G 5. G 6. B 7. B 8. G 9. B 10. G 11. G 12. G

C 2. careful/careless 3. polite 4. empathetic 5. satisfied 6. jealous
7. ignorant 8. supportive 9. stressful 10. responsible 11. interesting
12. intelligent

D

FEATURE	OPPOSITE	FEATURE	OPPOSITE
responsible	irresponsible	rational	irrational
reliable	unreliable	happy	unhappy
polite	impolite	helpful	unhelpful
intelligent	unintelligent	organised	disorganised
patient	impatient	friendly	unfriendly

G suggestions: 1. I'm (very) sorry to hear that. How bad! 2. Calm down, please. I know you are very tired. 3. Thank you very much for the wonderful cake! 4. I know you study hard. I really hope you will get to that university. 5. I'm so sorry he/she will not teach us next year. I wish he/she could. 6. That's wonderful news! I'm so happy about it. 7. You should be more careful. You are always losing things! 8. I promise I will stop smoking, mum. 9. I'm sorry, but I can't agree with you. 10. I'm very sorry I'm late./Excuse me for being late.

22. COMMUNICATION AND LANGUAGES

A 1. A 2. D 3. E 4. F 5. B 6. C 7. G

23. MASS MEDIA

A

B	E	B	R	O	A	D	C	A	S	T
R	A	D	I	O	C	H	Z	B	T	
T	I	L	L	S	W	A	N	N	A	
W	I	N	T	E	R	N	E	T	B	
M	A	G	A	Z	I	N	E	Z	L	
N	E	W	S	P	A	P	E	R	L	O
O	E	W	P	L	A	P	E	R	E	I
T	E	L	E	V	I	S	I	O	N	D
W	E	I	V	M	O	C	T	I	S	W

- B 1. magazine 2. newspaper/paper 3. radio 4. television 5. Skype
6. the Internet 7. channel 8. tabloid 9. sitcom

24. THE BOOK – THE FRIEND OF PEOPLE

- A 1. fairy tales 2. science-fiction 3. detective stories 4. biographies
5. books of travel 6. comic books
- B 1. tragedy, William Shakespeare 2. novel, Ernest Hemingway
3. series of novels, J. K. Rowling 4. novel, J. D. Salinger
5. tragedy, William Shakespeare
- C 1. A Farewell to Arms 2. Hamlet 3. The Catcher in the Rye
4. Harry Potter 5. Romeo and Juliet
- D Harry Potter; 1. main characters 2. setting 3. plot 4. main conflict
5. author

25. IDOLS AND CELEBRITIES

- A ideal – A idol – N courage – N challenging – A unique – A
admire – V difficulty – N possess – V resemble – V fictional – A
ordinary – A behaviour – N
- B 1. is of good character and reputation.
2. cares too much about himself/herself and not enough about others.
3. is courageous under difficult or dangerous conditions.
4. is clean and neatly dressed; somebody who is clever.
5. is brutal or aggressive and behaves this way.
6. possesses an extraordinary ability to attract.
- C Sylvester Stallone; NOT mentioned: marital status, friendship



GRAMATIKA
(otestuj sa v gramatike)

TEST YOUR GRAMMAR – – OTESTUJ SA V GRAMATIKE

I. NOUNS (PODSTATNÉ MENÁ)

GENDER
PLURAL
IS / ARE
ARTICLES: A / AN / THE / NO ARTICLE
QUANTIFIERS
COUNTABLE / UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS
MANY / MUCH / LOTS OF / LITTLE / A LITTLE / FEW / A FEW

II. ADJECTIVES (PRÍDAVNÉ MENÁ)

ENDINGS OF ADJECTIVES -ed / -ing
COMPARISONS
AS / LIKE / THAN
SO / SUCH A / SUCH AN / SUCH
ENOUGH / TOO
WORD FORMATION

III. ADVERBS (PRÍSLOVKY)

ADJECTIVE OR ADVERB – IT FEELS, LOOKS, TASTES, SMELLS, SOUNDS (good)
ORDER OF ADVERBS

IV. PRONOUNS (ZÁMENÁ)

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS: this – these, that – those
PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS: I – me – my – mine
REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS: myself
EACH OTHER / ONE ANOTHER
INDEFINITE PRONOUNS: some, any, no
EITHER / NEITHER / BOTH
RELATIVE CLAUSES AND PRONOUNS: who, what, which, that, whose
SO AM I, NEITHER / NOR AM I

V. GRAMMAR TENSES (GRAMATICKÉ ČASY)

PRESENT SIMPLE (I do) / PRESENT CONTINUOUS (I am doing)
PAST SIMPLE (I did) / PAST CONTINUOUS (I was doing)
PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE (I have done)
PAST SIMPLE (I did) / PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE (I have done)
PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE (I have done) / PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS
(I have been doing)

FOR / SINCE
PAST PERFECT SIMPLE (I had done)
PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS (I had been doing)
FUTURE SIMPLE (I will / shall do)
WILL / GOING TO
GOING TO / I AM DOING
FUTURE SIMPLE (I will do) / FUTURE CONTINUOUS (I will be doing)
REVISION OF TENSES
NEGATIVES
QUESTION FORMATION
INDIRECT QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS
QUESTION TAGS
HAVE SOMETHING DONE
TO DO / DOING
TO DO / DO
USED TO DO / I AM USED TO + -ING

VI. MODAL VERBS (MODÁLNE SLOVESÁ)

PRESENT FORMS OF MODAL VERBS
LANGUAGE FUNCTIONS

VII. PREPOSITIONS (PREDLOŽKY)

PREPOSITIONS OF TIME
PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE / MOVEMENT
PAIRS OF PREPOSITIONS: between – among, over – above, under – below

VIII. FIXED EXPRESSIONS (USTÁLENÉ SPOJENIA)

MAKE / DO
HAVE / HAVE GOT
GET / BECOME / GO / TURN / GROW / FALL / COME
FIXED EXPRESSIONS: preposition + noun
FIXED EXPRESSIONS: adjective + preposition
FIXED EXPRESSIONS: verb + preposition

IX. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES (PODMIENKOVÉ VETY)

WHEN / IF
THREE TYPES OF CONDITIONAL CLAUSES
WISH CLAUSES

X. PASSIVE VOICE (TRPNÝ ROD)

BY / WITH
SAY / TELL / TALK / SPEAK

XI. INDIRECT (REPORTED) SPEECH (NEPRIAMA REČ)

SHIFT OF TENSES IN REPORTED SPEECH
 TIME EXPRESSIONS IN REPORTED SPEECH
 REPORTED QUESTIONS
 INDIRECT IMPERATIVE

XII. CONJUNCTIONS (SPOJKY)

TIME CLAUSES
 PURPOSE CLAUSES
 CONTRAST CLAUSES

XIII. NUMERALS (ČÍSLOVKY)**XIV. BRITISH AND AMERICAN ENGLISH
(BRITSKÁ A AMERICKÁ ANGLIČTINA)****XV. IRREGULAR VERBS (NEPRAVIDELNÉ SLOVESÁ)****KEY TO TEST YOUR GRAMMAR
(KĽÚČ KU GRAMATIKE)****I. NOUNS (PODSTATNÉ MENÁ)****1.1 GENDER (rod)**

V angličtine majú podstatné mená:

1. mužský rod (HE): napr. *man, father, policeman* atď., ktorý označuje osoby mužského rodu a domáce zvieratá (ak vieme ich pohlavie).
2. ženský rod (SHE): napr. *woman, mother, policewoman, ship* atď., ktorý označuje osoby ženského rodu a domáce zvieratá (ak vieme ich pohlavie).
3. stredný rod (IT): napr. *table, tree, frog* atď., ktoré označujú veci a zvieratá (ak nevieme ich pohlavie).

Exercise 1: Are the following nouns female (F), male (M) or both (B)?

Example: nurse – F

1. student	6. stewardess	11. architect
2. nephew	7. bride	12. policewoman
3. waiter	8. baby	13. widow
4. queen	9. manager	14. cousin
5. gentleman	10. actress	15. girlfriend

Exercise 2: Write the masculine or the feminine to the following nouns.

Example: boy – girl

masculine	feminine
1. husband	1.
2. _____	woman
3. _____	3.
4. _____	aunt
5. widower	5.
6. _____	lady
7. groom	7.
8. _____	heroine
9. son	9.
10. _____	waitress
11. monk	11.
12. _____	princess
13. king	13.
14. _____	sister-in-law
15. steward	15.

PLURAL (množné číslo)

Množné číslo podstatných mien sa tvorí:

pridaním koncovky -s:

Napr. *book – books, flower – flowers, table – tables*

- pri podstatných menách končiacich sa na samohlásku + y (*key – keys, monkey – monkeys, day – days*)

- pri podstatných menách končiacich sa na samohlásku + o (*radio – radios*)

- pri podstatných menách končiacich sa na -oo (*zoo – zoos*)

- pri hudobných nástrojoch: (*piano – pianos*)

- pri skrátených slovách: *photography (photo – photos)*

pridaním koncovky -es:

- pri podstatných menách končiacich sa sykavkou -s, -ss, -x, -ch, -sh (*bus – buses, class – classes, box – boxes, coach – coaches, dish – dishes*)

- pri podstatných menách končiacich sa na -o (*tomato – tomatoes, potato – potatoes, hero – heroes*)

- pri podstatných menách končiacich sa na spoluhlásku + y (*lady – ladies, body – bodies, baby – babies*)

pridaním koncovky -ves:

- pri podstatných menách končiacich sa na -f / -fe (*life – lives, wife – wives, knife – knives, shelf – shelves*) (POZOR! *cliff – cliffs, roof – roofs, proof – proofs*)

nepravidelné množné číslo:

child – children, ox – oxen (vôl – voly), *tooth – teeth, foot – feet, man – men, goose – geese* (hus – husi), *mouse – mice* (myš – myši)

Jednotné číslo niektorých anglických podstatných mien je totožné s množným číslom. Napr. *fish* (ryba i ryby), *sheep* (ovca i ovce), *means* (prostriedok i prostriedky), *Japanese* (Japonec i Japonci), *Chinese* (Číňan i Číňania).

Exercise 3: Write the plurals for the following words – most of them are irregular, so be careful!

Example: goose geese

- | | |
|----------------|---------------------------|
| 1. bus | 16. salesman |
| 2. loaf | 17. half |
| 3. shelf | 18. cherry |
| 4. video | 19. potato |
| 5. scarf | 20. bottle of water |

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|
| 6. sheep | 21. brother-in-law |
| 7. child | 22. shoe |
| 8. foot | 23. baby |
| 9. box | 24. man |
| 10. roof | 25. tooth |
| 11. woman | 26. church |
| 12. wife | 27. knife |
| 13. body | 28. lady |
| 14. mouse | 29. radio |
| 15. class | 30. piano |

IS / ARE (je, sú)

- Počítateľné podstatné mená (napr. *book, flower, friend, car, table*) majú v angličtine jednotné i množné číslo.
- Nepočítateľné podstatné mená (napr. *time, milk, air, work, love, athletics, physics, luggage, knowledge, advice, information, money, news, weather*) majú v angličtine len jednotné číslo.
- Niektoré podstatné mená sa používajú len v množnom čísle. Napr. *people, glasses, spectacles, jeans, trousers, clothes, scissors, pyjamas* atď.
- Kolektívne podstatné mená, napr. *audience, team, club, government, army, family, team, company, public* a iné sa viažu so slovesom v jednotnom čísle (ak máme na mysli skupinu ako celok) alebo v množnom čísle (ak máme na mysli jednotlivých členov skupiny).
- Niektoré podstatné mená (*means, species, series*) majú tvar plurálu, ale môže po nich nasledovať sloveso v jednotnom čísle aj v množnom čísle.

Exercise 4: Fill in the gaps with IS or ARE.

Example: Physics is my favourite subject at school.

- People learning throughout their lives.
- Spaghetti my favourite food.
- What the weather like today?
- News about our school often in the local paper.
- That wonderful news!

6. Maths so difficult at our school.
7. Your luggage heavier than mine.
8. My new glasses a great help in class.
9. Money the reason why they got divorced.
10. My pyjamas under the pillow.
11. Gymnastics not very popular among my classmates.
12. The words in the text difficult to understand.
13. Do you know what the capital of the United States ?
14. The pupils from her class take an exam tomorrow.
15. Where my jeans? I haven't seen your jeans, but your trousers on the floor.
16. All my clothes in the wardrobe.
17. Family the most important social unit.
18. Your furniture too heavy to move.
19. The food in this restaurant delicious.
20. Scissors dangerous for small children.

ARTICLES: A / AN / THE / NO ARTICLE (členy A / AN / THE alebo bez člena)

Neurčitý člen A / AN sa používa:

- A – pred slovom, ktoré sa začína vyslovenou spoluhláskou (*a day, a dog, a university*)
- AN – pred slovom, ktoré sa začína vyslovenou samohláskou (*an apple, an English textbook, an hour*)
- keď hovoríme všeobecne alebo po prvýkrát o veciach, osobách alebo pojmoch
- po spojení *there is*, napr. *There is a cat on the tree.*
- keď hovoríme o povolaniach, napr. *I work as a doctor.*
- keď uvádzame príklad niečoho, napr. *A ladybird is a kind of insect.*
- vo výrazoch: *a little, a few, a lot of (half an hour, a little time, a lot of friends, a few people)*
- vo výrazoch: *once a week, twice a week*
- vo výrazoch *half, such, quite, what*, ak po nich nasleduje podstatné meno počítateľné v jednotnom čísle, napr. *Such a nice day! Quite a nice trip. What a pity! What a nice day! What a shame!*

vo význame „jeden“, napr. *a cup of tea; I've got a friend who speaks Chinese.*

vo význame „nejaký“, napr. *A man entered the room.*

pri opise: napr. *He's got a long nose. She's got a sweet face.*

POZOR! *She's got dark hair.* – NIE *She's got a dark hair.* („hair“ je nepočítateľné podstatné meno)

Určitý člen THE sa používa:

- podstatnými menami v jednotnom i množnom čísle vtedy, ak ide o pojmy, osoby a veci známe z kontextu, t. j. keď vieme presne ktorý / -á / -é / -i, napr. *Please, close the door.* (tieto dvere)
- výrazom „the only“, napr. *She is the only child.*
- radovými číslovkami, napr. *the first, the third*
- v superlatíve prídavných mien, napr. *the most interesting book, the worst days*
- predložkou „of“, napr. *He is learning the history of English.*
- hudobnými nástrojmi, napr. *I play the guitar.*
- výrazmi „the more... the more“ (čím... tým), napr. *The more I eat, the more hungry I am.*
- hromadnými podstatnými menami, napr. *the poor* (chudobní), *the rich, the young*
- národnosťami, napr. *the Germans, the Slovaks, the English*
- výrazmi – *the station, the shop, the cinema, the pub, the library, the city, the village, in the evening, the west, the world, the future, the sea, the sky, the ground, the country, the environment, the last*

VÝNIMKY označujú niektoré krajiny, pohoria, oceány, rieky, divadlá, kiná, hotely, reštaurácie, mená osôb, názvy novín, ktoré sú jedinečné, napríklad:

- *the Slovak Republic, the Czech Republic, the United States, the USA, the Netherlands*
- *the Earth*
- *the north of England*
- *the High Tatras, the Alps, the Himalayas, the Sahara*
- *the Atlantic Ocean, the Indian Ocean*
- *the Black Sea, the Red Sea, the Mediterranean*
- *the Danube, the Thames*
- *the Tate Gallery, the White House*
- *the Browns* (rodina Brownových)
- *the Guardian, the BBC, the Washington Post*
- *the European Union, the Council of Europe*
- *the Eiffel Tower, the Tower of London, the Statue of Liberty*
- *the Queen, the Prince* (**POZOR!** *Queen Victoria, Princess Diana*)

Bez členu sa používajú:

- vlastné mená, napr. *Bratislava, Slovakia, Europe, Jane...*
- nepočítateľné podstatné mená abstraktne, napr. *love, friendship, time* a látkové, napr. *coffee, flour, water...*
- dni v týždni, napr. *Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday...*
- mesiace, napr. *January, February, March...*
- ročné obdobia, napr. *spring, summer, autumn, winter*
- denné jedlá, napr. *breakfast, lunch, dinner, supper...*
- členovia rodiny, napr. *mother, father...*
- jazyky, napr. *English, Spanish, Russian...*
- školské predmety, napr. *Maths, Biology, Chemistry...*
- vedné odbory, napr. *linguistics, microbiology, medicine...*
- športy, napr. *tennis, hockey, golf...*
- farby, napr. *white, blue, red, black...*
- sviatky, napr. *Christmas, Easter*
- v predložkových väzbách s *to / at / in*, napr. *go to school / church / bed, be at university, be in hospital / prison*, ak hovoríme o účele inštitúcie.

Exercise 5: Fill in the gaps with A / AN / THE or no article (-).

Example: Our class teacher teaches us (-) English and (-) Math.

1. What beautiful car! It is best car I have ever driven.
2. It's very hot. Let's have cup of tea.
3. There is lovely park there.
4. I saw woman standing in front of house.
5. woman whom you saw was my mother.
6. park under the castle is largest in city.
7. Can you speak French?
8. French are usually very loud.
9. What's name of your English teacher?
10. Can you play piano?
11. Mike plays football twice week.
12. Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to Tate Gallery?
13. Have you ever been to England? No, but I was in USA last year.
14. I work as doctor. However, I want to change my job in future.
15. I have never seen such interesting film. It was best and longest film.

16. My grandmother has got dog and cat. cat sleeps in her room, but dog stays outside.
17. Have you bought book which I was talking about?
18. Let's go to cinema in evening. What great idea!
19. There is apple and banana on the table. Give me apple please.
20. Queen has recently visited Slovakia. She hasn't been to Czech Republic yet.
21. It's getting cold. Could you shut window, please?
22. more I study, less I know.
23. I usually don't have breakfast in morning.
24. Smiths went to ski to Alps.
25. My youngest daughter, Claire, has got curly hair.

QUANTIFIERS (výrazy vyjadrujúce množstvo)

Nepočítateľné podstatné mená (napr. *information, furniture, flour* atď.) sa stávajú počítateľnými, ak sa spájajú s týmito výrazmi:

- a **box** (škatuľa) **of** chocolates (množné číslo: two boxes of chocolates, many boxes of chocolates...)
- a **bar** (tyčinka, kus, kocka) **of** chocolate / soap (množné číslo: two bars of chocolate / soap, many bars of chocolate / soap...)
- a **bottle** (fľaša) **of** mineral water / beer / wine
- a **glass** (pohár) **of** water
- a **can** (konzerva, plechovka) / **tin** (konzerva, plechovka) **of** Coca Cola
- a **jar** (pohár, džbán) **of** jam
- a **bag** (vrecko) **of** flour
- a **piece** (jedna, kus) **of** information / advice / news / furniture
- a **slice** (krajec) **of** bread
- a **loaf** (bochník) **of** bread
- a **packet** (balíček) **of** tea

Exercise 6: If you went to the supermarket to buy the following things, what containers would they be in? You can use the words in the box more than once.
Example: a packet or jar of coffee

bar bottle box can jar tin loaf packet bag

1. a of vinegar
2. a of chocolate
3. a of chocolates
4. a of sugar
5. a of jam
6. a or of lemonade
7. a of bread
8. a of flour
9. a of soap
10. a of tea
11. a of wine
12. a or of Coca-Cola

COUNTABLE / UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS (počítateľné / nepočítateľné podstatné mená)

COUNTABLE NOUNS počítateľné podstatné mená: najčastejšie označujú veci, zvieratá, ľudí, ktoré možno spočítať	UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS nepočítateľné podstatné mená: označujú abstraktné podstatné mená (love, hate...) označujú niečo, čo sa sype, leje atď.
Spájajú sa s členom: <i>a car / an apple</i>	Nespájajú sa s členom: <i>water / sand</i> POZOR! a glass of water / a bucket of sand
Majú množné číslo: <i>cars / apples (ARE)</i>	Nemajú množné číslo: <i>water / sand (IS)</i> POZOR! two glasses of water / two buckets of sand (ARE)

Spájajú sa so SOME / ANY: <i>some cars, any cars</i>	Spájajú sa so SOME / ANY: <i>some water, any water</i>
Veľa: <i>many cars / many apples</i>	Veľa: <i>much water / much sand</i>
Veľa, mnoho: <i>plenty of cars / plenty of apples</i>	Veľa, mnoho: <i>plenty of water / plenty of sand</i>
Málo: <i>(a) few cars / (a) few apples</i>	Málo: <i>(a) little water / (a) little sand</i>

Exercise 7: Which nouns are countable (C) and which are uncountable (U)?

Example: luggage – U

1. information	11. weather
2. beef	12. computer
3. music	13. book
4. money	14. baggage
5. coffee	15. meat
6. bottle	16. accommodation
7. girl	17. advice
8. knowledge	18. water
9. news	19. teacher
10. rice	20. luck

MANY / MUCH / LOTS OF (mnoho, veľa) LITTLE / A LITTLE / FEW / A FEW (trochu, málo, zopár, niekoľko)

Many – mnoho, veľa, *how many* – koľko – používa sa pred počítateľnými podstatnými menami v množnom čísle, napr. *many houses, many streets, many children* spravidla v otázkach a v záporných vetách

Much – mnoho, veľa, *how much* – koľko – používa sa pred nepočítateľnými podstatnými menami v jednotnom čísle, napr. *much work, much love, much time* spravidla v otázkach a v záporných vetách

Few – málo, zopár, niekoľko – používa sa pred počítateľnými podstatnými menami v množnom čísle v negatívnom význame – nie dosť, napr. *few girls* – zopár dievčat

! A few – niekoľko, napr. *a few girls* – niekoľko dievčat

Little – neveľa, málo – používa sa pred nepočítateľnými podstatnými menami v jednotnom čísle v negatívnom význame – nie dosť, napr. *little water* – málo vody

! A little – trochu, napr. *a little water* – trochu vody

Lots of – a lot of – plenty of – veľa, viac ako dosť – používa sa pred nepočítateľnými (napr. *lots of money, a lot of money, plenty of money*) a počítateľnými podstatnými menami (napr. *lots of people, a lot of people, plenty of people*)

Počítateľné (HOW MANY people?)	Nepočítateľné (HOW MUCH money?)
MANY people (mnoho)	MUCH money (veľa)
LOTS OF / A LOT OF / PLENTY OF people (veľa)	LOTS OF / A LOT OF / PLENTY OF money (veľa)
PLENTY OF people (veľa, mnoho)	PLENTY OF money (veľa, mnoho)
A FEW people (niekoľko)	A LITTLE money (trochu)
FEW people (zopár – nie dosť)	LITTLE money (málo – nie dosť)

Exercise 8: Underline the words or phrases which fit in the text below.

I hate shopping in huge supermarkets, although LOTS OF / MUCH people enjoy it. Recently,

¹A FEW / FEW new supermarkets have been finished in my area. It took no time to build them. It must have cost ²MANY / LOTS OF money. Nowadays, ³A FEW / FEW people have time to shop elsewhere. Whenever I went there, I spent too ⁴MUCH / FEW time there. Once I met some friends of mine who were buying ⁵A LOT OF / MANY junk food. I wonder how ⁶MANY / LOTS OF people go here and how ⁷MUCH / MANY shopping they do. Last weekend, I needed to buy ⁸A FEW / FEW cooking ingredients, just a dozen eggs for a cake. I went to the supermarket. There were ⁹MANY / A LITTLE cars parked there, so I knew that there would be ¹⁰FEW / LOTS OF shoppers. I realised that I also needed some other things: ¹¹A FEW / FEW yoghurts, a bag of apples and some other bits and pieces. I spent ¹²MANY / LOTS OF money there and I lost too ¹³LOTS OF / MUCH time. I left the shop with ¹⁴LITTLE / FEW money and energy.

II. ADJECTIVES (PRÍDAVNÉ MENÁ)

ENDINGS OF ADJECTIVES -ED / -ING

(koncovky prídavných mien -ED / -ING: prídavné a činné vo funkcii prídavného mena – *I am bored because the film is boring.*)

Adjective ending -ED: prídavné vo funkcii prídavného mena sa používa:

• pri opise stavu vecí.

Napr. *This book is very interesting / exciting / fascinating / shocking / amazing.* (Kniha je veľmi zaujímavá / vzrušujúca / fascinujúca / šokujúca / prekvapujúca.)

• pri opise ľudí.

Napr. *Jane is a very interesting person.*

(Jana je veľmi zaujímavá osoba.)

Adjective ending -ING: prídavné činné vo funkcii prídavného mena sa používa:

• pri opise stavu ľudí ako dôsledok nejakého deja, ktorý na nich vplýval.

Napr. *I was very interested / excited / fascinated / shocked / amazed while reading this book.* (Bol som zaujatý / vzrušený / fascinovaný / šokovaný / prekvapený pri čítaní tejto knihy.)

Exercise 9: What is the difference in meaning between these two sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

1. The film was very **boring**.
2. I was **so bored** that I fell asleep.

Exercise 10: Fill in the gaps with correct endings: -ED or -ING.

Example: The book was so boring that I stopped reading it.

1. I was very disappoint- with my exam results.
2. My brother is an interest- person.
3. He is interest- in many sports.
4. I find skiing a very excit- sport.
5. Peter was very excit- about his new car.
6. What depress- weather!
7. My mum was very depress when her father died.

8. Have you heard that shock-..... news?
9. I was really shock-..... to hear about their wedding.
10. Paula was surpris-..... that she won the tennis match.
11. It was quite surpris-..... for all of us that Paula had been promoted.
12. I don't understand a word. I'm totally confus-.....
13. Our teacher's explanation was so confus-..... that we were totally confus-.....

COMPARISONS (porovnania)

COMPARISONS (porovnania)

1. AS – AS (tak – ako), napr. *He is as old as my son.*
2. THE SAME AS (rovnako ako), napr. *He is the same age as my son.*
3. AS / LIKE (ako), napr. *I work as a teacher. / You look like James Bond. (You are not James Bond).*
4. Prídavné meno 1 – dvojslabičné + -ER (...-ší), napr. *He is taller than my son.*
5. Prídavné meno 1 – dvojslabičné + -EST (naj...-ší), napr. *He is the tallest in the class.*
6. Prídavné meno 3 – viacslabičné: MORE + príd. m. (...-ší), napr. *This book is more interesting than the other one.*
7. Prídavné meno 3 – viacslabičné: THE MOST + príd. m. (naj...-ší), napr. *This is the most interesting book I have ever read.*
8. THE MORE... THE LESS (čím... tým), napr. *The more I study, the less I know.*
9. POZOR! good – better – the best (dobrý – lepší – najlepší)
bad – worse – the worst (zlý – horší – najhorší)
little – less – the least (málo – menej – najmenej)
many / much – more – the most (veľa – viac – najviac)
far – further / farther – the furthest / farthest
(vzdialený – vzdialenejší – najvzdialenejší)

Exercise 11: Translate the following sentences into Slovak.

1. Charles is **as tall as** Peter.
2. Mike is **taller than** Charles.
3. Bill is **the tallest** boy in the class.
4. My pronunciation is **worse than** yours.
5. Having a car accident was **the worst** experience in my life.

6. Which car is **more expensive**?
7. In my opinion, **the most expensive** car is Aston Martin.
8. I think that Renault Clio is **less expensive than** Renault Scenic.
9. This is **the least expensive** car in our shop.
10. He drove **faster and faster**.
11. There are **more and more unemployed** people in our area.
12. Today, it's **a bit colder than** usual.
13. **The more** I study, **the less** I know.
14. **The more expensive** the hotel is, **the better services** it provides.
15. **The more** languages you speak, **the better** it is for you.
16. It was **the best** thing I have ever done in my life.
17. You are **the same as** your father.
18. You look **like** a Hollywood star.
19. **Better** late than never!

Exercise 12: Fill in the chart with comparative and superlative forms.

	COMPARATIVE FORM	SUPERLATIVE FORM
Example: special	<i>more special</i>	<i>the most special</i>
1. attractive		
2. early		
3. happy		
4. fast		
5. good		
6. big		
7. little		
8. beautiful		
9. surprising		
10. long		

AS / LIKE / THAN (ako)

AS (ako) používame takto:

- v spojení „tak... ako“: *Your English is as good as mine. Mary swims as well as John.*
- pri porovnaní: *as old as the hills* (starý ako Praha)
He eats as a pig does.
- vo výrazoch: *As I said..., As I told you..., As I mentioned..., As you know...*
- pri vymenovávaní: *Some hobbies, such as diving or bungee jumping, are becoming more and more popular.*
- vo výrazoch *as usual, as always*, napr. *You are late, as usual.*

LIKE (ako) používame takto:

- pri uvedení príkladu, napr. *Some hobbies, like diving or bungee jumping, are becoming very popular.*

- pri porovnávaní, napr. *You look like your father. You look like Rambo.* (You are not Rambo.)

I've been working like a dog. (I am not a dog.) *My son swims like a fish.*

He eats like a pig. (bez slovesa)

THAN (ako) používame takto:

- pri porovnávaní prídavných mien alebo prísloviok, napr. *Your English is better than mine. You speak English better than me.*

Exercise 13: Fill in the gaps with AS / LIKE / THAN.

Example: That dress really suits you. You look LIKE a model.

- Fraser is a teacher, me.
- Some jobs, computing, can be well-paid.
- I told you, I'm not working overtime anymore!
- I am so exhausted. I've been working a dog.
- I work in Tesco a shop assistant.
- She's awful, she treats all the employees idiots.
- She is unemployed again, usual.
- I am sorry, I won't manage to come at four we arranged.
- I wish I were successful you.
- You are very good at your job, my father.
- Your son is tall you are.
- It tastes lemon.
- It is hot and sunny. I love the weather this.
- Your Spanish is more fluent mine.
- You look your mother.

SO, SUCH A / AN, SUCH (taký-á-é, takí-é)

SO (taký) sa používa v spojení s prídavnými menami alebo príslovkami.

Napr. *It was so cold that we left.* (Bolo tak chladno, že sme odišli.)

He drove so fast that it was impossible to overtake him. (Jazdil tak rýchlo, že bolo nemožné predbehnúť ho.)

SUCH A / SUCH AN (taký) sa používa v spojení prídavného mena s počítateľným podstatným menom.

Napr. *It was such a good film that I would like to watch it again.* (Bol to tak dobrý film, že by som si ho ešte raz rád pozrel.)

It was such an interesting book that I would like to read it again. (Bola to tak zaujímavá kniha, že by som si ju ešte raz rád prečítal.)

SUCH sa používa v spojení prídavného mena s nepočítateľným podstatným menom alebo s počítateľným podstatným menom v množnom čísle.

Napr. *It was such nice weather that we went out.* (Počasie bolo také pekné, že sme šli von.)

They were such nice people that we invited them for dinner. (Boli také milí, že sme ich pozvali na večeru.)

Exercise 14: Translate the following sentences into Slovak and compare the usage of SO and SUCH.

- The book was so interesting that I read it all.
- It was such an interesting book that I read it all.
- You are lucky to have such nice friends.
- It was such nice weather that we went to swim.

Exercise 15: Fill in the gaps with in SO, SUCH or SUCH A / AN.

Example: Don't drive so fast.

- It was lovely trip.
- I didn't know that it was old car.
- We had a great holiday.
- The weather was good that we went to the beach.
- I was speaking quietly that nobody could hear a word.
- It was boring film that we stopped watching it.
- Like Daniela and Tom. They are nice young people.
- Diving in the ocean was dangerous that none of us tried it.
- Why do you wake up early?

10. It is difficult to wash your hair because it is long.
11. You feel sick because you have eaten much chocolate.
12. Don't speak fast. I don't understand.
13. Your garden is beautiful. Who takes care of it?
14. It was terrible weather that we stayed at home.

ENOUGH / TOO (dost, príliš)

ENOUGH – dostatok, dost

- kladie sa pred podstatné mená:

Napr. *She has not got ENOUGH friends to play with.* (Nemá dost priateľov...)

I never have ENOUGH time. (Nikdy nemám dost času.)

- kladie sa za prídavné mená a príslovky:

Napr. If you study hard ENOUGH, you don't have to worry about your exams. (Ak dost učíš...)

Bob is old ENOUGH to travel by himself. (... dost starý na to, aby...)

TOO – príliš

- kladie sa pred prídavné mená a príslovky:

Napr. *He is TOO old.* (príliš starý)

She is driving TOO fast. (príliš rýchlo)

- kladie sa pred podstatné mená vo výrazoch TOO MUCH / TOO MANY:

Napr. *My problem is TOO MUCH work and TOO MANY late nights.* (príliš veľa príliš mnoho...)

Exercise 16: What is the difference in meaning between these two sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

1. She has not got **enough** toys to play with.
2. She has got **too many** toys to play with.

Exercise 17: Fill the gaps with ENOUGH or TOO.

Example: There are too many cars parked here.

1. The number is long to remember.
2. She is old to have a baby.
3. It's late to go out.
4. I cannot afford to buy it. It's expensive.
5. Be careful! It's hot.

6. He works much and never has money.
7. It's far to walk.
8. I cannot carry it. It's heavy for me.
9. This situation is complicated to solve.
10. They've been long together.
11. This book is good to read.
12. My daughter doesn't eat vegetables.
13. She eats many sweets.

Exercise 18: Write the answers to the following questions using ENOUGH or TOO. Look at the example below.

Example: Are you coming today?

(busy) No, I'm afraid, I'm not. I'm too busy to come.

1. Shall I close the window?
(cold) Yes, please. It's to lift it up.
2. Do you want me to help you?
(strong) It's very kind of you. I'm not to lift it up.
3. Would you like more rice?
(much) No, thanks. It's for me.
4. I feel sick.
(much wine) No wonder. You have drunk to spend.
5. Let's go out.
(money) Sorry, I can't. I do not have to spend.

WORD FORMATION (slovo tvorba)

Exercise 19: Finish the box below

(See also word formation chart on page 383.)

NOUN (podstatné meno)	ADJECTIVE (prídavné meno)
<i>Example: pessimism</i>	pessimistic
1.	funny
competition	2.
3.	humorous
beauty	4.

5.	responsible
imagination	6.
7.	confident
luck	8.
9.	happy
law	10.
11.	lost
patience	12.
13.	flexible
luxury	14.
15.	peaceful
profession	16.
17.	occasional
height	18.
19.	comfortable
pride	20.

Exercise 20: Form the opposites to these words by adding a prefix to them. You can use DIS-, IL-, IM-, IN-, IR-, UN-, AB-.

Example: un real

- | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1.correct | 10.possible | 19.responsible |
| 2.patient | 11.intelligent | 20.perfect |
| 3.experienced | 12.regular | 21.direct |
| 4.mature | 13.believable | 22.expensive |
| 5.organised | 14.logical | 23.able |
| 6.comfortable | 15.helpful | 24.polite |
| 7.formal | 16.real | 25.friendly |
| 8.legal | 17.normal | |
| 9.reliable | 18.moral | |

III. ADVERBS (PRÍSLOVKY)

ADVERBS – príslovky v angličtine sa rozdeľujú na:

- adverbs of **manner**: príslovky spôsobu, pýtame sa ne otázkou **HOW?** (napr. *well*)
- adverbs of **place**: príslovky miesta, pýtame sa ne otázkou **WHERE?** (napr. *here*)
- adverbs of **time**: príslovky času, pýtame sa ne otázkou **WHEN?** (napr. *tomorrow*)
- adverbs of **frequency**: príslovky frekvencie **HOW OFTEN?** (napr. *once a year*).
- **Other adverbs** (ostatné príslovky): *certainly, possibly, probably, surely...*

Príslovky tvoríme takto:

1. prídavné meno + -ly: napr. *slow* → *slowly*
 2. prídavné meno, ktoré sa končí na -ic + -ally: napr. *tragic* → *tragically*
 3. prídavné meno, ktoré sa končí na -le: napr. *terrible* → *terribly*
 4. prídavné meno, ktoré sa končí na spoluhlásku + -y: napr. *happy* → *happily*
 5. prídavné meno, ktoré sa končí na -ly: napr. *friendly* → *in a friendly way*
 6. nepravidelné tvorenie prísloviek: *good* → *well*, *hard* → *hard*, *fast* → *fast* (I work *hard*.)
- Pozor!** Po zmyslových slovesách nasleduje prídavné meno, nie príslovka. (*You look good. It tastes good.*)

Exercise 21: Write the correct form of adverbs. Be careful, some of them are irregular.

Example: lucky – luckily

- | | |
|----------------|--------------------|
| 1. quick | 6. horrible |
| 2. hard | 7. tragic |
| 3. slow | 8. good |
| 4. calm | 9. bad |
| 5. fast | 10. friendly |

Exercise 22: Correct the following phrases if necessary.

Example: Drive careful! – wrong, Drive carefully!

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. I work hardly. | 6. Paul is a carefully driver. |
| 2. There is hardly any butter left. | 7. You look well. |
| 3. She is a hard worker. | 8. It's getting late. |
| 4. The train runs fast. | 9. I'm sorry I'm late. |
| 5. It's a fast train. | 10. He is known-well. |

Exercise 23: Translate the following sentences into English.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. Mám sa dobre. | 6. Moja angličtina je dobrá. |
| 2. Túto noc som spala dobre. | 7. Jej výsledky boli zlé. |
| 3. Prečo nejazdiš rýchlo, keď máš rýchle auto? | 8. Paul jazdí opatrne. |
| 4. Priateľsky sa na mňa usmiala. | 9. Pravidelne hrávam tenis. |
| 5. Obyčajne (normálne) chodím do práce pešo. | 10. Teraz na tom sotva pracuje. |

ADJECTIVE OR ADVERB (prídavné meno alebo príslovka)
It feels, looks, tastes, smells, sounds GOOD
(zmyslové slovesá + prídavné meno vo význame príslovky)

Exercise 24: Which form is correct?

Example: This wine smells good / well.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. The soup tastes good / well. | 6. These flowers smell nice / nicely. |
| 2. Jane, you look terrible / terribly! | 7. It rains heavy / heavily. |
| 3. What a beautiful / beautifully skirt! | 8. It sounds bad / badly. |
| 4. I feel happy / happily today. | 9. He earns a lot of money because he works hard / hardly. |
| 5. Drive careful / carefully! | 10. This wine tastes quite strange / strangely. |

ORDER OF ADVERBS (poradie prísloviek vo vete –
My father works hard in our garden every day.)

- Príslovky v strede vety: (often, usually, never, ever, rarely, normally...)
 Napr. *I often go to the cinema. I have never been to Thailand.*
- Príslovky spravidla na konci vety: (yesterday, last week, twice a year, yet, very much...)
 Napr. *I go to the cinema twice a week. I like chocolate very much.*
- Pri viacerých príslovkách je poradie takéto:
MANNER (spôsob – ako?) + **PLACE** (miesto – kde?) + **TIME** (čas – ako často?)
 Napr. *My father works hard in our garden every day.*
- Ak sloveso vyjadruje pohyb (napr. go, walk, move, drive atd.) je poradie pri viacerých príslovkách takéto:
PLACE (miesto – kde?) + **MANNER** (spôsob – ako?) + **TIME** (čas – ako často?)
 Napr. *My mother goes to work on foot every day.*

Exercise 25: Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets.

Example: Have you been arrested? (ever) Have you ever been arrested?

- | |
|---|
| 1. Tom goes to work by car. (always) |
| 2. Ann doesn't smoke. (usually) |
| 3. I go to the cinema. (twice a week) |
| 4. My parents travel abroad. (rarely) |
| 5. She has not eaten sushi. (yet) |
| 6. Mike has visited his grandparents. (already) |
| 7. My daughter eats cereals. (every morning) |
| 8. Did you see him? (yesterday) |
| 9. My husband and I have been to Paris. (never) |
| 10. Have you been married? (ever) |

Exercise 26: Make sentences from the following words and phrases, adding the necessary punctuation.

Example: always / goes / in his / Mr. Johnson / old Fiat / to work

Mr. Johnson always goes to work in his old Fiat

but / because / he / I / my boss / rarely / see / travels

do / ever / night / shifts / work / you / ?

a portrait / become / I / like / painter / to / would / in the future

usually / go / to / I / after / bed / midnight

and / employer / get on / I / my / quite well

in / classmates / a week / my / cinema / go / twice / the

IV. PRONOUNS (ZÁMENÁ)

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS: **this – these, that – those** (ukazovacie zámená)

THIS (tento, táto, toto), **THESE** (títo, tieto) – poukazujú na osoby, predmety, javy časovo alebo priestorovo blízke (here).

Napr. počítateľné podstatné mená: *this book / these books*

nepočítateľné podstatné mená: *this water*

THAT (tamto), **THOSE** (tamti, tamtie) – poukazujú na osoby, predmety a javy časovo alebo priestorovo vzdialenejšie (over there).

Napr. počítateľné podstatné mená: *that book / those books*

nepočítateľné podstatné mená: *that water*

Exercise 27: Fill in the gaps with **THIS, THESE, THAT, THOSE**.

Example: Could you please pass me that book which is over there?

- Hello! is Bob. Can I speak to Gabi?
- I'm sorry, but seat is taken.
- Who is man standing over there?
- Mrs. Patkinson, are children in this picture yours?
- Look at crazy people swimming in the frozen lake.
- is the best ice cream in town. Oh yes, it looks really good.
- Mike, is Nicole, my best friend. Nicole, is Mike.
- What's your plan for weekend?
- I'm so tired days.
- Could you pass me books on the top shelf? I can't reach them.

PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS: **I – me – my – mine** (osobné a prívlastňovacie zámená)

Personal pronouns (osobné zámená pred slovesom)	Personal pronouns (osobné zámená za slovesom)	Possessive pronouns (prívlastňovacie zámená pred pod- statným menom)	Possessive pronouns (prívlastňovacie zámená samostatne stojace)
I (am)	(tell) me	my (book)	(a book of) mine
you (are)	(tell) you	your (book)	(a book of) yours
he (is)	(tell) him	his (book)	(a book of) his
she (is)	(tell) her	her (book)	(a book of) hers
it (is)	(tell) it	its (book)	(a book of) –
we (are)	(tell) us	our (book)	(a book of) ours
you (are)	(tell) you	your (book)	(a book of) yours
they (are)	(tell) them	their (book)	(a book of) theirs

Exercise 28: Read Zuzana's story about her trip and fill in the gaps with a **pronoun or possessive**.

Example: It was my dream to go to Denmark.

I wanted to go there to visit two friends of ¹....., Mária and Jana, who worked there as au pairs. ²..... had been there for six months. ³..... friends advised me to fly from Bratislava to Copenhagen. That was the best way for ⁴..... to travel. I had never flown before so ⁵..... quite nervous. Whenever my family goes on holiday, we always forget to take something with ⁶..... Once, my brother forgot to take ⁷..... camera, then my grandparents forgot ⁸..... bus tickets, but this time, I forgot ⁹..... passport. When I arrived at the airport, the ¹⁰..... man at the check-in desk asked ¹¹..... for the passport, but I couldn't find ¹²..... anywhere. I had to leave the queue and then phone home. My mum answered and told ¹³..... that I had left the passport on the hall table. Luckily, ¹⁴..... had asked Aunt Lucy to bring ¹⁵..... to the airport. She gave me ¹⁶..... aunt's mobile number. Just as I was dialling the number, a large customs officer tapped me on the shoulder. I turned round, quite frightened. He asked ¹⁷..... if I had lost something. I was about to answer when I noticed that ¹⁸..... was holding ¹⁹..... passport in ²⁰..... hand! Aunt Lucy was standing just behind him and smiling like an idiot. Aunt Lucy went with ²¹..... back to the queue at the check-in counter. I was really nervous, so I was really pleased to have ²²..... company. After getting ²³..... ticket, I saw

that I only had a few minutes left. I said goodbye to Aunt Lucy and ran up to the security control. The woman at the desk took ²³ ticket and asked, "Do ²⁴ have ²⁵ passport?" "Of course," I answered with a smile.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS (zvrätne zámená: seba, sa; myself – sám seba):

Zvrätne zámená majú v angličtine zdôrazňujúcu funkciu. Tvorí sa takto:
myself – on my own: Napr. *I will do it myself. I will do it on my own.* (Urobím to sám.)
yourself – on your own
himself – on his own
herself – on her own
itself – on its own
ourselves – on our own
yourselves – on your own
themselves – on their own

Exercise 29: Put in the suitable reflexive pronoun.

Example: You don't have to help me. I will do it myself.

1. Look at You are very pale.
2. Make at home. (Cíťte sa ako doma.)
3. We have the problem with finances
4. My brother never repairs his car
5. My grandparents will take care of
6. Do you ever talk to ?
7. They had a great time at the party. They enjoyed
8. Shall we decorate your room ?
9. The restaurant wasn't very nice, but the food was great.
10. I've done it Nobody has helped me.

Exercise 30: Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Keď bola Klára malá, sama si ostrihala vlasy.
2. Tú večeru som kúpil ja.
3. Moji susedia si sami postavili dom.
4. Prosím ňu, ponúkni sa.
5. Auto samo o sebe je pekné, ale nie je spoľahlivé.

EACH OTHER / ONE ANOTHER (jeden druhého, jeden druhému atď.)

Exercise 31: What is the difference in meaning between these two sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

Tim and Jane are looking at **each other**.

Tim and Jane are looking at **themselves**.

Exercise 32: Complete the sentences with **-SELVES** or **EACH OTHER**.

Example: It's very nice that your children help each other with their homework.

- Gavin and Jennifer haven't seen for a long time.
- My parents love
- Me and my brother never listen to
- Our children always help when they are in trouble.
- British people only think of

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS (neurčité zámená)

SOME (niektorý / nejaký), ANY (žiadny / akýkoľvek / hociktorý), NO (žiadny)

Some + podstatné meno (niektorý, nejaký), *somebody*, *someone* (niekto), *something* (niečo), *somewhere* (niekde, niekam) sa používajú:

v kladných oznamovacích vetách. Napr. *There are some apples left.*

v otázkach, na ktoré očakávame kladnú odpoveď. Napr. *Will you have some more coffee?*

Any + podstatné meno (akýkoľvek, hociktorý), *anybody*, *anyone* (hocikto, ktokoľvek), *anything* (čokoľvek, hocíčo), *anywhere* (kdekoľvek, kamkoľvek) sa používajú:

v kladných vetách zovšeobecňujúcich, t.j. vo význame *hocíjaký / -á*. Napr. *Call anybody to help me.* (Zavolaj hocíkoho, aby mi pomohol.)

v otázkach namiesto „some“, vtedy znamenajú *nejaký, niekto, niečo, niekde a niekam*. Napr. *Is anybody here?* (Je tu niekto?)

v záporných vetách (*not any*), vtedy znamenajú *žiadny, nikto, nič, nikde, nikam*. Napr. *There wasn't anybody in the house.* (Nikto nebol v dome.)

No + podstatné meno (*žiadny*), *none* (*žiadny*), *nobody* (*nikto*), *no one* (*žiadny*), *nothing* (*nič*), *nowhere* (*nikde, nikam*) sa používajú len v zápornom význame.

Napr. *We have no car.* (Nemáme žiadne auto.) *None of them had arrived.* (Ni z nich neprišiel.)

POZOR! V anglickej vete môže byť len jeden zápor. Napr. *Nobody was there.* (Nikto tam nebol.)

I understand nothing. (Nerozumiem ničomu.)

	Pridavné meno	Osoba	Vec	Miesto
Kladná veta +	SOME	SOMEBODY	SOMETHING	SOMEWHERE
Záporná veta -	ANY NO	ANYBODY NOBODY	ANYTHING NOTHING	ANYWHERE NOWHERE
Otázka ?	ANY	ANYBODY	ANYTHING	ANYWHERE

POZOR!

1. Would you like **some** coffee? (očakávame kladnú odpoveď: Yes, please.)
2. Give me **anything** to drink. (tu *anything* znamená *hocičo*)
3. There's **hardly** **anybody**. (*hardly* – sotva má negatívny význam)
4. I have **never** met any Englishman. (*never* – *nikdy* má negatívny význam)
5. He ran two kilometres **without** any break. (*without* – *bez* má negatívny význam)

Exercise 33: Complete the sentences with SOME, SOMEBODY, SOMEWHERE, SOMETHING, ANY, ANYBODY, ANYWHERE or ANYTHING. Not all expressions are used.

Example: I haven't heard anything about Miki. Is he OK?
He is fine. Somebody finally gave him work.

1. She left the house without packing
2. She lives with her boyfriend now.
3. There is waiting for you.
4. It's my friend, we're going out for lunch. If calls while I am away, please take the message.
5. Would you like to drink?
6. Can I have beer, please?
7. Gemma keeps all her secrets to herself. She doesn't say
8. Can apply to study at university?
9. I have never been to English-speaking country.
10. I can hear calling for help.

Exercise 34: Translate the following indefinite pronouns into English and then make sentences using them.

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. každý | 2. hoci kto – | 3. niekto – |
| 4. všetko | 5. všetko – | 6. hocičo – |
| 7. nič | 8. nič – | 9. všade – |
| 10. niekde | 11. niekde – | 12. nikde – |

EITHER / NEITHER / BOTH (každý z dvoch / ani jeden z dvoch / obaja)

Either

V spojení **either of the** znamená ten i ten, každý (z dvoch).

Napr. *Either of the two examples are correct.* (Každý z tých dvoch príkladov je správny.)

Ven väzbe **either... or** znamená bud... alebo.

Napr. *You can either stay or go now.* (Môžeš buď zostať alebo odísť.)

Neither

V spojení **neither of the** – žiadny (z dvoch), ani jeden.

Napr. *Neither of the two men can speak English.* (Ani jeden z tých dvoch mužov nehovorí po anglicky.) – vo väzbe **neither... nor** znamená ani... ani.

Neither Ben nor Jim could fix our car. (Ani Ben ani Jim nám nevedeli opraviť naše auto.)

Both

V spojení **both (of) the** znamená obaja (z dvoch).

Napr. *Both (of) the cars are good.* (Obe autá sú dobré.)

Exercise 35: Complete the sentences with EITHER / NEITHER / BOTH.

Example: These students were late and neither of them apologised.

1. I like this red and that blue pullover. I will take of them.
2. Peter nor Mike came to our party.
3. you'll go to bed or I'll call your father.
4. of my parents were born in March.
5. of us are getting old.
6. I invited Nicole and Peter to come over, but of them had time.
7. you wake up or I am leaving.

8. Sue and Peter are sick.
9. Hugo and Gregor can't speak Spanish. of them can speak Spanish.
10. He didn't drink and he didn't eat. He drank nor ate.

RELATIVE CLAUSES AND PRONOUNS:

who, what, which, that, whose (vzťažné vety a zámená)

Who – ktorý – sa používa len pri osobách. Napr. *That is the girl who lives in London.* (To je tá dievča, ktoré býva v Londýne.)

Whom – od ktorého, ktorému, o ktorom, s ktorým – sa používa len pre osoby po predložkách (from whom, to whom, about whom, with whom). Napr. *Is that the boy about whom you were talking?* = *Is that the boy who you were talking about?* (To je ten chlapec, o ktorom ste hovorili?)

Which – ktorý – sa používa len pre veci, používa sa po rôznych predložkách (of which, to which). Napr. *Did you get the letter which we sent you from New York?* (Dostali ste list, ktorý sme vám poslali z New Yorku?) *The room which entered was very beautiful.* (Miestnosť, do ktorej sme vstúpili, bola krásna.)

That – ktorý – sa používa pre osoby i veci. Napr. *Who is that man that is speaking?* (Kto je ten muž, ktorý reční?), hlavne po 3. stupni prídavných mien napr.: *Shakespeare is the greatest dramatist that has ever lived.* (Shakespeare je najväčší dramatik, ktorý kedy žil.), po radových číslovkách (first, second, third...) a po neurčitých zámenách (all, every, some, any).

Pozor! Ak sú vzťažné zámená *who, which, that* predmetom vzťažnej vety, môžu ich vynechať.

Vo vzťažných vetách v angličtine existujú presné pravidlá, kedy pred vzťažnými zámenami píšeme a nepíšeme čiarku. Čiarkou oddeľujeme napríklad vsunutú vetu, ktorá obsahuje doplnkovú informáciu. Napr. *The boy, about whom you are talking, lives in Boston.* (Chlapec, o ktorom hovoríte, býva v Bostone.)

Exercise 36: What is the difference in meaning between these two sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

- The man **who** lives nearby is a car mechanic.
- Josh works for the company **which** produces cars.

Exercise 37: Read the text about the life of Sylvester Stallone. Complete the sentences with WHO, WHICH, WHERE or WHOSE.

Example: Stallone created many famous movie characters who are very physically strong.

He was born in a family had an Italian background.

His younger brother, name was Frank, became a movie actor.

When Sylvester was 5, his parents moved to Maryland he spent a difficult time.

At the age of 15, he moved to Philadelphia he stayed with his mother and her new husband.

He became more interested in sports helped him to build up his body.

In 1969, he moved to New York he had a variety of strange jobs.

He started with smaller roles, did not bring him fame.

Many people, like Stallone's acting, remember him best for the roles of Rocky and Rambo.

SO AM I (aj ja), NEITHER / NOR AM I (ani ja)

+ kladná veta	+ aj ja	- záporná veta	- ani ja
I am hungry.	So am I.	I am not hungry.	Nor am I.
I am having lunch.		I am not having lunch.	Neither am I.
I was hungry.	So was I.	I was not hungry.	Nor was I.
I was having lunch.		I was not having lunch.	Neither was I.
I ate a lot.	So did I.	I did not eat a lot.	Nor did I.
			Neither did I.
I will eat a lot.	So will I.	I will not eat a lot.	Nor will I.
			Neither will I.
I can drive.	So can I.	I cannot drive.	Nor can I.
			Neither can I.
I could drive.	So could I.	I could not drive.	Nor could I.
			Neither could I.
I would like to drive.	So would I.	I wouldn't like to drive.	Nor would I.
			Neither would I.

Exercise 38: What is the difference in meaning between these two sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

1. A: I'm happy. B: **So** am I.
2. A: I'm not happy. B: **Nor** am I. / **Neither** am I.

Exercise 39: Complete the sentences with **SO** am / **can** / **do** / **did** I, etc. or **NEITHER** am / **can** / **do** / **did** I, etc.

Example: A: I am tired. B: So am I.

1. A: I hate football. B: I.
2. A: I have never been to Germany. B: I.
3. A: Susan got lost. B: I.
4. Peter can't come, and his girlfriend.
5. I haven't expected it, and my mother.
6. I wasn't ready to have a baby, and my husband.
7. My parents haven't got a car, and my father-in-law.
8. Tom studies hard and his sister.
9. A: Peter, you are late. B: you.
10. A: I am thirsty. B: I.

Exercise 40: Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Je mi ľúto. Aj mne.
2. Bolo mi ľúto. Aj mne.
3. Roger vie hrať bowling. Aj ja.
4. Roger vie hrať bowling. Aj jeho žena.
5. Nešli sme tam. Ani my.
6. Nemám rád čaj. Ani oni.
7. Rád by som šiel lyžovať. Aj my.
8. Stratil som pas. Aj moje deti (stratili pas).
9. Jedlo bolo hrozné. Aj víno.
10. Jedlo bude hrozné. Aj víno.

V. GRAMMAR TENSES (GRAMATICKÉ ČASY)

**PRESENT SIMPLE „I DO“ (Jednoduchý prítomný čas) or
PRESENT CONTINUOUS „I AM DOING“ (Pribehový prítomný čas)**

III PRESENT TENSE – PRÍTOMNÝ ČAS

I. THE PRESENT SIMPLE (I DO) – Jednoduchý prítomný čas – vyjadruje trvalý, pravidelne sa opakujúci dej v prítomnosti. Napr. *I play tennis every Friday.*

+ k osobe jednotného čísla sa pridáva -s: Napr. *He / she / it plays...*

Spája sa s výrazmi: every day, twice a month, on Fridays, at weekends, in the morning, at night, never, usually, occasionally, rarely, sometimes, often, always, etc.

Napr. + *I play tennis every Friday.*

• *I do not play tennis every day.*

? *Do you play tennis every day?*

II. THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS (I AM DOING) – Pribehový prítomný čas vyjadruje dej, ktorý prebieha práve v tejto chvíli (Napr. *I'm reading a good book.*) alebo v tomto období. Je dočasný. Napr. *I'm living in Vienna.* (Bývam vo Viedni, o mesiac sa sťahujem do Prahy.)

Spája sa s výrazmi: now, at the moment, today, this week, etc.

Napr. + *I am playing tennis now.*

• *I am not playing tennis now.*

? *Are you playing tennis now?*

používa sa aj na vyjadrenie blízkej budúcnosti: Napr. *I am seeing my boss today.* (Dnes mám stretnutie so šéfom.)

POZOR! Slovesá, ktoré sa väčšinou nepoužívajú v pribehovom čase:

believe, belong to, cost, depend on, dislike, feel, fit, forgive, guess, have, hate, hear, imagine, know, like, love, mean, own, possess, prefer, realise, remember, satisfy, see, seem, smell, sound, taste, think, understand, want, wish...

ktoré z nich majú oba tvary, ale rozdielne významy: Napr. *I think that's a great idea. I am thinking of you a lot.*

Exercise 41: Compare the meaning of the following pairs and translate them into Slovak.

• *I think you are right. / I'm thinking about the best solution.*

• *I see what you mean. / I'm seeing my boss at 4 p.m.*

• *I have many friends. / He is having lunch with his girlfriend.*

4. Your car **looks** great. / **You are looking** at my car, aren't you?
5. Ali **comes** from Dubai. / **He is coming** to see us tonight.
6. The food **smells** great. / Why **are you smelling** your food?

Exercise 42: Put the verbs into the present simple (I DO) or present continuous tense (I AM DOING).

Example: My children always wake me up before 6.30. (wake)

1. Look! Somebody (come). Is it your uncle?
2. I usually (walk) to work. But today I (go) by car because the weather is bad.
3. Listen, your phone (ring).
4. How many languages (you, speak)?
5. Hurry-up! The film (start).
6. Can you see Mary and Peter? What (they, talk) about?
7. It (rain) a lot in Brazil.
8. Oh, what terrible weather. Take an umbrella. It (rain) outside.
9. Tom never (answer) the phone.
10. I (prefer) Japanese cuisine to Chinese cuisine.
11. Bill (have) lunch at the moment.
12. She's tired. She (want) to go to bed.
13. (like) reading?
14. Excuse me, but you (stand) on my foot. "Oh, I am sorry."
15. They (not, watch) television very often.
16. What (watch)? May I join you?
17. I'm sorry, I (not, understand). Can you say it again?
18. Tell me everything about it. I (listen) to you.
19. What time she (finish) work every day?
20. Please, switch the lights on. It (get) dark.
21. What (do) for living?
22. I'm unemployed now, but I (look) for a job.
23. your husband ever (wash) the dishes?

4. Can you cook? No, but I (learn) it at the moment.
5. What (cook)? It smells really good.

Exercise 43: Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Tento týždeň čítam dobrú knihu.
2. Zvoní telefón.
3. Mám rada červené ruže.
4. Koláč dobre vonia.
5. Pozri, prší!
6. Máme angličtinu dvakrát do týždňa.

11 PAST SIMPLE „I DID“ (Jednoduchý minulý čas) or PAST CONTINUOUS „I WAS DOING“ (Pribehový minulý čas)

THE PAST TENSE – MINULÝ ČAS

1. THE PAST SIMPLE (I DID) – Jednoduchý minulý čas – vyjadruje skončený dej v minulosti.

Spája sa s výrazmi: yesterday, last month, then, in 2003, five years ago, when atď.

Tvorí sa takto:

pravidelné slovesá + -ed (napr. *I played...*)

nepravidelné slovesá 2. **stipec** (napr. *I wrote...*)

Napr. + *I played tennis yesterday.*

- *I did not play tennis yesterday.*

? *Did you play tennis yesterday?*

2. THE PAST CONTINUOUS (I WAS DOING) – Pribehový minulý čas vyjadruje, čo sa v danom čase v minulosti odohrávalo.

Spája sa s výrazmi: yesterday at 10 a.m., while, when, as atď.

Napr. + *I was playing tennis yesterday at 10 a.m.*

- *I was not playing tennis yesterday at 10 a.m.*

? *Were you playing tennis yesterday at 10 a.m.?*

vyjadruje dej, ktorý prebiehal naraz s iným krátkodobým minulým dejom (past simple):

Napr. *I was playing tennis when I broke my leg.*

vyjadruje dej, ktorý prebiehal naraz s iným dlhšie trvajúcim minulým dejom (past continuous):

Napr. *I was playing tennis while my brother was watching television.*

Exercise 44: Fill in the chart with the correct form of the verbs.

Example: write	wrote	written
1. begin		
2.	learnt	
3.		eaten
4.	taught	
5.		known
6. catch		
7. speak		
8.		drunk
9.	read	
10. get		
11.		put
12.	bought	
13.		brought
14.	did	
15.		slept
16. fly		
17.	drove	
18.		taken
19.	cut	
20. wake		

Exercise 45: Transform the verbs in brackets into the past tense.

Example: I stopped (stop) smoking last week.

- He (break) his leg skiing.
- Sue (go) to the dentist last week.
- He (eat) all the grapes we sent him.
- Keith (throw) up after eating oysters.
- I (feel) too ill to go to school.
- Sadly, he (die) after the operation.
- I (start) to learn English when I was five.
- My daughter (be) born in March 2004.
- She (miss) the bus, as usual.
- Nicole (stay) with her friends overnight.

Exercise 46: What is the difference in meaning between the following sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

- I washed my hair yesterday.
- I was washing my hair when you came home.
- I was washing my hair while my sister was reading a book.

Exercise 47: Put the verbs into the suitable form. Use the past simple (I DID) or past continuous (I WAS DOING).

Example: I was crossing (cross) the street when the accident happened (happen).

- Tommy (shop) when someone (pick) his pocket.
- The policemen (stop) me when I (drive) home from work.
- The prisoners (leave) the prison while the officers (sleep).
- While my mother (get) her money from the cash dispenser, somebody (attack) her and she (fall) on the floor.
- Once I (forget) to lock the door. Of course, the burglars (break into) the house and (steal) all my jewellery.
- The robber (point) his gun at me while the banker (count) the money.
- It (snow) and the wind (blow).
- She (have) a shower when somebody (knock) on the door.
- They (play) golf when it (start) raining.
- She (cry) when she (hear) the news.
- What you (do) this time yesterday? I (sleep).
- The radio (be) on, but no one (listen) to it.
- It (snow) when I (wake up).
- He (fall asleep) while he (read) a book.
- Karen (cut) her finger when she (chop) the onion.

PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE „I HAVE DONE“ (Jednoduchý predprítomný čas)

THE PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE (I HAVE DONE) – Jednoduchý predprítomný čas vyjadruje dej, ktorý sa nedávno udial, ale neurčuje presne keď.

Dôraz sa kladie na výsledok deja.

Tvorí sa takto:

- pravidelné slovesá: Napr. *I have played*...

- nepravidelné slovesá (3. stĺpec): Napr. *I have written*...

- 3. osoba jednotného čísla: *He / she / it has played*... *He / she / it has written*...

Spája sa s výrazmi: already, recently, never, ever, since, for, how long, so far, just yet (v záporných vetách), today, etc.

Napr. + *I have played tennis for an hour.* (Hral som, už nehram.) – deje ukončený

- *I have not played tennis yet.*

? *Have you ever played tennis?*

Exercise 48: Form sentences and describe the possible result of the action.

Example: They / break / window – *They have just broken the window.*

Result: *The window is broken and they are probably running away.*

1. my dad / fall off / ladder

Result:

2. he / cut / his hair himself

Result:

3. Mike / wash / his car

Result:

4. my mother / lose / her key

Result:

5. I / drink / three cups of coffee

Result:

Exercise 49: Use the present perfect simple (have, has + e.g. done) in the following sentences.

Example: Are they still having a meeting? No, they have finished it. (finish)

I a new dress. Do you want to see it? (buy)

Look! A burglar (break) into your house!

Your hair looks different. you (wash) it?

I can't find my puppy. It (run) away.

Your daughter (grow up). She is so tall.

PAST SIMPLE „I DID“ (Jednoduchý minulý čas) or PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE „I HAVE DONE“ (Jednoduchý predprítomný čas)

Exercise 50: Which expressions would you use with the present perfect simple and which ones with the past simple tense? The first one is done for you as an example.

	present perfect	past simple
When I was five		✓
10 years ago		
usually		
last year		
last		
never		
so far		
in 2004		
since 2004		
for 10 years		

Exercise 51: Fill in the gaps with the past simple (I DID) or present perfect tense (I HAVE DONE).

Example: I have never eaten (eat) lasagne.

1. Alison (come) to see me last night.

2. They (open, recently) a new clothes shop in the city.

3. Nobody (dance) at the party on Saturday.

4. When you (start) your new job?

5. I (not, read) this book yet.
6. you (phone, already) your parents?
7. you (sleep) well last night?
8. I (leave) my house early this morning.
9. We (never, be) to the USA before.
10. you (ever, play) scrabble?
11. My sister (be) born in 1996.
12. My mother (meet) my father when she was at university.
13. I (not, see) you for a long time.
14. Adam (go) to the hairdresser's last month.
15. His hair (grow) since I last saw him.
16. you (watch) the news last night?
17. My uncle (travel) around the world for two years. Finally, he is back home.
18. The British Queen (visit) Slovakia in 2008.
19. Mum, I'm sorry. But I (spill) your coffee.
20. Luckily, I (not, be) ill yet.
21. How (be) your holiday?
22. My grandmother (die) ten years ago.
23. I (never, hurt) you.
24. Last night, a terrible accident (happen) in the city centre.
25. Fortunately, I just (arrive).

PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE „I HAVE DONE“
(Jednoduchý predprítomný čas) or
PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS „I HAVE BEEN DOING“
(Pribehový predprítomný čas)

THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE – PREDPRÍTOMNÝ ČAS

1. **THE PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE (I HAVE DONE)** – Jednoduchý predprítomný čas vyjadruje dej, ktorý sa nedávno udial, ale neurčuje presne kedy. Dôraz sa kladie na výsledok deja. (Pre nepravidelné slovesá sa používa 3. stĺpec)
 Spája sa s výrazmi: already, recently, never, ever, since, for, how long, so far, just, yet (v záporných vetách), today atď.
 Napr. + *I have played tennis for an hour.* (Hral som, už nehram.) – dej je ukončený
 – I have not played tennis yet.
 ? Have you ever played tennis?
2. **THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS (I HAVE BEEN DOING)** – Pribehový predprítomný čas vyjadruje dej, ktorý začal v minulosti, stále prebieha a má tendenciu pokračovať i v budúcnosti. Dôraz sa kladie na priebeh a dočasnú dej.
 Spája sa s výrazmi: how long, since, for
 Napr. + *I am tired. I have been playing tennis for two hours.* (Ešte stále hrám.) – dej ešte prebieha
 – I have not been playing tennis for two hours.
 ? (How long) have you been playing tennis?

Exercise 52: What is the difference in meaning between the following sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

1. I **have written** my homework. You can check it if you want to.
2. I **have been writing** my homework for an hour. Please, don't interrupt me.

Exercise 53: Choose either the present perfect simple (I HAVE DONE) or present perfect continuous (I HAVE BEEN DOING).

Example: I HAVE COOKED / HAVE BEEN COOKING lunch since early morning and it is not ready yet.

1. I HAVE READ / HAVE BEEN READING this book three times.
2. My friends HAVE PLAYED / HAVE BEEN PLAYING golf for an hour. They are not tired yet, so it seems that they will continue playing.
3. The dog HAS BARKED / HAS BEEN BARKING all day. It's getting on my nerves.
4. We HAVE PAINTED / HAVE BEEN PAINTING our flat. It's finally finished.
5. Carl HAS WRITTEN / HAS BEEN WRITING ten text messages today.
6. I HAVE WAITED / HAVE BEEN WAITING for the bus for an hour and it hasn't arrived yet.

7. I HAVE WATCHED / HAVE BEEN WATCHING a new film for an hour. I still don't know how it will end.
8. Tom and his wife HAVE TRAVELLED / HAVE BEEN TRAVELLING across the USA for five months. Currently, they are somewhere in Iowa.
9. Mrs. Mistrik HAS CLEANED / HAS BEEN CLEANING all the windows in our company. The windows are clear and Mrs. Mistrik must be very tired now.
10. Soňa and Braňo HAVE INVITED / HAVE BEEN INVITING twenty guests to their wedding reception.

Exercise 54: Write questions with HOW LONG / WHAT / WHEN.

Example: My mum is cooking.

How long has she been cooking? She has been cooking since early morning.

What has she cooked? She has cooked tomato soup and some pasta.

When did she start cooking? She started cooking early in the morning.

1. My father is reading the paper.

How long it? He for an hour.

How many pages so far? He three pages.

When it? He it an hour ago.

2. It is snowing.

How long ? It since early morning.

How much snow (fall) so far? It (fall) 10 centimetres of snow.

When ? It in the morning.

3. Kate and Ann are learning American history.

How long it? They it for 2 hours.

How much so far? They everything.

When it? They it 2 hours ago.

FOR / SINCE (ako dlho – od začiatku deja)

Exercise 55: What is the difference in meaning between these two sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

1. I have been waiting for you **for** two hours.
2. I have been waiting for you **since** 2 o'clock.

Exercise 56: Fill in the gaps with FOR or SINCE.

Example: The office was closed for a week.

1. I haven't seen you ages.
2. She has been teaching 2006.
3. Mike has been repairing his car two weeks.
4. My parents haven't been on holiday ten years.
5. They have been married last Saturday.
6. It's been snowing two hours.
7. It's been snowing 2 o'clock.
8. They haven't phoned last Christmas.
9. Kate has been working for us she graduated.
10. We have known each other a long time.

PAST PERFECT SIMPLE „I HAD DONE“ (Jednoduchý predminulý čas)

THE PAST PERFECT SIMPLE (I HAD DONE) – Jednoduchý predminulý čas

= vyjadruje dej v minulosti, ktorý sa skončil pred iným minulým dejom. (Pre nepravidelné slovesá sa používa 3. stĺpec.)

Spája sa s výrazmi: already, since, for, after, just, never, yet, before, by, by the time atd.

Napr. + I had played tennis before you came.

- I had not played tennis before you came.

? Had you played tennis before I came?

Exercise 57: What is the difference in meaning between these two sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

1. I can't find my earring. I have lost it somewhere.
2. I couldn't find my earring. I had lost it somewhere.

Exercise 58: Which activity happened earlier? Underline that part of the sentence.

Example: When I got on the bus, I realised that I had forgotten to buy the ticket at the station.

1. My father watered the flowers after my mum had planted them.
2. By the time Peter arrived, the meeting had already started.

- When I saw you at the party, I realised that we had met before.
- Olivia was sad because her younger brother had eaten all her sweets.
- After we had finished watching television we went out for a walk.
- Yesterday, we ate the whole cake which we had bought two days ago.
- David was homesick because he had never been abroad before.
- I couldn't pay for the lunch because I had left my money at home.
- My parents had left before you phoned me.
- Mrs. Mistrik had cleaned all the flat before we came home from our holiday.

Exercise 59: Put in the simple past tense (I DID) or past perfect simple tense (I HAD DONE).

Example: Mr. Hook had phoned (phone) me before he came (come).

- Children (be / not) hungry because they (eat) some sweets before.
- When Kate (write) her homework, she (go) out to walk her dog.
- Karol and I (live) together for two years before we (get) married.
- The dog (run) away after his owner (die).
- When she (arrive) at the station, she realised that she (leave) her cell phone at home.

PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS, „I HAD BEEN DOING“ (Pribehový predminulý čas)

THE PAST PERFECT TENSE – PREDMINULÝ ČAS

- THE PAST PERFECT SIMPLE (I HAD DONE) – Jednoduchý predminulý čas** – vyjadruje dej v minulosti, ktorý sa skončil pred iným minulým dejom. (Pre nepravideľné slovesá sa používa 3. stĺpec.)

Spája sa s výrazmi: already, since, for, after, just, never, yet, before, by, by the time atd.

Napr. + *I had played tennis before you came.*
- *I had not played tennis before you came.*
? *Had you played tennis before I came?*

- THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS (I HAD BEEN DOING) – Pribehový predminulý čas** – vyjadruje dej, ktorý trval až po určitý moment v minulosti. Doba trvania je dočasná.

Spája sa s výrazmi: how long, since, for

Napr. + *I had been playing tennis for two hours when my brother came home.*
(Predtým, ako prišiel môj brat domov, som dve hodiny hral tenis.) – kontext v minulosti
- *I had not been playing tennis for two hours.*
? (How long) *had you been playing tennis?*

Exercise 60: What is the difference in meaning between these two sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

- You **are** late. I have been waiting for an hour.
- You **were** late. I had been waiting for an hour.

Exercise 61: Join the beginnings and ends together to form logical sentences.

BEGINNINGS	ENDS
1. After I had been learning English for two hours,	a. her father had been snoring all night.
2. Laura could hear that	b. for about an hour when it started to rain.
3. He fell asleep because	c. I decided to go for a walk.
4. We had been working in the garden	d. he had been repairing his car.
5. Mark's hands were dirty because	e. he had been working the night shift.

Exercise 62: Read the situations below and make the sentences following the example.

Example: The boys were very sleepy at school. (they / play / computer games / all night)
They had been playing computer games all night.

- My English friends came to Slovakia to visit us. (they / travel / all day / to get here)

- Mr. Green taught at our school five years ago. Then he changed his job.
(he / teach / at our school / for five years / he change his job)

- Cecile was tired when she came home. (she / work / hard / all day)

- Otto played hockey last weekend. He fell down and broke his leg.
(he / played hockey / when / he / fall down / and / break his leg).

5. The road was wet. (it / rain / yesterday)

□ FUTURE SIMPLE „I WILL / SHALL DO“ (Jednoduchý budúci čas)

THE FUTURE SIMPLE (I WILL / SHALL DO) Jednoduchý budúci čas vyjadruje dej, ktorý sa určite stane v budúcnosti.

Spája sa s výrazmi: tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, tonight, in two days, in a week, next month, soon atd.

V 1. osobe jednotného a množného čísla sa používa **SHALL** alebo **WILL**, v ostatných osobách len **WILL**. **SHALL** sa však používa v 1. osobe množ. čísla na vyjadrenie budúcnosti čoraz menej. Okrem otázky v 1. osobe, napr. *When shall I come? Shall I open the window? (Mám otvoriť okno?)*

Napr. + *I will / shall play tennis tomorrow.*

- *I will not (won't) / I shall not (shan't) play tennis tomorrow.*

? *Will you play tennis tomorrow?*

Pozn.: V 1. os. množ. čísla sa používa **SHALL** aj v zisťovacích otázkach (question tags), napr. *Let's go for a walk, shall we?*

Exercise 63: What is the difference in meaning between these two sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

1. Shall I help you with your homework?
2. Will you help me with my homework?

□ WILL / GOING TO

+	-	?
I am going to study.	I am NOT going to study.	Am I going to study?
You are going to study.	You are NOT going to study.	Are you going to study?
He is going to study.	He is NOT going to study.	Is he going to study?
She is going to study.	She is NOT going to study.	Is she going to study?
It is going to rain.	It is NOT going to rain.	Is it going to rain?
We are going to study.	We are NOT going to study.	Are we going to study?
You are going to study.	You are NOT going to study.	Are you going to study?
They are going to study.	They are NOT going to study.	Are they going to study?

GOING TO (chystať sa niečo spraviť) sa používa na vyjadrenie rozhodnutia, ktoré sme už urobili. Napr. *I'm going to see my sister.* (I have already decided.)

Pozn.: Rodení hovoriaci sa vyhybajú používaniu spojenia „going to go“. Napr. namiesto *"I'm going to go to the cinema."* povedia *"I'm going to the cinema."*

WILL vyjadruje náhle rozhodnutie. Napr. *I'm hungry. I will eat something.*

GOING TO vyjadruje predpoveď založenú na súčasnej situácii. Napr. *Look at the clouds. It's going to rain.*

WILL vyjadruje predpoveď založenú na našej vedomosti. Napr. *It will rain tomorrow.* (I watched the weather forecast yesterday.)

Exercise 64: What is the difference in meaning between the following sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

1. It's our grandmother's birthday today.
2. Oh, I have forgotten. I will phone her now.
3. It's our grandmother's birthday today.
4. I know, I am going to visit her in the afternoon.

Exercise 65: IS GOING TO or WILL correct in the following situations?

Example: A: Your hair is too long.

B: I know, I **AM GOING TO** / **I WILL** see my hairdresser.

1. A: I've decided to apply to study at university.
B: Oh, have you? What university **ARE YOU GOING TO** / **WILL YOU** apply to study at?
2. A: I think that I've just twisted my ankle.
B: O.K. Stay calm and I **AM GOING TO** / **I WILL** call the ambulance.
3. A: This flower pot is too small for the plant.
B: Yes, I know. I **AM GOING TO** / **I WILL** replant it in spring.
4. A: Oh, look at the clouds.
B: Oh, yes. **IT'S GOING TO** / **IT WILL** rain.
5. A: Your car isn't as safe as I thought.
B: I agree with you. **WE ARE GOING TO** / **WE WILL** sell it.
6. A: It's so cold in here.
B: Oh, really? **I'M GOING TO** / **I WILL** shut the window.
7. A: Let's visit the Bellers.
B: Fine. I **AM GOING TO** / **I WILL** phone them to find out if they are at home.
8. A: We have decided to visit our cousins. We **ARE GOING TO** / **WILL** visit them tomorrow.

9. It's Monday tomorrow. My first lesson starts at 7 a.m. I **AM GOING TO** / **I WILL** wake up before 6 a.m. to be there on time.

10. I need a babysitter tonight. My husband and I **ARE GOING TO** / **WILL** see our friends.

Exercise 66: The Smiths are going on holiday. What are the members of the family going to do there?

1. Nick: catch a fish
2. his wife: hire a car, do some sightseeing
3. their daughter: learn how to swim
4. their son: sleep on the beach all day
5. their grandmother: read her new book

GOING TO / I AM DOING (chystať sa niečo urobiť)

Na vyjadrenie budúcnosti sa používa aj prítomný čas príbehový (*I am doing*), ktorý vyjadruje záväznú dohodu. Často sa upresňuje miesto a čas dohodnutého diania. Napr. *I am meeting my friend on Friday at 6 p.m.*

Exercise 67: What is the difference in meaning between these two sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

1. I **am seeing** my boss in the afternoon. We have arranged it in advance.
2. I have decided to talk to my boss. I **am going to** see him in the afternoon.

FUTURE SIMPLE „I WILL DO“ (Jednoduchý budúci čas) or FUTURE CONTINUOUS „I WILL BE DOING“ (Príbehový budúci čas)

THE FUTURE SIMPLE (I WILL / SHALL DO) Jednoduchý budúci čas vyjadruje dej, ktorý sa určite stane v budúcnosti.

Spája sa s výrazmi: tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, tonight, in two days, in a week, next month, soon atd.

THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS (I WILL BE DOING) Príbehový budúci čas vyjadruje budúci dej, ktorý bude prebiehať v bližšie určenej budúcnosti.

Spája sa s výrazmi: tomorrow, tomorrow at 6 p.m., the day after tomorrow, tonight, in two days, in a week, next month, this time next month, soon atd.

Napr. + *I will be playing tennis tomorrow at 6 p.m.*

- *I will not be playing tennis tomorrow at 6 p.m.*

? *Will you be playing tennis tomorrow at 6 p.m.?*

Pozn. V 1. osobe jednotného čísla sa používa „shall“ aj „will“ (často je však „will“).

Exercise 68: What is the difference in meaning between the following sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

1. I know you can't speak English. Don't worry. I'll **teach** you some words.
2. Don't come between 3 and 4 p.m. I'll **be learning** English.

Exercise 69: Which form is correct? WILL DO or WILL BE DOING?

Example: This time next year **I WILL BE STUDYING** / **WILL STUDY** at Cambridge University.

1. I'm thirsty. I **WILL HAVE** / **WILL BE HAVING** a glass of water.
2. Don't come late. I **WILL NOT WAIT** / **WILL NOT BE WAITING** for you.
3. **WE WILL WATCH** / **WILL BE WATCHING** James Bond tomorrow between 7 and 9 p.m.
4. This time next year, Richard **WILL ATTEND** / **WILL BE ATTENDING** a secondary school.
5. A year from now, I **WILL DRIVE** / **WILL BE DRIVING** my own Jaguar.
6. **WE WILL BUILD** / **WILL BE BUILDING** our house all next year.
7. I hope that my brother **WILL GET MARRIED** / **WILL BE GETTING MARRIED** soon.
8. All students **WILL TAKE** / **WILL BE TAKING** the English exam from 9 – 11.
9. My parents **WILL TRAVEL** / **WILL BE TRAVELLING** to Croatia for holidays next summer.
10. Please, do not come tomorrow in the afternoon. I **WILL STUDY** / **WILL BE STUDYING** for my school-leaving exam.

REVISION OF TENSES (opakovanie časov)

Exercise 70: Write the following sentences into the chart. Use the appropriate grammar tenses. The first one is done for you as an example.

Example: a. I **played** tennis yesterday. (*1 – past simple*)

- b. I **had been playing** tennis for two hours before you came.
- c. I **have already played** tennis.
- d. I **will play** tennis next month.
- e. I **play** tennis every day.
- f. I **am playing** tennis at the moment.
- g. I **will have played** tennis by the evening.
- h. Next summer, I **will have been playing** tennis for 5 years.
- i. I **will be playing** tennis tomorrow at 3 p.m.
- j. I **have been playing** tennis for ten years.
- k. I **had played** tennis before you came.
- l. I **was playing** tennis yesterday at 3 p.m.

PAST TENSES (minulé časy)	PRESENT TENSES (prítomné časy)	FUTURE TENSES (budúce časy)
Past simple (minulý jednoduchý) 1. I played tennis yesterday. a	Present simple (prítomný jednoduchý) 2.	Future simple (budúci jednoduchý) 3.
Past continuous (minulý priebehový) 4.	Present continuous (prítomný priebehový) 5.	Future continuous (budúci priebehový) 6.
Past perfect simple (predminulý) 7.	Present perfect simple (predprítomný) 8.	Future perfect simple* (budúci dokonavý) 9. I will have played tennis by the evening.
Past perfect continuous (predminulý priebehový) 10.	Present perfect continuous (predprítomný priebehový) 11.	Future perfect continuous* (budúci dokonavý priebehový) 12. Next summer, I will have been playing tennis for 5 years.

* nie sú zahrnuté v požiadavkách pre maturitnú úroveň B1

NEGATIVES (vyjadrenie záporu)

Exercise 71: Form negative sentences.

Example: I like sleeping. I don't like sleeping.

- I'm married.
- They have already been to Japan.
- She can speak three languages.
- Uncle John had travelled around the world.
- She hates Chinese food.
- We are used to cold weather.
- My father used to smoke a lot.
- I have to see them.
- My friend and I were playing tennis.
- Bill's sister speaks French.
- I must work hard.

- You have to open the door.
- Sarah has got long hair.
- My parents would like to build a house.
- Students were well-prepared for their final exam.
- I will graduate from secondary school next year.
- The story I told you was true.
- She is going to the hairdresser's.
- Elizabeth can speak either English or German.
- There are some people over there.

QUESTION FORMATION (tvorenie otázok)

Who – kto, koho, komu, s kým – používa sa pri osobách.

Napr. *Who is that man?* (Kto je ten muž?)

Who are you waiting for? (Na koho čakáš?) / *Who do you work for?* (Pre koho pracuješ?)

Who did you give the book to? (Komu si dal tú knihu?)

Who do you work with? (S kým pracuješ?)

Whom – koho, komu – používa sa po predložkách, len pre osoby. V hovorovej reči sa však častejšie používa who namiesto whom. Napr. *From whom did you get that ring?* = *Who did you get that ring from?* (Od koho si dostala ten prsteň?) *For whom is this pullover?* = *Who is this pullover for?* (Pre koho je tento pulóver?) *To whom did you give the flowers?* = *Who did you give the flowers to?* (Komu si dala kvety?)

Whose – či – používa sa len pre osoby.

Napr. *Whose address do you want?* (Čiu adresu chceš?)

What – čo, aké – používa sa pre veci a zvieratá. Napr. *What is this?* (Čo je toto?) / *What cars do you like?* (Aké autá sa ti páčia?)

Which (of) – ktorý (z) – pri výbere z určitého počtu osôb i vecí. Napr. *Which of these colours do you like best?* (Ktorá z týchto farieb sa ti najviac páči?)

Where – kde, odkiaľ – Napr. *Where do you live?* (Kde žiješ? / bývaš?) *Where are you from?* (Odkiaľ pochádzaš?)

Why – prečo – Napr. *Why are you late?* (Prečo meškáš?) *Why did you stay at home?* (Prečo si zostal doma?)

How – ako – Napr. *How are you? (Ako sa máš?) How do you spell it?*
(Ako sa to hláskuje?)

How often – ako často – Napr. *How often do you watch TV?*
(Ako často pozeráš televízor?)

How long – ako dlho – Napr. *How long have you been learning English?*
(Ako dlho sa učíš po anglicky?)

How many – koľko (pri počítateľných pod. menách) – Napr. *How many students are there in your class? (Koľko študentov je v triede?)*

How much – koľko (pri nepočítateľných pod. menách) – Napr. *How much is it? (Koľko to stojí?)*

OTÁZKY VYTVORENÉ PREHODENÍM SLOVOSLEDU

Minulý príbehový	Prítomný príbehový	Budúci príbehový
He was sleeping. (yesterday at 5 p.m.)	He is sleeping. (now)	He will be sleeping. (tomorrow at 5 p.m.)
Was he working in the garden? <i>Where / why</i> was he working in the garden? <i>Who / what</i> was he working in the garden <u>with</u> ? (s kým, s čím)	Is he working in the garden? <i>Where / why</i> is he working in the garden? <i>Who / what</i> is he working in the garden <u>with</u> ? (s kým, s čím)	Will he be working in the garden? <i>Where / why</i> will he be working in the garden? <i>Who / what</i> will he be working in the garden <u>with</u> ? (s kým, s čím)
Predminulý	Predprítomný	Budúci dokonavý *
You had (already) written it.	You have (already) written it.	I will have written it. (by Monday)
Had you (already) written it? <i>Who</i> had written it? <i>What</i> had you written? <i>Where / Why / How / To whom</i> had you written it? <i>Who</i> had you written it <u>to</u> ? (komu) <i>What</i> had you written it <u>for</u> ? (na čo) <i>Who</i> had you written it <u>with</u> ? (s kým) <i>What</i> had you written it <u>with</u> ? (s čím)	Have you (already) written it? <i>Who</i> has written it? <i>What</i> have you written? <i>Where / Why / How / To whom</i> have you written it? <i>Who</i> have you written it <u>to</u> ? (komu) <i>What</i> have you written it <u>for</u> ? (na čo) <i>Who</i> have you written it <u>with</u> ? (s kým) <i>What</i> have you written it <u>with</u> ? (s čím)	Will you have written it (by Monday)? <i>Who</i> will have written it? <i>What</i> will you have written? <i>Where / Why / How / To whom</i> will you have written it? <i>Who</i> will you have written it <u>to</u> ? (komu) <i>What</i> will you have written it <u>for</u> ? (na čo) <i>Who</i> will you have written it <u>with</u> ? (s kým) <i>What</i> will you have written it <u>with</u> ? (s čím)

Predminulý príbehový	Predprítomný príbehový	Budúci dokonavý príbehový *
(Yesterday) You had been writing it (for two hours).	You have been writing it (for two hours).	(Tomorrow) You will have been writing it (for two days).
Had you been writing it? <i>Who</i> had been writing it? <i>What</i> had you been writing? <i>How long</i> had you been writing it?	Have you been writing it? <i>Who</i> has been writing it? <i>What</i> have you been writing? <i>How long</i> have you been writing it?	Will you have been writing it? <i>Who</i> will have been writing it? <i>What</i> will you have been writing? <i>How long</i> will you have been writing it?

* Nie sú zahrnuté v požiadavkách pre maturitnú úroveň B1

OTÁZKY POMOCOU DO / DID

	Prítomný jednoduchý	Minulý jednoduchý
Dinamická veta	You work (every day).	You worked (yesterday).
Opytacie vety tvoria pomocou DO / DID okrem podmetových otázok	Do you work (every day)? <i>Where / how often / why</i> do you work? <i>Who</i> do you work <u>with</u> ? (s kým) <i>Who</i> do you work <u>for</u> ? (pre koho) <i>What</i> do you work <u>with</u> ? (s čím) <i>What</i> do you work <u>for</u> ? (na čo)	Did you work (yesterday)? <i>Where / how often / why</i> did you work? <i>Who</i> did you work <u>with</u> ? (s kým) <i>Who</i> did you work <u>for</u> ? (pre koho) <i>What</i> did you work <u>with</u> ? (s čím) <i>What</i> did you work <u>for</u> ? (na čo)
	POZOR! (podmetová otázka) <i>Who</i> works here? (kto? – bez „DO“)	POZOR! (podmetová otázka) <i>Who</i> worked here? (kto? – bez „DID“)

Exercise 72: What is the difference in meaning between the following questions? Translate them into Slovak.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. How is he? | 4. What is he like? |
| 2. Who is he? | 5. What does he look like? |
| 3. What does he do? | 6. What does he like? |

Exercise 73: Write questions to these answers using the word in the brackets.

Example: I live in New York. (where) Where do you live?

- I am fine, thanks. (how)
We come from Slovakia. (where)
I study Japanese. (what)
Ben works in Sydney. (where)

5. They are playing tennis. (what)
6. She is tall and she has got short, black hair. (what)
7. Marco's brother is a very handsome, smart and intelligent man. (what)
8. Her birthday is in summer. (when)
9. They often travel to Poland. (where)
10. They travel there to do the shopping. (why)
11. Your son can play this game. (who)
12. I will wait here. (where)
13. Your friend told me the truth. (who)
14. Mike told me the truth. (what)
15. She will spend Christmas with me. (who, with)
16. I have worked for Mr. Brown for ten years. (how long)
17. I stopped working for Mr. Brown last year. (who, for)
18. I have been working with Mr. Brown for ten years. (who, with)
19. She said no. (what)
20. Something strange has happened here. (what)
21. I usually go to a supermarket to do the shopping. (where)
22. It's cold and rainy. (what, like)
23. My new classmate is very shy. (what, like)
24. He stayed at home because he felt sick. (why)
25. She used to play the guitar. (what)
26. My new mobile phone cost a lot of money. (how much)
27. I am used to driving on the left side of the road. (which side of the road)
28. There were fifteen people there. (how many)
29. She said that. (why)
30. We have never been to Paris. (you, ever)

Exercise 74: Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Pre koho pracujú?
2. Kto ňu videl?
3. Čo ňu videl?

4. Čo si mu povedal?
5. Čo si o tom myslíš?

INDIRECT QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS (nepriame otázky a odpovede)

INDIRECT QUESTIONS/ANSWERS

Priama otázka:

Whose car is it?

V nepriamych otázkach sa zachováva slovosled oznamovacej vety:

Do you know whose car it is?

I don't know whose car it is.

Can you tell me whose car it is?

I can't remember whose car it is.

Could you tell me whose car it is?

I have no idea whose car it is.

Exercise 75: What is the difference in meaning between these two sentences?

1. Whose car is it?
2. Do you know whose car it is?

Exercise 76: There are some mistakes in the following sentences. Find them and correct them.

Example: Do you know how old is Karen?

Do you know how old Karen is?

1. Do you know where is the Main Street?
.....
2. Could you tell me how long will the journey take?
.....
3. I can't remember where should we turn.
.....
4. I have no idea whose bag is it.
.....
5. Could you tell me what was she wearing?
.....
6. I don't know when is your birthday.
.....
7. Do you know if will Jack be at home?
.....

8. I'm not sure how much cost our new DVD player.

9. I don't know what time is it.

10. She couldn't remember how old was she.

Exercise 77: Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Mohli by ste mi povedať, koľko je hodín?
2. Viete, kto je ten pán?
3. Nie som si istá, kde som zaparkovala auto.
4. Môžete mi povedať, kde je banka?

QUESTION TAGS (krátke zisťovacie otázky na konci vety)

Positive + Negative question tag	Negative + Positive question tag
I AM late, AREN'T I?	I AM NOT late, AM I?
They LOOK old, DON'T they?	They DON'T look old, DO they?
I WAS there, WASN'T I?	I WAS NOT there, WAS I?
He LOVED her, DIDN'T he?	He DIDN'T love her, DID he?
You HAVE BEEN to Rome, HAVEN'T you?	You HAVEN'T BEEN to Rome, HAVE you?
You HAD BEEN to Rome before 2000, HADN'T you?	You HADN'T BEEN to Rome before 2000, HAD you?
It WILL rain, WON'T it?	It WON'T rain, WILL it?
Dogs CAN swim, CAN'T they?	Dogs CANNOT swim, CAN they?
Cathy HAS got long hair, HASN'T she?	She HASN'T got long hair, HAS she?

Exercise 78: Write the question tags to these sentences.

Example: You have just arrived, haven't you?

1. It is raining, ?
2. You aren't from Berlin, ?
3. She can speak English, ?
4. I am late, ?
5. He was married, ?
6. They invited us for dinner, ?
7. The sun was shining, ?

8. You are a vegetarian, ?
9. She has already been here, ?
10. This isn't your coat, ?
11. You are good at question tags, ?
12. You won't make the same mistake, ?

Exercise 79: Use a question tag from the box to complete each of the sentences.

wasn't he? didn't she? didn't they? isn't it?
shall we? are you? can't you? aren't I? is it?
isn't it? shouldn't I? will they?

Example: Snow-boarding is becoming popular in Slovakia, isn't it?
 You're never too old to start a new hobby, are you?

1. You can play basketball, ?
2. She kept a dog as a pet, ?
3. They won't win the cup this year, ?
4. Hang-gliding is exciting, ?
5. Let's go shopping, ?
6. I'm too lazy to do any sports, ?
7. They went to the cinema, ?
8. He was a famous goalkeeper a few years ago, ?
9. This isn't your bike, ?
10. I should do some more exercise, ?

HAVE SOMETHING DONE (dať si niečo urobiť)

Present simple	He repairs his car.	He has his car repaired.
Present Continuous	He is repairing his car.	He is having his car repaired.
Present Perfect	He has repaired his car.	He has had his car repaired.
Present Perfect Continuous	He has been repairing his car.	He has been having his car repaired.
Past Simple	He repaired his car.	He had his car repaired.
Past Continuous	He was repairing his car.	He was having his car repaired.

Past Perfect	He had repaired his car.	He had had his car repaired .
Past Perfect Continuous	He had been repairing his car.	He had been having his car repaired .
Future Simple	He will repair his car.	He will have his car repaired .
Future Continuous	He will be repairing his car.	He will be having his car repaired .

Exercise 80: What is the difference in meaning between the following sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

1. My brother is repairing his car. My brother is having his car repaired.
2. Nathalie is cutting her hair. Nathalie is having her hair cut.
3. My parents are building their new house. My parents are having their new house built.

Exercise 81: Rewrite the following sentences according to the example below. Use the structure "have something done" in an appropriate tense.

Example: Petra's hair is shorter. Petra has had her hair cut.

1. We live in an old house. We our new house
2. Our neighbour has clean windows. Our neighbour the windows
3. Jakub had a terrible toothache yesterday. Jakub his tooth
4. I will travel to France by air. I the flight ticket
5. My mother had an eye test yesterday. She her eyes

TO DO / DOING (infinitív s TO / gerundium -ING)

Infinitív s TO sa používa ak:

- vyjadrujeme účel. Napr. *I will come to help you.*
- po niektorých slovesách: **advise (poradiť), agree, choose, decide, expect (očakávať), forget, help, hope, learn, need, offer (ponúknuť), promise (sľúbiť), refuse (odmietnuť), seem (zdať sa), want, would like, would love, would prefer.**

Napr. *I decided to go home. I would prefer to drive.*

- po niektorých prídavných menách: **glad, happy, sad** atď. Napr. *I am happy to be here.*

• po výrazoch **too / enough**. Napr. *He is too old to get married.*

Gerundium -ING sa používa takto:

- v tvare podstatného mena. Napr. *Reading books is not popular anymore.*

po niektorých slovesách: **avoid, consider, don't mind, enjoy, finish, forgive, hate, imagine, like, love, look forward to, miss, practise, prefer, prevent, stand, understand.**

Napr. *I enjoy learning English.*

po výrazoch: **don't mind, can't stand, be / get used to, it's (not) worth**. Napr. *I don't mind working hard.*

po „go“. Napr. *I go swimming twice a week.*

Exercise 82: What is the difference in meaning between the following sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

1. I stopped smoking last year.
2. I stopped to smoke.
3. I remember switching off the lights.
4. I remembered to switch off the lights.

Exercise 83: Underline the appropriate grammar structure.

Example: I promised TO BE / BEING at home at 11 o'clock.

1. Ann asked John TO LEAVE / LEAVING the party.
2. I would like TO TASTE / TASTING it.
3. Mike decided TO STUDY / STUDYING at university.
4. We don't mind TO WAIT / WAITING.
5. I hate TO SLEEP / SLEEPING in hotels.

Exercise 84: Put the verbs in brackets into the appropriate form (TO DO or... -ING)

Nick: Hi Jane, it's me, Nick. Did you manage to speak (speak) to Tony?

Jane: Yes, he wasn't trying ¹ (avoid) me, after all. He was just busy. We've arranged ² (meet) tomorrow for dinner.

Nick: I thought you wanted ³ (go) to the concert tomorrow.

Jane: I decided to meet Tony instead. I enjoy ⁴ (be) with him.

Nick: Well, would you mind ⁵ (give) me your concert ticket, then?

Jane: I would, but I've already agreed ⁶ (give) it to Mary.

Nick: Oh, that's okay because I wanted ⁷ (invite) Mary!

Jane: Well, have a great time. I'll have to go now because my mother keeps ⁸ (interrupt) me, she wants to use the phone.

Nick: All right. Bye! And let me know how things go with Tony.

TO DO / DO (Infinitív s TO / infinitív bez TO)

Infinitív s TO sa používa ak:

- vyjadrujeme účel. Napr. *I will come to help you.*
- po niektorých slovesách: **advise, agree, choose, decide, expect, forget, hope, learn, need, offer, promise, refuse, seem, want, would like, would love, would prefer.** Napr. *I decided to go home. I would prefer to drive.*
- po niektorých prídavných menách: **glad, happy, sad** atď.
Napr. *I am happy to be here.*
- po výrazoch **too / enough.** Napr. *He is too old to get married.*

Infinitív bez TO sa používa po:

- **can, may, must, will** a ostatných modálnych slovesách. Napr. *I can help you.*
- **I'd rather / I'd better** (radšej). Napr. *I'd rather stay home.*
- **help.** Napr. *She helped me become a better person.*
- **make.** Napr. *Our teacher made us study hard.*
- **let.** Napr. *Our teacher let us express our opinions.*

Exercise 85: Underline the correct grammar form.

Example: I'd love COME / TO COME.

- Susan has called me INVITE / TO INVITE us for her birthday party.
- My parents decided SPEND / TO SPEND a week in the Alps.
- I managed CATCH / TO CATCH the bus.
- Let me EXPLAIN / TO EXPLAIN this situation.
- I'd rather WRITE / TO WRITE it down.
- He would like TALK / TO TALK to the manager.
- She isn't experienced enough TEACH / TO TEACH at university.
- What do you want TO DO / DO in the evening?
- I hope PASS / TO PASS the English exam.
- Mary was happy SEE / TO SEE us there.

I USED TO DO (kedysi som robieval...) I AM USED TO + -ING (som zvyknutý na...)

I used to do...	I am used to it. I am used to doing it.
(Kedysi som robil...)	(Som zvyknutý na...)
+ I used to run faster when I was young. (Ked som bol malý, behal som rýchlejšie.)	+ I am used to cold weather. (Som zvyknutý na chladné počasie.) + I am used to working hard. (Som zvyknutý ťažko pracovať.)
- I didn't use to run faster when I was young.	- I am not used to cold weather. - I am not used to working hard.
? Did you use to run fast when you were young?	? Are you used to cold weather? ? Are you used to working hard?

Exercise 86: Match the two columns to create sentences.

1. When I was young,	a. travel abroad every year.
2. I am not used to	b. eating spicy food.
3. My parents used to	c. at Christmas?
4. Tourists in Thailand are not used to	d. I used to dance a lot.
5. What did you use to eat	e. American English.
6. Is he used to	f. driving on the left side of the road?

VI. MODAL VERBS (MODÁLNE SLOVESÁ)

	PRESENT (prítomnosť)	PAST (minulosť)	FUTURE (budúcnosť)
CAN	<i>can – to be able to</i>	<i>I was able to do it.</i> Mohol / -la som to urobiť.	<i>I'll be able to do it.</i> Budem to môcť urobiť.
MAY	<i>may – to be allowed to</i>	<i>I was allowed to see him.</i> Smel / -a som ho navštíviť.	<i>I'll be allowed to see him.</i> Budem ho smieť navštíviť.
MUST	<i>must – to have to</i>	<i>I had to talk about it.</i> Musel / -a som o tom hovoriť.	<i>I'll have to talk about it.</i> Budem o tom musieť hovoriť.

PRESENT FORMS OF MODAL VERBS (tvary modálnych slovík v prítomnosti)

MAY It <u>may</u> be true. (asi)	CAN / TO BE ABLE TO I <u>can</u> swim. (viem, dokážem) I <u>can</u> hear something. (počujem)	WILL I <u>will</u> call him. (zavolám mu – náhle rozhodnutie)	SHALL I / we <u>shall</u> come. (prídem / -e) budúci čas obyčajný – pre 1. os. j.č. a 1. os. mn.č.)
MIGHT It <u>might</u> be true. (snáď)	COULD I <u>could</u> come and help you if you want. (mohol by som)	WOULD I <u>would</u> like to help you. (rád by som)	SHOULD You <u>should</u> go to bed now. (mal by si)
MUST I like Italian. I <u>must</u> learn it. (musím, lebo chcem).	HAVE TO I <u>have to</u> go to hospital. (musím, ale nechcem)	NEED Your car <u>needs</u> washing. (je potrebné)	OUGHT TO You <u>ought to</u> protect nature. (mal by si to rešpektovať, je to povinnosť)

Exercise 87: What is the difference in meaning between the following sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

- I **must** clean all the windows in our flat.
- I **have to** clean all the windows in our flat.
- You **mustn't** clean the windows in your flat.
- You **needn't** clean the windows in your flat.

Exercise 88: Fill in the chart with the correct form.

Modal verbs – POSITIVE	Modal verbs – NEGATIVE
CAN	Example: CANNOT / CAN'T
1. COULD	
2. MIGHT	
3. WILL	
4. WOULD	
5. SHOULD	
6. MUST	

Exercise 89: Pete, a 4th year student at grammar school, is being given some advice by his school advisor about applying to study at university. Read the advice and underline the appropriate modal verb.

If you want to go to university, you ¹ SHOULDN'T / SHOULD study hard. If you ² CAN / SHOULD speak some foreign languages very well, you ³ HAVE TO / CAN study a language with another subject. It ⁴ MIGHT / MUST be useful in your future career. Whatever you choose to study, you ⁵ MUST / MIGHT submit your application form with your school reports by the end of February. It's very important to do that. You ⁶ SHOULDN'T / DON'T HAVE TO send it later. After the deadline, they ⁷ DON'T HAVE TO / MUST register you. If you ⁸ MIGHT / MANAGE TO send your application on time, you ⁹ WON'T / WILL be invited to take the entrance exam. Before you go to the entrance exam, you ¹⁰ SHOULD / COULD NOT practise some sample tests. They are normally available at universities. In some subjects, you ¹¹ MUST / SHOULD NOT memorise many numbers, facts or definitions which ¹² MAY / NEED TO seem useless to you. The day you go in for the entrance exam, you ¹³ MIGHT BE / OUGHT TO BE quite stressed. Try to stay calm and you ¹⁴ SHOULD / COULD be able to pass the test.

LANGUAGE FUNCTIONS (jazykové funkcie)

LANGUAGE FUNCTIONS (jazykové funkcie)	EXAMPLES (príklady)
SUGGESTION (návrh)	Let's go to the pub. How about / what about going to the pub? Why don't we go to the pub? We can go out.
NECESSITY (nevyhnutnosť)	I must learn English because I want to be good at it. You have to wear a uniform at work. I've got to study hard. My car needs washing / to be washed. It's necessary to finish it today.
REQUEST (žiadanie)	Can you pass me the salt, please? (neformálne) May I close the door? (formálne) Could you tell me the way to the gallery, please? (zdvorilé) Would you come in five minutes? (zdvorilejšie) Would you mind coming in five minutes? (najzdvorilejšie)
POSSIBILITY (možnosť)	It's possible that... Tom could / may / might come to the party. (prítomnosť)
ABILITY (schopnosť)	You can swim very well. I am able to do this job. (prítomnosť)
PERMISSION (povolenie)	Can I speak to you? (neformálne) Could I speak to you? (zdvorilé) May I leave a message? (formálne) Might I leave a message? (formálnejšie)
PROHIBITION (zákaz)	You can't smoke here. You mustn't smoke here. You are not allowed to smoke here. (Tu nemôžete fajčiť.) It's prohibited to smoke here. (Tu je fajčiť zakázané.) It's forbidden to smoke here. (Tu je fajčiť zakázané.)
ADVICE (rada)	You should eat less. People ought to protect nature. You'd better / You'd rather stay at home. (Radšej zostať doma.)
OFFER (ponuka)	I will help you. Shall I help you?
APPOLOGY (ospravedlnenie)	I'm sorry, I can't finish it. I'm afraid, I'm not able to finish it.

Exercise 90: Which language functions do the following sentences refer to?

Example: It's necessary to wash your car. necessity

1. Soňa can speak five languages.
2. He might come later.
3. May I use your bathroom?
4. Could you pick me up at 4 p.m?
5. I will do it for you.
6. Shall we come?
7. You should be on diet.
8. I'm sorry, I cannot come to see you tomorrow.
9. I'd like to order some drinks.
10. You are not allowed to smoke in this room.

VII. PREPOSITIONS (PREDLOŽKY)

PREPOSITIONS OF TIME (predložky času)

AT	at 2 p.m., at night, at midnight, at the moment, at present, at Christmas, at Easter, at lunch, at the weekend / at weekends
IN	in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening, in summer, in June, in 2002, in two days (o dva dni), in the 21 st century, in the past, in the future
ON	on Friday, on Christmas Day, on Easter Monday, on July 4 th , on my birthday

Exercise 91: Fill in the gaps with AT / IN / ON.

- I usually wake up 6 o'clock.
- I stay longer in bed weekends.
- America was discovered 1492.
- Come on! The lecture starts five minutes.
- Will you come Tuesday?
- I am at home the moment.
- My friends gave me a lot of presents my birthday.
- What are you going to do the future?
- It will snow Christmas.
- We had fish and potato salad for dinner Christmas Day.

PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE / MOVEMENT (predložky miesta / pohybu)

AT	at home, at school, at university, at work, at the bus stop, at the station, at a hotel, at the bottom of, at the table, at the door, at the end of the street, at the Browns, at Peter's house, at the doctor's, at the party, at the meeting, at a concert
IN	in the house, in the garden, in the picture, in the river, in the sea, in Slovakia, in the south, in Bratislava, in a street, in a line, in a queue, in hospital, in the world, in the sky, in a book, in a paper, in a mirror, in the middle of, in the centre of, in the park
ON	on the right, on the left, on the first floor, on a map, on holiday, on the River Thames, on a farm, on the street, on a beach, on the coast, on an island
BY	by bus, by car, by taxi, by train, by plane, by coach, by boat, by air, by sea

Exercise 92: What is the difference in meaning between the following sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

- The woman **in** the picture is beautiful.
- There's a fly **on** the picture.

Exercise 93: Put in the correct preposition AT / IN / ON / BY.

Example: I'm at home.

- The boys play football the street.
- I can't find you this photograph.
- Mr. Bukowski is not available. He is holiday.
- My new flat is the centre.
- There's a party the Browns.
- I hate travelling bus.
- I used to teach university a few years ago.
- The fly is sitting the picture.
- How many people were there the concert?
- Let's meet the park.

Exercise 94: Fill in the gaps in the letter with AT, FOR, IN, OF, ON or TO.

Dear Nora,

I read your advert in the newspaper last week and I would like to meet you. It was coincidence that I noticed your advert ¹..... the Lonely Hearts column because I do not normally read it. I'm in the last year ²..... my studies ³..... the secondary school and I haven't really had any serious relationships yet.

Would you mind going ⁴..... lunch? If so, then I can meet you ⁵..... the park. I will be there on Saturday from 12 noon ⁶..... 1 p.m. I'll be sitting ⁷..... the bench opposite the clock tower (the one under the oak tree). I will be wearing a green T-shirt and blue jeans, and I'll have a newspaper ⁸..... my hand.

I hope that you'll be able to join me on Saturday. If you can't come but would still like to meet me, then please reply ⁹..... this letter. My address is ¹⁰..... the envelope.

Yours,

Alex

PAIRS OF PREPOSITIONS:

between – among (medzi) / over – above (nad) / under – below (pod)

BETWEEN (medzi dvoma)

Napr. *I am sitting **between** Paul and Maria.*

AMONG (medzi viacerými ako dvoma)

Napr. *I am standing **among** the crowd of children.*

OVER (nad, priamo nad)

Napr. *Butterflies were flying **over** our heads.*

ABOVE (nad, vyššie ako)

Napr. *The sky is **above** us.*

UNDER (pod, opak „over“)

Napr. *Our dog usually sleeps **under** the bed.*

BELOW (pod, opak „above“)

Napr. *It's freezing. It's **below** zero.*

Exercise 95: Fill in the gaps with prepositions between / among / over / under / below.

Example: We were looking at the town below us from the plane.

- Mary was hidden the people.
- Don't tell anybody about it. It's you and me.
- Can you see the mountain the town?
- The ball hit me just my eye.
- Keep the blanket you.
- We do not sell alcohol and cigarettes to the young 18.
- I am a secretary and I work Mr. Pierce, who is the owner of the company.
- The lake is somewhere the trees in the forest.
- Slovakia lies the Czech Republic, Hungary, Poland and Austria.
- The exercises in this book are the grammar charts.

VIII. FIXED EXPRESSIONS (USTÁLENÉ SPOJENIA)

MAKE / DO (robiť)

MAKE:

an agreement (uzavrieť dohodu), an appointment (dohodnúť sa na stretnutí), the bed(s) (ustlať), a cake (upiecť koláč), a complaint (sťažovať sa), a copy (odfotiť, skopírovať), a decision (rozhodnúť sa), fun of someone (robiť si z niekoho sranda), a mess (rozhadzať niečo), a mistake (urobiť chybu), money (zarobiť), an offer (ponúknuť niečo), an omelette (urobiť omeletu), a phone call (zatelefonovať si), plans (napláňovať), a profit (mať zisk), progress (pokročiť), a speech (mať reč), a suggestion (navrhnuť)

DO:

business (obchodovať), the cooking (variť), a good job (odviesť dobrú prácu), homework (robiť si domácu úlohu), housework (robiť domáce práce), the shopping (nakupovať), someone a favour (urobiť niekomu laskavosť), something about it (niečo s tým urobiť), the washing up (umýť riad)

Exercise 96: Fill in the gaps with “make“ or “do“ in the correct form.

Example: My grandmother can make a delicious cake.

- Can I a suggestion?
- May I a phone call?
- All my classmates fun of me all the time!
- Who will the washing up?
- Can you me a favour?
- Have you your homework?
- We never the shopping on Saturdays.
- You have to an appointment to see your doctor.
- It is all right when you mistakes.
- Let's serious business together.

HAVE / HAVE GOT (mať, vlastniť)

HAVE – mať, vlastniť. Používa sa často v týchto ustálených výrazoch:

have breakfast / lunch / dinner / a cup of tea / a cigarette
have a shower / a bath / a rest / some sleep / a good time
have a baby
have a good flight / an accident / an experience
have trouble / difficulty / fun
have a talk / a word / a conversation / a chat
have a look / a try
have a party / a holiday

POZOR! Otázka sa tvorí pomocou **DO / DID**: Napr. *How often DO you have a bath?* Ako často sa kúpeš? *DID you have a bath yesterday?* Kúpali si sa včera?

HAVE GOT – mať vlastniť. Používa sa častejšie ako samotné „have“ vo význame

- vlastníctva: Napr. *I have got a new car.* Mám nové auto.
- pri opise: Napr. *She has got long hair.* Má dlhé vlasy.
- pri príbuzenských vzťahoch: Napr. *I have got a brother and two sisters.* Mám brata a dve sestry.

POZOR! Otázka sa tvorí prehodením slovosledu: Napr. *Have you got a new car?* Máš nové auto?

Exercise 97: What is the difference in meaning between the following sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

1. I usually **have** five cigarettes a day.
2. I've **got** five cigarettes in my pocket.

Exercise 98: Fill in the gaps with **HAVE** or **HAVE GOT**.

Example: Let's have a cup of tea.

1. Soňa is going to a baby in the middle of May.
2. I two children, a son and a daughter.
3. My son blue eyes.
4. Gavin a new car.
5. Let's a look at his new car.
6. He has wasted so much money. I need to a word with him.
7. I didn't so many toys when I was a small child.
8. We usually lunch at home.

9. a good time in Croatia.

10. a cigarette?

GET / BECOME / GO / TURN / GROW / FALL / COME expressions (výrazy s **GET / BECOME / GO / TURN / GROW / FALL / COME**)

GET sa často spája s prídavnými menami a vyjadruje zmenu stavu:

get older – zostarnúť
get smaller – zmenšiť sa
get better – zlepšiť sa
get worse – zhoršiť sa
get married – vydať sa / oženiť sa
get divorced – rozviesť sa
get lost – stratiť sa
get dressed – obliecť sa
get undressed – vyzliecť sa
get crazy – zbláznit sa
get late – je neskoro (čas pokročil)
get warm – zohriať sa
get cold – ochladiť sa
get dark – stmievať sa
get drunk – opit sa
get well – uzdraviť sa

BECOME / COME / TURN / FALL vyjadrujú zmenu stavu:

become pregnant – otehotnieť
become lazy – zlenivieť
become dirty – zašpiniť sa
become grey – ošedivieť
become popular – stať sa populárnym
become strong – zosilnieť
become worse – zhoršiť sa
become young – omladnúť
come true – splniť sa (sen)
fall in love – zaľúbiť sa
fall asleep – zaspať
fall ill – ochoreť
turn yellow – zožltnúť
turn sour – zkyslieť

GO vyjadruje zmenu stavu:*go crazy* – zbláznit sa*go mad* – zbláznit sa*go sour* – skysnúť**GROW** vyjadruje zmenu stavu:*grow dark* – stmievať sa*grow old* – zostarnúť**Exercise 99: Complete the sentences using the expressions with GET / GO / GROW / BECOME / COME / TURN or FALL in the correct form.***Example:* My dreams came true when I won the lottery.

1. Your English has improved a lot. It has (better).
2. Maria (pregnant) after five years of trying. She will have a baby in October.
3. I'm freezing. I'd rather (dressed).
4. I don't know where to go. I think we (lost).
5. Please, stop shouting! I will (crazy).
6. Jane and Paul (married) after five years of living together.
7. You are freezing. Have a cup of hot tea to (warm).
8. Tree leaves (yellow) in autumn.
9. My colleague always (red) when he gives a presentation.
10. I can't stand my husband anymore. I want to (divorced).
11. Let's go home. It's almost 10 p.m. It's (dark).
12. I always (lazy) after summer holidays.
13. Your children are grown up. Well, we are all (old).
14. Our children (asleep) in the plane as soon as we took off.
15. I've got a sore throat. I don't want to (ill) again.

FIXED EXPRESSIONS: PREPOSITION + NOUN

(ustálené spojenia: predložka + podstatné meno)

BY	by bus, by chance (náhodou), by the way (mimochodom), by post, by credit card, a book by Dickens, by myself, by accident, by mistake
ON	on foot, on my own, on a diet, on fire, on purpose, on the whole (vcelku), what's on? (on television, on the radio), on business, on the phone
IN	in cash, in other words, in love, in danger, in my opinion, (to write) in pencil
AT	at the age of, at a speed of 200 km/h

Exercise 100: Fill in the gaps with BY / ON / IN / AT.*Example:* Are you still in love with Bruce?

1. How will you pay? cash or credit card?
2. I haven't bought any sweets purpose. I'm a diet.
3. the way, have you read any book R. Dahl?
4. my opinion, his books are excellent for children.
5. Who's the phone? Nobody. Somebody must have dialled my number mistake.
6. The house was fire. The people who were inside the house were danger.
7. This letter should be sent post. I will send it myself.
8. A: What's ? B: A romantic comedy about young people who are love.
9. My grandmother died the age of 99. other words, she lived a long life.
10. I usually go to school bus. But today, I'll go foot.

FIXED EXPRESSIONS: ADJECTIVE + PREPOSITION

(ustálené spojenia: prídavné meno + predložka)

Exercise 101: What is the difference in meaning between the following sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

1. Nick is **good to** my parents.
2. Nick is **good at** languages.
3. I'm **sorry about** the mess in my office.
4. I'm **sorry for** Mr. Brown.
5. I'm **sorry for** coming late.

OF	afraid of flying, typical of you, proud of your children
ABOUT	worried about my family, sorry about the smell
WITH	bored with school, disappointed with her behaviour, fed up with hockey
AT	good at languages
IN	dressed in black, interested in sports, involved in business
FOR	responsible for your life, famous for his film
TO	good to me, kind to her, married to a builder, nice to me, similar to your father
ON	keen on sports

FIXED EXPRESSIONS: VERB + PREPOSITION (ustálené spojenia: sloveso + predložka)

ABOUT	to care about (zaujímať sa o, starať sa o)
ACROSS	to come across (something, somebody) (naraziť na niekoho náhodou)
AFTER	to look after (old mother), to take after (byť podobný komu)
AT	to be good at (cooking) (byť dobrý v), to look at (something)
DOWN	to settle down (in a new town) (usadiť sa), to break down (a computer, a person) (pokaziť sa; psychicky sa zrútiť), to close down (zatvoriť, zrušiť), to slow down (spomaliť), to turn down (odmietnuť)
FOR	to care for (zaujímať sa o), to look for (a job), to act for (my boss) (konať za niekoho), to apply (for; to+infinitív), to stand for (znamenat', symbolizovať)
FORWARD	to look forward to (the English lesson) (tešiť sa na)
IN	to call in (privolať, pozvať), to take place in (the High Tatras), to take part in (the meeting), to keep in touch (zostať v kontakte), to be interested in (music), to fill in (a form), to be dressed in (trendy clothes)
INTO	to divide into (three parts) (rozdeliť na), to get into (dostať sa do), to translate into (English)
OF	to break into (vládať sa), to get rid of (old things), to be kind of (her), to be fond of (something)
OFF	to put off (going to England) (odkladať niečo), to switch off (the lights), to take off (the plane) (vzlietnuť), to turn off (the heating), to get off (the bus), to tell off (vynadať)
ON	to depend on (weather), to carry / go / keep on (learning English) (pokračovať), Come on! (Poď už!, Do toho!, Ale chod' / Nehovor!), to focus on (your work) (sústrediť sa na), to concentrate on (work), to put on (weight) (pribať na váhu), to rely on (your memory) (spolaahnúť sa na), to turn on (the lights), to get on (the bus), to get on with (your mother-in-law) (rozumiť si s), to congratulate on (somebody's success), to be keen on (something) (mať veľký záujem o), to hold on (držať sa, vydržať), to try on (skúšať si oblečenie / topánky)

OUT	to find out (the truth), to get out of (dostať sa z), to send out (the letters), to run out of (petrol) (minúť sa), to leave out (vynechať), to work out (vyriešiť)
OVER	to take over (the company) (prevziať), to think it over (premýšľať si), to turn over (a pancake)
TO	to be kind to (me), to be married to (somebody)
UP	to blow up (vyletieť do povetria), to get up (vstať z postele), to give up (smoking) (vzdať sa), to grow up (vyrásť), to make up (new recipes) (vymyslieť si), to look up (a new word in the dictionary) (vyhľadať), to pick up (a lot of experience) (nazberať), to bring up (children) (vychovávať), to wake up (zobudiť sa), to ring up (zatelefonovať), to wash up (umývať riad)

Exercise 102: Put in the correct prepositions.

Example: to be FED UP with hockey

1. to be INTERESTED cooking
2. to PICK some new words
3. to TAKE the family company
4. to MAKE own recipes
5. to PUT telling the truth
6. to SEND all the letters
7. to be PROUD me
8. to GIVE learning English
9. to BRING children
10. to CARRY studying archeology
11. to FIND the truth
12. to LOOK TO the English lesson
13. to GET RID old clothes
14. to FILL the application form
15. to APPLY the English course
16. to be GOOD languages
17. CONGRATULATIONS your success!
18. to DEPEND the weather

19. to RUN OUT money
 20. to be KIND her
 21. to LOOK the picture
 22. to be FOND portrait painting
 23. to be MARRIED John two children
 24. to TRANSLATE English
 25. to GET ON colleagues
 26. to TAKE PART the football match
 27. to LOOK a word in the dictionary
 28. to RELY yourself
 29. to be KEEN sport
 30. to be DRESSED black

Exercise 103: Match the three columns to create phrasal verbs.

1. TO LOOK	ON	sústrediť sa na
2. TO LOOK	FOR	konať za
3. TO LOOK	IN	byť zahrnutý, angažovaný
4. TO LOOK	OUT	vypnúť
5. TO SWITCH	OFF	zapnúť
6. TO SWITCH	DOWN	hľadať
7. TO TAKE	ON	vzdať sa
8. TO THROW	OFF	staráť sa o
9. TO BREAK	ON	vyhľadať
10. TO GIVE	FOR	tešiť sa na
11. TO RELY	AFTER	spoľahnúť sa na
12. TO ACT	UP	pokaziť
13. TO BE INVOLVED	UP	vyhodiť
14. TO FOCUS	FORWARD TO	vzlietnuť
15. TO CARE	ABOUT	staráť sa o

Exercise 104: Read the dialogue and fill in the missing prepositions.

- I finally got the invitation ¹..... the interview. I can't wait to go ²..... London.
 You can't imagine how excited I am ³..... It.
 Wait, did you really apply ⁴..... that job as an au pair? Are you sure ⁵..... going to London? Sorry, I just thought that you weren't interested ⁶..... that job anymore. I am really surprised ⁷..... your decision. Why do you want to go?
 Well, I simply ran out ⁸..... money. I can't live ⁹..... the money I get here.
 OK, I am not surprised ¹⁰..... that. But do you realise that family life in Britain is different ¹¹..... ours?
 I can't think ¹²..... anything that will stop me ¹³..... going.
 Are you sure that you can take care ¹⁴..... small children? Lucy, listen ¹⁵..... me. You will be responsible ¹⁶..... them. It's not easy.
 Look, it's really important to me! I insist ¹⁷..... going.
 I am really sorry ¹⁸..... shouting. I just worry ¹⁹..... you.

IX. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES (PODMIENKOVÉ VETY)

IF = AK, KEBY

- používame vtedy, keď vyjadrujeme pochybnosť a neistotu, či sa niečo uskutoční.
Např. *I might go shopping this afternoon. (it's possible). If I go shopping, I'll buy some food.*

Pozor! Časovú spojku **WHEN (KEĎ)** používame vtedy, keď sa niečo určite uskutoční. Např. *I am going shopping this afternoon. (for sure). When I go shopping, I'll buy some food.*

Exercise 105: Put in WHEN / IF.

Example: I don't know if my husband still loves me.

1. My daughter wants to be a guitar player she grows up.
2. the weather is good, we will go to the park.
3. My parents are coming tonight. You must be at home they come.
4. We will buy a new flat our baby is born.
5. You can watch TV, but you want, you can play with the Lego robots.
6. I'll clean this mess I come back.
7. I am not sure I get the scholarship.
8. I am going to Brussels next week. I will call you I'm there.
9. My boss is expecting some clients. I will meet them they come.
10. The bus should arrive in time. Let me know it is late.

THREE TYPES OF CONDITIONAL CLAUSES (tri typy podmienkových viet)

1. PRVÁ PODMIENKA (reálna podmienka v budúcnosti)

Např. *If the weather is good, we will go to the park.* (Ak bude dobré počasie, pôjdeme do parku.)

POZOR! Ak sa podmienkou vyjadruje fyzikálny jav, veta si zachováva v oboch častiach prítomný čas. Např. *If you put water into the fridge, it freezes.* (Ak dáš vodu do chladničky, tak zmrzne.)

2. DRUHÁ PODMIENKA (nereálna podmienka v prítomnosti)

Např. *If I had a lot of money, I would buy a new car.* (Keby som mal peniaze, kúpil by som si auto. – ale nemám peniaze)

If I were you, I would risk it. (Keby som bol tebou, riskol by som to. – ale nie som tebou)

3. TRETIA PODMIENKA (nereálna podmienka v minulosti)

Např. *If I had studied harder, I wouldn't have failed the final exam.* (Keby som sa bol viac učil, nebol by som neuspel v záverečnej skúške. – Neučil som sa a teraz to ľutujem a nemôžem to zmeniť.)

If he hadn't driven so fast, he wouldn't have crashed into the tree. (Keby nebol šoféroval tak rýchlo, nebol by narazil do stromu. – Tento fakt nie je možné zmeniť, stalo sa to v minulosti.)

Exercise 106: Underline the appropriate forms of the verbs in CAPITALS.

Example: We'll go to the cinema, if we HAVE / HAD enough money.

1. If we WATCH / WATCHED lots of films, our English would be better.
2. If you had listened to the radio, you WOULD KNOW / WOULD HAVE KNOWN the latest news.
3. If I were you, I WON'T / WOULDNT trust the adverts on TV.
4. What channels would you like to watch if you HAVE / HAD a satellite?
5. Some politicians become more popular if they GIVE / GAVE good speeches on TV.
6. If you PAID / HAD PAID for your television licence, you would have been able to watch TV.
7. If you BOUGHT / HAD BOUGHT that newspaper, you could have won a car.
8. If Pete was a journalist, he EARNED / WOULD EARN much more money.

Exercise 107: Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets and write the type of the conditional (1, 2, 3).

Example: I would have done it if I had had (have) time. (the third conditional)

1. If you arrive in time, we (go) to the party. (....)
2. If I (know) that you were ill last week, I'd come to see you. (....)
3. If you put water in a freezer, it (turn) into ice. (....)
4. If we (get) stuck in a traffic jam, we will miss the plane. (....)
5. If I were rich, I (spend) a lot of money. (....)
6. If he (not be) so untidy, he would be a perfect husband! (....)
7. If your dog chases my cat again, I (report) you to the police! (....)
8. If you could live anywhere in the world, where (be / it)? (....)
9. If you (not, go) to bed so late, you wouldn't be so tired. (....)

10. I would live in England if the weather (be) better. (.....)
11. If you (smoke) a lot, you risk damaging your health. (.....)
12. If Jane (not, miss) the train, she would not have been late for the meeting. (.....)
13. I would have sent you a postcard if I (know) your address. (.....)
14. If I were you, I (not, marry) him. (.....)
15. Nick wasn't sleepy. If he (be, sleepy), he would have gone to bed. (.....)
16. I am not sleepy. If I (be, sleepy), I would go to bed. (.....)
17. We would have taken some pictures if we (have) a camera. (.....)
18. If I (go) to the party, I will be tired tomorrow. (.....)
19. If I (go) to the party yesterday, I would be tired now. (.....)
20. I wouldn't have fallen asleep if I (not, go) to the party last night. (.....)

Exercise 108: Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Keď tam budem, zavolám ti.
2. Ak bude dobré počasie, pôjdeme von.
3. Keby bolo dobré počasie, spravili by sme si opekačku.
4. Keby som bol bohatý, žil by som v Las Vegas.
5. Cítil by si sa lepšie, keby si prestal fajčiť.

WISH clauses (vyjadrenie želania)

WISHES (želania, priania) sa v angličtine tvoria týmito spôsobmi:

1. I WISH (if only) + I DID

- želanie, ktorým sa vyjadruje ľútosť nad (ne)uskutočneným dejom v prítomnosti.
Např. *I wish (if only) I earned more money.* (Currently, I don't earn enough money.)
(Kiežby som zarábala viac peňazí.)

2. I WISH (if only) + I COULD DO

- želanie, ktorým sa vyjadruje ľútosť nad neznalosťou alebo neschopnosťou v prítomnosti.

Např. *I wish (if only) I could speak French.* (Currently, I can't speak French.) (Kiežby som vedel hovoriť po francúzsky.)

POZOR! Podmety vo vete sú rovnaké.

Exercise 109: Write wishes as in the example.

Example: You don't have a camera (and you need one now) *I wish I had a camera.*

1. It's very hot (and you don't like it).
.....
2. You live in a one-room flat (and you don't like it).
.....
3. You have to get up (and you want to stay in bed longer).
.....
4. You don't know his telephone number (and you need it now).
.....
5. Your hair is too short (and you want longer hair).
.....
6. You don't get on well with your brother (and you would like to).
.....

Exercise 110: Write wishes as in the example.

You can't speak French (and you'd like to speak it). *I wish I could speak French.*

1. You can't ski (and you would like to ski now).
.....
2. You want to buy a new car (but you cannot buy it now).
.....
3. You can't fix your bike (and you have a flat tyre).
.....
4. You can't be with your boyfriend / girlfriend (and you want to be with him / her).
.....
5. You can't understand it (and you want to understand it).
.....

X. PASSIVE VOICE (TRPNÝ ROD)

	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
<i>Present Simple</i>	He builds houses.	Houses are built .
<i>Present Continuous</i>	He is building houses.	Houses are being built .
<i>Present Perfect</i>	He has built houses.	Houses have been built .
<i>Past Simple</i>	He built houses.	Houses were built .
<i>Past Continuous</i>	He was building houses.	Houses were being built .
<i>Past Perfect</i>	He had built houses.	Houses had been built .
<i>Future Simple</i>	He will build houses.	Houses will be built .
<i>Should</i>	He should build houses.	Houses should be built .
<i>Must</i>	He must build houses.	Houses must be built .

Exercise 111: Where can you see the following notices? Choose from the box below. More answers are possible. Then translate the sentences into Slovak.

Example: Smoking is not permitted during lunch. at a restaurant

at a restaurant	in the zoo	in a production hall	in the library
in the cinema	in the shop	in the gallery	
in the theatre	in the museum		

1. Visitors *are welcome* to take the free brochure.
2. Silence *is requested*.
3. Visitors *are not allowed* to drink inside.
4. Spectators *are kindly asked* to switch off their mobile phones.
5. Pets *are forbidden* here.
6. Animals *should not be fed*.
7. Our guests *will be seated*.
8. Entrance *is prohibited*.

Exercise 112: Change the following sentences into the passive voice.

Example: My mother took me to hospital. I was taken to hospital (by my mother).

1. The bill includes service.
Service in the bill.
2. People don't use this road very often.
This road
3. They cancelled all flights because of fog.
All flights
4. They are building a new supermarket in the city.
A new supermarket
5. I didn't realise that someone was recording our conversation.
I didn't realise that our conversation
6. They have changed the date of the meeting.
The date of the meeting
7. Our teacher will give us the test results as soon as possible.
We
8. You should invite your parents to come over.
Your parents

Exercise 113: Transform the following sentences into the active voice.

Example: The message for Mr. Huke was left by Mrs. Gole.

Mrs. Gole left the message for Mr. Huke.

1. This seat has been taken by an old man.
.....
2. The new theatre will be opened by the city council.
.....
3. This telephone number was dialled by your daughter.
.....
4. The floor should be cleaned by Mrs. Clean.
.....
5. Jack is invited to the party.
.....

BY / WITH (kým / čím)

Exercise 114: What's the difference between these sentences? Translate them into Slovak.

1. The window was broken **by** Tim.
2. The window was broken **with** a golf stick.

Exercise 115: Fill in the gaps with BY or WITH.

Example: Letters are delivered by postmen.

1. This poem was written an American poet.
2. It was read many young people.
3. Your car was damaged a hammer.
4. The front lights were broken some vandals.
5. The window has been recently cleaned our cleaner.
6. The window was cleaned anti-fog liquid.
7. The birthday cake was made biscuits.
8. The birthday cake was made my grandmother.

**SAY / TELL / TALK / SPEAK
(povedať / rozprávať (sa) / hovoriť)**

SAY povedať niečo niekomu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. say + "....." 2. say that 3. say TO + komu 	<i>He says: "We should go".</i> <i>He says that we should go.</i> <i>He says to us that we should go.</i>
TELL povedať niečo niekomu	tell + komu (bez predložky) – tell somebody a story, a secret, the truth, a lie, the time... – tell somebody where, when, what... – tell somebody about something	<i>Tell me the truth. (Povedz mi pravdu.)</i>
TALK rozprávať(sa)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. talk 2. talk TO + komu 3. talk about 	<i>He talked for an hour. (Hodinu rozprával.)</i> <i>He talked to me for an hour.</i> <i>We were talking about you on the bus.</i>
SPEAK hovoriť	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. speak 2. speak TO + komu 	<i>Do you speak English?</i> <i>I spoke to him about it.</i> <i>(Hovoril som s ním o tom.)</i>

Exercise 116: Fill the gaps with SAY / TELL / TALK / SPEAK.

Example: Could you tell me the time, please?

1. Do you English?
2. What did you ?
3. At lunch we often about work.
4. I : "You're standing on my toe."
5. Don't to me!
6. I can't when he returns home.
7. me the truth.
8. Do not me the same story again, it is frightening.

Exercise 117: Fill in the gaps with the appropriate form of SPEAK, SAY, TELL or TALK.

Example: You didn't tell me where to send the money.

1. We about you last night.
2. Did you hear what Marco about Isabelle?
3. I can't German.
4. I've had an argument with Anna, so she isn't to me at the moment.
5. Who you to? Is it Kate?
6. Did anyone you what the homework was, Tom?
7. Tom, me the answer to number six!
8. I didn't hear you. What you?
9. up! I can't hear you.
10. I that I loved learning languages.

XI. INDIRECT (REPORTED) SPEECH (NEPRIAMA REČ)

Vety v nepriamej reči sa začínajú najčastejšie týmito frázami v minulom čase:

He said that... (Povedal, že...)

He told me that... (Povedal mi, že...)

He knew that / He didn't know that... (Vedel, že... / Nevedel, že...)

He agreed that... (Súhlasil, že...)

He complained that... (Sťažoval sa, že...)

He promised that... (Sľúbil, že...)

He suggested that... (Navrhol, že...)

SHIFT OF TENSES IN REPORTED SPEECH (posun časov v nepriamej reči)

ZIADNE ZMENY nenastávajú v týchto situáciách:

Ak je uvádzajúce slovo v **prítomnom / budúcom alebo predprítomnom čase**:

Direct speech: *She says: "Paulo can swim."*

Indirect speech: *She says that Paulo can swim.*

POSUN ČASOV nastáva takto:

Past simple <i>You said you were sick.</i> <i>You said you worked hard.</i>	←	Present simple I'm sick. I work hard.
Past continuous <i>You said you were working.</i>	←	Present continuous I am working.
Going to <i>You said you were going to work.</i>	←	Going to I am going to work.
Past perfect <i>You said you had worked hard.</i>	←	Present perfect I have worked hard.
Past perfect <i>You said you had worked hard.</i>	←	Past simple I worked hard.
Past perfect continuous <i>You said you had been working hard.</i>	←	Present perfect continuous I have been working hard.
Past perfect <i>You said you had worked hard.</i>	←	Past perfect I had worked hard.
Past perfect continuous <i>You said you had been working.</i>	←	Past perfect continuous I had been working.

WOULD <i>You said you would work hard.</i>	←	Future simple WILL I will work hard.
COULD <i>You said you could work hard.</i>	←	CAN I can work hard.
MIGHT <i>You said you might work.</i>	←	MAY I may work hard.
HAD TO <i>You said you had to / must work hard.</i>	←	MUST I must work hard.

Exercise 118: Report what your new friend, Maria, told you about herself and her family.

Example: I am new in your class.

She said that she was new in our class.

1. I'm learning French.

She said that

2. My father is a lawyer.

She said that

3. My younger brother, Steve, likes playing scrabble.

She said that

4. I have never been to any English-speaking country.

She said that

5. My mother has been working for Tesco for ten years.

She said that

6. My cousin, Betty, will come to see us soon.

She said that

7. I am going to visit my grandmother at Christmas.

She said that

8. I was dreaming about red Porsche.

She said that

9. I must help my parents with the household.

She said that

10. I can't come to your birthday party.

She said that

TIME EXPRESSIONS IN REPORTED SPEECH (časové výrazy v nepriamej reči)

INDIRECT SPEECH - NEPRIAMA REČ	DIRECT SPEECH - PRIAMA REČ
that day	← today
the day before	← yesterday
two days before	← the day before yesterday
the next / the following day	← tomorrow
in two days' time	← the day after tomorrow
the following week / year	← next week / year
the previous week / month	← last week / month
a year before / the previous year	← a year ago
there	← here
that / those	← this / these
then	← now

Exercise 119: Imagine these sentences were reported in another place a month later. Rewrite them. Follow the example.

Example: The weather is terrible today. She said that the weather was terrible that day.

1. I'll call you tomorrow.

She said (that) she

2. I'll come to see you this evening.

He said (that) he

3. My husband and I are leaving for Thailand next week.

She said (that)

4. My uncle had a car accident last week.

He told me (that) his uncle

5. My aunt won a lottery a year ago.

She said (that) her aunt

6. I cannot talk to you because I'm driving now.

She told us (that) she

7. I came late to work this morning.

She told him (that) she

8. My sister is staying with her friend tonight.

She said (that)

9. Pete phoned me yesterday.

He said (that) Pete

10. My cousin is expecting a baby this month.

She said (that)

Exercise 120: Change these sentences from indirect into direct speech.

Example: She said she was going to leave the following day.

She said: "I'm going to leave tomorrow."

1. He said that it was the pullover he had bought the day before.

2. She said that the train would arrive in two days' time.

3. He informed us that he had cancelled his meeting that day.

4. He told me that my car would be repaired the following month.

5. He said he had called me that morning, but nobody had answered the phone.

REPORTED QUESTIONS

(otázky v nepriamej reči - He asked me **WHERE** the bank was.)

Pri tvorení otázok v nepriamej reči dodržiavame slovosled oznamovacej vety, t.j. podmet + prísudok.

Direct questions (priame otázky)	Indirect / reported questions (otázky v nepriamej reči)
"Where is the bank?"	He asked me WHERE the bank was.
"When are you going to visit me?"	He asked me WHEN I was going to visit him.
"Where do you live?"	He asked me WHERE I lived.

"What do you want?"	He asked me WHAT I wanted.
"Is anyone there?"	He asked me IF/WHETHER (či) anyone was there.
"Do you speak English?"	He asked me IF/WHETHER (či) I spoke English.
"Have you seen Mary?"	He asked me IF/WHETHER (či) I had seen Mary.

Exercise 121: Turn these questions into reported questions. Follow the example.

Example: What is his name? She asked what his name was.

1. What's his job?

She asked

2. When is he coming?

She asked

3. Have we met before?

He asked

4. Where are you from?

He asked

5. Will you come tomorrow?

She asked

6. Who is that young lady in red?

He asked

7. Where does the match take place?

He asked

8. What's your plan for this weekend?

He asked

9. How long have you been waiting?

He asked

10. How often do you go to the library?

She asked

1.1 INDIRECT IMPERATIVE (nepriamy imperatív – He told John **TO** go home.)

Prí tvorení nepriameho imperatívu vkladáme do viet **TO** (aby).

He said: "Go home, John!"

He told John **TO** go home.

He said to me: "Do not speak about it!"

He told me **NOT TO** speak about it.

He said: "Call me after five o'clock."

He told me **TO** call him after five o'clock.

Exercise 122: Your new boss told you what to do. Turn his instructions into reported speech.

Example: "Call me John." My boss told me to call him John.

1. "Come on time."

2. "Wear a suit and a tie."

3. "Be polite to our clients."

4. "Send out these letters."

5. "Don't chat with your friends at work."

6. "Organise your desk."

7. "Use the company computer."

8. "Ask questions if you don't understand something."

9. "Keep deadlines."

10. "Be non-stop available."

XII. CONJUNCTIONS (SPOJKY)

123 TIME CLAUSES (časové vety)

V časových vetách sa používajú v angličtine všetky časy okrem budúceho. Platí teda pravidlo, že vo vedľajšej vete po časových spojkách **when** (keď), **till** (až do – časovo), **after** (po), **until** (až kým), **before** (pred), **while** (pokiaľ, kým), **as soon as** (hneď ako, len čo) sa nesmie použiť budúci čas.

Napr. *I'll come **as soon as** I can.* (Prídem hneď ako budem môcť.)

*I'll call you **after** I return.* (Zavolám ti, potom ako sa vrátim.)

*Will you come to see us **before** you leave?* (Prídeš nás navštíviť, skôr než odídeš?)

Exercise 123: Join the beginnings and ends together to form logical sentences.

BEGINNINGS	ENDS
1. Call me as soon as	a. I will call you.
2. When I arrive,	b. you get here.
3. Susan got pregnant when	c. midnight.
4. She'll come as soon as	d. my friends went sightseeing.
5. Wait until	e. she finishes her work.
6. I was doing the shopping while	f. I want to thank you for everything.
7. Before you leave,	g. she was 18.

124 PURPOSE CLAUSES (účelové vety)

Účelové vety sú v angličtine uvedené výrazmi **in order to** (za účelom, aby), **as to** (aby), **to** (aby), **not to** (aby nie), **in order that** (za tým účelom, aby), **so that** (aby).

1. Ak je v oboch častiach súvetia rovnaký podmet, skracujeme vedľajšiu vetu pomocou neurčitku.

Napr. *They went by car **to be there in time**.* (Šli autom, aby tam boli včas.) *You must hurry up **not to miss the train**.* (Musíte sa poponáhľať, aby ste nezmeškali vlak.)

2. Ak majú obe časti súvetia rôzne podmety, používame po spojkách **in order that**, **so that** a **that** podmet a za ním sloveso **may – might, can – could, will – would**, ktoré však do slovenčiny neprekladáme. Použite **may – might, can – could, will – would** závisí od toho, v akom čase je sloveso v hlavnej vete.

May, can, will sa používa, ak je sloveso hlavnej vety v prítomnom alebo budúcom čase. Napr. *She speaks more slowly **so that** I can understand her better.* (Hovorí pomalšie, aby som jej lepšie rozumel.)

Might, could, would sa používa vtedy, ak je sloveso hlavnej vety v minulom čase. Napr. *He gave me his address **so that** I might write to him.* (Dal mi svoju adresu, aby som mu mohol napísať.)

Exercise 124: Read the instructions of a driving instructor. Write TO or SO THAT in the text.

Example: The speedometer is used to show the speed of the car.

1. Use the indicators show that you are changing direction.
2. Make sure that you have a spare tyre in the boot you can use it when you have a puncture.
3. You need good brakes stop the car quickly.
4. Switch on your fog lights the other cars can see you.
5. The radiator is used keep the engine cool.

Exercise 125: Underline the correct word TO or SO THAT.

Example: I showed him the photo TO / SO THAT he might see my children.

1. My mother learns English TO / SO THAT she can understand Mike.
2. I applied to study at Charles university TO / SO THAT I could study business there.
3. Mary left for England TO / SO THAT improve her English.
4. Ivan came TO / SO THAT help me.
5. Speak more slowly TO / SO THAT I can understand you.

125 CONTRAST CLAUSES (prípustkové vety)

CONTRAST CLAUSES – prípusťkové vety vyjadrujú okolnosť, ktorá je v rozpore s obsahom hlavnej vety.

Spojky:

although / though (hoci, aj keď)

even if (aj keď)

while (pokiaľ, kým, hoci)

in spite of the fact / despite (napriek tomu, že)

Exercise 126: Complete the sentences with ALTHOUGH / EVEN IF / WHEREAS / IN SPITE OF / DESPITE.

Example: Picasso was born in Spain, although he did most of his painting in France.

1. Everything sells well at Christmas, the quality of the goods isn't high.
2. I hate shopping in supermarkets, lots of people enjoy it.
3. Never leave the car running, it is only for a few moments.
4. I went to see my dentist yesterday, I still have a terrible toothache.
5. staying in bed for days, she didn't get rid of flu.
6. bad weather, we went for a walk.
7. She didn't pass her English test the fact that she had studied hard.

XIII. NUMERALS (ČÍSLOVKY)

Základné číslovky

* *ten – twenty – thirty – forty (POZOR! nie fourty) – fifty – sixty – seventy – eighty – ninety*

Napr. *My grandmother is **seventy** years old.*

POZOR! *My **seventy-year-old** grandmother is a lovely person.*

*His grandmother is in her **mid-seventies**. (Jeho starká má okolo 75 rokov.)*

* *a hundred – a thousand – a million – a billion (= BrE: **bilión** / AmE: **miliarda**)
nemajú na konci -s, ak vyjadrujú sumu peňazí:*

Napr. *I owe you **one hundred** Euro. (Dlhujem ti sto euro.)*

POZOR! *There were **hundreds of** people. (Boli tam stovky ľudí.)*

* *čítanie základných čísloviek: napr. 10 453 (ten thousand four hundred and fifty-three)*

* *telefónne čísla čítame jednotlivo po čísliciach: napr. 0905 677 319 (o, nine, o, five, six, double seven, three, one, nine)*

* *roky čítame takto: napr. 1977 (nineteen seventy-seven), 2008 (two thousand and eight)*

Radové číslovky

* *the first, the second, the third, the fourth, the fifth...*

Napr. *I was born on **1st January** (čítame on the first of January) alebo*

*I was born on **January 1st, 1995** (čítame on January the first, nineteen ninety-five)*

POZOR! rozdiely písania dátumov v britskej a americkej angličtine:

Napr. BrE: 6/11/2006 (the sixth of November)

AmE: 6/11/2006 (the eleventh of June)

Násobné číslovky

* *double, twice, three times, four times, five times...*

Napr. *We visit each other **twice a year**.*

Zlomky

* *a quarter ($\frac{1}{4}$), one half ($\frac{1}{2}$), two thirds ($\frac{2}{3}$)*

Desatinné čísla

* *0.45 – zero point forty-five*

* *8.31 – eight point three one*

Početové výrazy

* *plus (+), minus (-), equals (=), multiplied by (x), divided by (÷)*

Exercise 127: Read the following numbers, telephone numbers, dates and time.*Example: 3. 15 p.m. – quarter past three p.m.*

1. 68.75
2. Elizabeth II
3. 25th March, 1975
4. 9/12/2008
5. 6.30 a.m.
6. 10 450 dollars
7. $6 + 11 = 17$
8. $45 : 5 = 9$
9. 3rd November, 1999
10. 00421/37/6532 987

XIV. BRITISH AND AMERICAN ENGLISH (BRITSKÁ A AMERICKÁ ANGLIČTINA)

Exercise 128: Match the words to their meanings in American and British English.**British English**

1. b taxi
2. chips
3. city centre
4. crisps
5. dustbin
6. shopping centre
7. mobile (phone)
8. cash dispenser
9. petrol
10. takeaway
11. trousers

American English

- a. cell phone
- b. cab
- c. chips
- d. downtown
- e. ATM
- f. fries
- g. gas
- h. mall
- i. pants
- j. takeout
- k. trash can

Exercise 129: The following text has been written in the mixture of British and American English. Rewrite the text EITHER in American English OR in British English, according to your style.

We went to the new mall in the city centre yesterday. It's great – a colorful, six-storey building full of shops and restaurants. After we had done the shopping, we went to the cinema and then we had fish and fries. The journey back was a nightmare because we had run out of petrol halfway home and I didn't have my mobile. We took a cab that dropped us off on the sidewalk outside the gas station. Then I realised I'd lost my checkbook!

XV. IRREGULAR VERBS (NEPRAVIDELNÉ SLOVESÁ)

arise [ə'raɪz] vzniknúť	arose [ə'roʊz]	arisen [ə'ri:zn]
awake [ə'weɪk] prebudiť	awoke [ə'wəʊk]	awoken [ə'wəʊkn]
be [bi:] byť	was [wɒz]	been [bi:n]
bear [beə] uniesť, zniesť	bore [bo:]	borne [bo:n]
bear [beə] narodiť, porodiť	bore [bo:]	born [bo:n]
beat [bi:t] biť, ťlať	beat [bi:t]	beaten [bi:tn]
become [bi'kʌm] stať sa	became [bi'keɪm]	become [bi'kʌm]
begin [bi'ɡɪn] začať	began [bi'ɡæɪn]	begun [bi'ɡʌn]
bend [bend] ohnúť	bent [bent]	bent [bent]
bite [baɪt] hryzť	bit [bɪt]	bitten [bɪtn]
bleed [bli:d] krváčať	bled [bled]	bled [bled]
blow [bləʊ] fúkať	blew [blu:]	blown [bləʊn]
break [breɪk] zlomiť	broke [brəʊk]	broken [brəʊkn]
bring [brɪŋ] priniesť	brought [brɔ:t]	brought [brɔ:t]
build [bɪld] stavať	built [bɪlt]	built [bɪlt]
burn [bɜ:n] horieť, páliť	burned [bɜ:nd], burnt [bɜ:nt]	burned [bɜ:nd], burnt [bɜ:nt]
burst [bɜ:st] vybuchnúť	burst [bɜ:st]	burst [bɜ:st]
buy [baɪ] kúpiť	bought [bo:t]	bought [bo:t]
catch [kætʃ] chytiť	caught [kɔ:t]	caught [kɔ:t]
choose [tʃu:z] vybrať	chose [tʃəʊz]	chosen [tʃəʊzn]
come [kʌm] prísť	came [keɪm]	come [kʌm]
cost [kɒst] stáť (o cene)	cost [kɒst]	cost [kɒst]
creep [kri:p] plaziť sa	crept [krept]	crept [krept]
cut [kʌt] rezať	cut [kʌt]	cut [kʌt]
deal [di:l] zaoberať sa; obchodovať	dealt [delt]	dealt [delt]

dig [dɪg] kopať	dug [dag]	dug [dag]
do [du:] robiť	did [dɪd]	done [dʌn]
draw [draʊ] kresliť, ťahať	drew [dru:]	drawn [draʊn]
dream [dri:m] snívaj	dreamed [dri:md], dreamt [dremt]	dreamed [dri:md], dreamt [dremt]
drink [drɪŋk] piť	drank [dræŋk]	drunk [drʌŋk]
drive [draɪv] riadiť (auto)	drove [drəʊv]	driven [draɪvn]
eat [i:t] jesť	ate [eɪt]	eaten [i:tn]
fall [fɔ:l] padnúť	fell [fel]	fallen [fɔ:ln]
feed [fi:d] kŕmiť	fed [fed]	fed [fed]
feel [fi:l] cítiť	felt [felt]	felt [felt]
fight [faɪt] bojovať	fought [fo:t]	fought [fo:t]
find [faɪnd] nájsť	found [faʊnd]	found [faʊnd]
fly [flaɪ] letieť	flew [flu:]	flown [fləʊn]
forbid [fə'bɪd] zakázať	forbade [fə'beɪd]	forbidden [fə'bɪdn]
forget [fə'ɡet] zabudnúť	forgot [fə'ɡɒt]	forgotten [fə'ɡɒtn]
forgive [fə'ɡɪv] odpustiť	forgave [fə'ɡeɪv]	forgiven [fə'ɡɪvn]
freeze [fri:z] mŕznúť	froze [frəʊz]	frozen [frəʊzn]
get [ɡet] dostať	got [ɡɒt]	got [ɡɒt]
give [ɡɪv] dať	gave [geɪv]	given [ɡɪvn]
go [ɡəʊ] ísť	went [went]	gone [ɡɒn]
grow [ɡrəʊ] rásť	grew [gru:]	grown [grəʊn]
hang [hæŋ] zavesiť	hung [hʌŋ]	hung [hʌŋ]
have [hæv] mať	had [hæd]	had [hæd]
hear [hiə] počuť	heard [hɜ:d]	heard [hɜ:d]
hide [haɪd] skryť	hid [hɪd]	hidden [hɪdn]
hit [hɪt] udrieť	hit [hɪt]	hit [hɪt]
hold [həʊld] držať	held [held]	held [held]
hurt [hɜ:t] ublížiť	hurt [hɜ:t]	hurt [hɜ:t]

keep [ki:p] držať	kept [kept]	kept [kept]
know [nəu] poznať, vedieť	knew [nju:]	known [nəʊn]
lay [leɪ] položiť	laid [leɪd]	laid [leɪd]
lead [li:d] viesť	led [led]	led [led]
learn [lɜ:n] učiť sa	learned [lə:nd], learnt [lə:nt]	learned [lə:nd], learnt [lə:nt]
leave [li:v] odísť, opustiť	left [left]	left [left]
lend [lend] požičať	lent [lent]	lent [lent]
let [let] nechať	let [let]	let [let]
lie [laɪ] ležať	lay [leɪ]	lain [leɪn]
lose [lu:z] strátiť	lost [lost]	lost [lost]
make [meɪk] robiť	made [meɪd]	made [meɪd]
mean [mi:n] mieniť	meant [ment]	meant [ment]
meet [mi:t] stretnúť	met [met]	met [met]
mistake [mɪ'steɪk] nepochopiť	mistook [mɪ'stʊk]	mistaken [mɪ'steɪkən]
overcome [əʊvəkam] prekonať	overcame [əʊvəkeɪm]	overcome [əʊvəkam]
pay [peɪ] platiť	paid [peɪd]	paid [peɪd]
put [pʊt] položiť	put [pʊt]	put [pʊt]
read [ri:d] čítať	read [red]	read [red]
ride [raɪd] jazdiť	rode [rəʊd]	ridden [rɪdn]
ring [rɪŋ] zvoníť	rang [ræŋ]	rung [rʌŋ]
rise [raɪz] vstávať	rose [rəʊz]	risen [rɪzn]
run [rʌn] bežať	ran [ræn]	run [rʌn]
say [seɪ] povedať	said [sed]	said [sed]
see [si:] vidieť	saw [sɔ:]	seen [si:n]
sell [sel] predávať	sold [səʊld]	sold [səʊld]
send [send] poslať	sent [sent]	sent [sent]
set [set] položiť, nastaviť...	set [set]	set [set]
sew [səʊ] šiť	sewed [səʊd]	sewn [səʊn]

shake [ʃeɪk] triasť	shook [ʃʊk]	shaken [ʃeɪkən]
shave [ʃeɪv] holiť	shaved [ʃeɪvd]	shaven [ʃeɪvn]
shine [ʃaɪn] svietiť	shone [ʃɒn]	shone [ʃɒn]
shoot [ʃu:t] strieľať	shot [ʃɒt]	shot [ʃɒt]
show [ʃəʊ] ukázať	showed [ʃəʊd]	shown [ʃəʊn]
shut [ʃʌt] zavrieť	shut [ʃʌt]	shut [ʃʌt]
sing [sɪŋ] spievať	sang [sæŋ]	sung [sʌŋ]
sink [sɪŋk] klesnúť	sank [sæŋk]	sunk [sʌŋk]
sit [sɪt] sedieť	sat [sæt]	sat [sæt]
sleep [sli:p] spať	slept [slept]	slept [slept]
smell [smel] voňať	smelled [smeld], smelt [smelt]	smelled [smeld], smelt [smelt]
sow [səʊ] siať	sowed [saʊd]	sown [səʊn]
speak [spi:k] hovoriť	spoke [spəʊk]	spoken [spəʊkn]
spend [spend] minúť, stráviť	spent [spent]	spent [spent]
spoil [spɔɪl] pokaziť	spoilt [spɔɪlt]	spoilt [spɔɪlt]
spread [spred] rozprestrieť	spread [spred]	spread [spred]
spring [sprɪŋ] skákať	sprang [spræŋ]	sprung [sprʌŋ]
stand [stænd] stať	stood [stʊd]	stood [stʊd]
steal [sti:l] kradnúť	stole [stəʊl]	stolen [stəʊln]
stick [stɪk] lepiť	stuck [stʌk]	stuck [stʌk]
strike [straɪk] uderiť	struck [strʌk]	struck [strʌk]
swear [swear] prisahať	swore [swɔ:]	sworn [swɔ:n]
sweep [swi:p] zametať	swept [swept]	swept [swept]
swim [swɪm] plávať	swam [swæm]	swum [swʌm]
take [teɪk] vziať	took [tok]	taken [teɪkn]
teach [ti:tʃ] vyučovať	taught [tɔ:t]	taught [tɔ:t]
tear [teə] trhať	tore [tɔ:]	torn [tɔ:n]
tell [tel] povedať	told [təʊld]	told [təʊld]

think [θɪŋk] myslieť	thought [θɔ:t]	thought [θɔ:t]
throw [θrəʊ] hodiť	threw [θrɜ:]	thrown [θrəʊn]
understand ['ʌndə'stænd] rozumieť	understood ['ʌndə'stʊd]	understood ['ʌndə'stʊd]
wake [weɪk] zobudiť	woke [wəʊk]	woken [wəʊkən]
wear [weə] nosiť (oblečenie)	wore [wɔ:]	worn [wɔ:n]
weep [wi:p] plakať	wept [wept]	wept [wept]
win [wɪn] získať, vyhrať	won [wɒn]	won [wɒn]
withdraw [wɪð'drɔ:] odtriahnuť, vybrať (peniaze z účtu)	withdrew [wɪð'dru:]	withdrawn [wɪð'drɒn]
withhold [wɪð'həʊld] odoprieť, odmietnuť	withheld [wɪð'held]	withheld [wɪð'held]
withstand [wɪð'stænd] odolávať, vydržať	withstood [wɪð'stʊd]	withstood [wɪð'stʊd]
write [raɪt] písať	wrote [raʊt]	written [rɪtn]

PRONUNCIATION GUIDE

The pronunciations written in this book are based on British English.

Vowels • Samohlásky

i	it, tick	o:	four, saw	ɔ:	boy, poison
j:	see, be	ʊ	pull, wood	əʊ	throw, no
e	bed, said	ɔ:	pool	aʊ	house, cow
æ	cat, had	ə	person, better	ɪə	ear, beer
ʌ	but, pub	ɜ:	bird, heard	eə	air, pair
aɪ	car, dance	eɪ	eight, they	ʊə	fewer, duel
ɒ	pot, doll	aɪ	eye, my		

Consonants • Spoluhlásky

b	bar, cabbage	m	my, mum	tʃ	church, chair
d	dark, good	n	no, never	ð	this, there
f	food, offer	ŋ	thinking, pink	θ	thumb, bath
g	good, ugly	p	play, upper	v	love, over
h	he, behind	r	error, rat	w	word, one
j	yes, spaniel	s	stop, lost	z	zoo, trees
k	cup, take	ʃ	ship, wish	ʒ	genre, leisure
l	look, doll	t	talk, white	dʒ	jam, age

KEY TO TEST YOUR GRAMMAR (KĽÚČ K ČASTI OTESTUJ SA V GRAMATIKE)

I. NOUNS (PODSTATNÉ MENÁ)

GENDER

Exercise 1: 1. B 2. M 3. M 4. F 5. M 6. F 7. F 8. B 9. B 10. F 11. B 12. F
13. F 14. B 15. F

Exercise 2: 1. wife 2. man 3. daughter 4. uncle 5. widow 6. lord/sir 7. bride
8. hero 9. actress 10. waiter 11. nun 12. prince 13. queen 14. brother-in-law
15. stewardess

PLURAL

Exercise 3: 1. buses 2. loaves 3. shelves 4. videos 5. scarfs/scarves 6. sheep
7. children 8. feet 9. boxes 10. roofs 11. women 12. wives 13. bodies 14.
mice 15. classes 16. salesmen 17. halves 18. cherries 19. potatoes 20. bot-
tles of water 21. brothers-in-law 22. shoes 23. babies 24. men 25. teeth 26.
churches 27. knives 28. ladies 29. radios 30. pianos

IS / ARE

Exercise 4: 1. are 2. is 3. is 4. is 5. is 6. is 7. is 8. are 9. is 10. are 11. is
12. are 13. is 14. are 15. are, are 16. are 17. is 18. is 19. is 20. are

ARTICLES: A / AN / THE / WITHOUT ARTICLE (-)

Exercise 5: 1. a, the 2. a 3. a 4. a, the 5. The 6. The, the, the 7. - 8. The 9. the
10. the 11. -, a 12. the 13. -, the 14. a, the 15. an, the, the 16. a, a, The, the
17. the 18. the, the, a 19. an, a, the 20. The, the 21. the 22. The, the 23. -,
the 24. The, the 25. -, -

QUANTIFIERS

Exercise 6: 1. bottle 2. bar 3. box 4. packet 5. jar 6. bottle, can 7. loaf 8. packet
9. bar 10. bag, packet 11. bottle 12. can, tin

COUNTABLE / UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

Exercise 7: 1. U 2. U 3. U 4. U 5. U 6. C 7. C 8. U 9. U 10. U 11. U
12. C 13. C 14. U 15. U 16. U 17. U 18. U 19. C 20. U

MANY / MUCH / LOTS OF / LITTLE / A LITTLE / FEW / A FEW

Exercise 8: 1. a few 2. lots of 3. few 4. much 5. a lot of 6. many 7. much
8. a few 9. many 10. lots of 11. a few 12. lots of 13. much 14. little

II. ADJECTIVES (PRÍDAVNÉ MENÁ)

ENDINGS OF ADJECTIVES -ed / -ing

Exercise 9: 1. Film bol nudný. 2. Tak som sa nudil, až som zaspal.

Exercise 10: 1. disappointed 2. interesting 3. interested 4. exciting 5. excited
6. depressing 7. depressed 8. shocking 9. shocked 10. surprised 11. surpris-
ing 12. confused 13. confusing/confused

COMPARISONS

Exercise 11: 1. Charles je tak vysoký ako Peter. 2. Mike je vyšší než Charles. 3. Bill je najvyšší chlapec z triedy. 4. Moja výslovnosť je horšia než tvoja. 5. Mat autonehodu bolo pre mňa najhorším zážitkom v mojom živote. 6. Ktoré auto je drahšie? 7. Podľa mňa, Aston Martin je najdrahšie auto. 8. Myslím si, že Renault Clio je lacnejšie než Renault Scenic. 9. Toto je najlacnejšie auto v našom obchode. 10. Šoféroval rýchlejšie a rýchlejšie. 11. V našom okolí je viac a viac nezamestnaných. 12. Dnes je trochu chladnejšie ako zvyčajne. 13. Čím viac sa učím, tým menej viem. 14. Čím je hotel drahší, tým lepšie služby poskytuje. 15. Čím viac jazykov ovládaš, tým lepšie pre teba. 16. Bola to najlepšia vec, akú som kedy spravil v mojom živote. 17. Si rovnaký ako tvoj otec. 18. Vyzeráš ako hollywoodská hviezda. 19. Lepšie neskoro ako nikdy!

Exercise 12: 1. more attractive, the most attractive 2. earlier, the earliest 3. happier, the happiest 4. faster, the fastest 5. better, the best 6. bigger, the biggest 7. little, less, the least 8. more beautiful, the most beautiful 9. more surprising, the most surprising 10. longer, the longest

AS / LIKE / THAN

Exercise 13: 1. like 2. like 3. As 4. like 5. as 6. like 7. as 8. as 9. as, as
10. like 11. as, as 12. like 13. like 14. than 15. like

SO / SUCH A / SUCH AN / SUCH

Exercise 14: 1. Kniha bola tak zaujímavá, že som ju celú prečítal. (*so interesting* – so + prídavné meno) 2. Bola to taká zaujímavá kniha, že som ju celú prečítal. (*such an interesting book* – such an + prídavné meno + podstatné meno v jednotnom čísle) 3. Máš šťastie, že máš takých dobrých priateľov. (*such nice friends* – such + prídavné meno + podstatné meno v množnom čísle) 4. Bolo tak pekné počasie, že sme si šli zaplávať. (*such nice weather* – such + prídavné meno + nepočítateľné podstatné meno)

Exercise 15: 1. such a 2. such an 3. such 4. so 5. so 6. such a 7. such 8. so
9. so 10. so 11. so 12. so 13. so 14. such

ENOUGH / TOO

Exercise 16: 1. Nemá dosť hračiek na hranie. (*not enough toys* – nedostatok hračiek)
2. Má príliš veľa hračiek na hranie. (*too many toys* – nadbytok hračiek)

Exercise 17: 1. too 2. too 3. too 4. too 5. too 6. too, enough 7. too 8. too
9. too 10. too 11. enough 12. enough 13. too

Exercise 18: 1. too cold 2. strong enough 3. too much 4. too much 5. enough

WORD FORMATION

Exercise 19: 1. fun 2. competitive 3. humour 4. beautiful 5. responsibility
6. imaginative 7. confidence 8. lucky 9. happiness 10. legal 11. loss
12. patient 13. flexibility 14. luxurious 15. peace 16. professional 17. occa-
sion 18. high 19. comfort 20. proud

Exercise 20: 1. incorrect 2. impatient 3. inexperienced 4. immature 5. disor-
ganised 6. uncomfortable 7. informal 8. illegal 9. unreliable 10. impossible
11. unintelligent 12. irregular 13. unbelievable 14. illogical 15. unhelpful
16. unreal 17. abnormal 18. immoral 19. irresponsible 20. imperfect
21. indirect 22. inexpensive 23. unable 24. impolite 25. unfriendly

III. ADVERBS (PRÍSLOVKY)

Exercise 21: 1. quickly 2. hard 3. slowly 4. calmly 5. fast 6. horribly 7. tragi-
cally 8. well 9. badly 10. in a friendly way

Exercise 22: 1. hard 2. ✓ 3. ✓ 4. ✓ 5. ✓ 6. careful 7. good 8. ✓ 9. ✓
10. well-known

Exercise 23: 1. I am well. 2. I slept well last night. 3. Why don't you drive fast when you have a fast car? 4. She smiled at me in a friendly way. 5. I normally walk to work. 6. My English is good. 7. Her results were bad. 8. Paul drives carefully. 9. I regularly play tennis. 10. He is hardly working on it now.

IT FEELS, LOOKS, TASTES, SMELLS, SOUNDS GOOD

Exercise 24: 1. good 2. terrible 3. beautiful 4. happy 5. carefully 6. nice 7. heavily 8. bad 9. hard 10. strange.

ORDER OF ADVERBS

Exercise 25: 1. Tom *always* goes to work by car. 2. Ann doesn't *usually* smoke. 3. I go to the cinema *twice a week*. / *Twice a week*, I go to the cinema. 4. My parents *rarely* travel abroad. 5. She has not eaten sushi *yet*. 6. Mike has *already* visited his grandparents. 7. My daughter eats cereals *every morning*. / *Every morning*, my daughter eats cereals. 8. Did you see him *yesterday*? 9. My husband and I have *never* been to Paris. 10. Have you *ever* been married?

Exercise 26: 1. I rarely see my boss because he travels a lot. 2. Do you ever work night shifts? 3. I would like to become a portrait painter in the future. 4. I usually go to bed after midnight. 5. My employer and I get on quite well. 6. My classmates go to the cinema twice a week.

IV. PRONOUNS (ZAMENA)

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS: this-these, that-those

Exercise 27: 1. This 2. this 3. that 4. these 5. those 6. This 7. this, this 8. this 9. these 10. those

PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS: I-me-my-mine

Exercise 28: 1. mine 2. They 3. My 4. me 5. I 6. us 7. his 8. their 9. my 10. me 11. it 12. me 13. she 14. it 15. my 16. me 17. he 18. my 19. his 20. me 21. her 22. my 23. my 24. you 25. your

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS: myself

Exercise 29: 1. yourself 2. yourself/yourselves 3. ourselves 4. himself 5. themselves 6. yourself 7. themselves 8. ourselves 9. itself 10. myself

Exercise 30: 1. When Claire was little, she cut her hair herself. 2. I have bought that dinner myself. 3. My neighbours built their house themselves. 4. Please help yourself. 5. The car itself is nice, but it is not reliable.

EACH OTHER / ONE ANOTHER

Exercise 31: 1. Tom a Jane sa pozerajú jeden na druhého. (*each other*) 2. Tom a Jane sa pozerajú každý sám na seba. (*themselves*)

Exercise 32: 1. each other 2. each other 3. each other 4. each other 5. themselves

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS: some, any, no

Exercise 33: 1. anything 2. somewhere 3. somebody 4. anybody/somebody 5. something 6. some 7. anything, anybody 8. anybody 9. any 10. somebody

Exercise 34: 1. everybody 2. anybody 3. somebody 4. nobody 5. everything 6. anything 7. something 8. nothing 9. everywhere 10. anywhere 11. somewhere 12. nowhere

EITHER / NEITHER / BOTH

Exercise 35: 1. both 2. Neither 3. Either 4. Both 5. Both 6. neither 7. Either 8. Both 9. Neither 10. neither

RELATIVE CLAUSES AND PRONOUNS: who, what, which, that, whose

Exercise 36: 1. who, that (*which* sa používa len pre veci) 2. which (používa sa len pre veci)

Exercise 37: 1. which/who 2. whose 3. where 4. where 5. which 6. where 7. which 8. who

SO AM I, NEITHER / NOR AM I

Exercise 38: 1. So am I. – Aj ja. (vyjadrenie súhlasu v kladnej vete) 2. Nor am I. Neither am I. – Ani ja. (vyjadrenie súhlasu v zápornej vete)

Exercise 39: 1. So do I. 2. Nor have I. 3. So did I. 4. neither can 5. neither has 6. neither was 7. neither has 8. so does 9. So are 10. So am

Exercise 40: 1. I am sorry. So am I. 2. I was sorry. So was I. 3. Roger can play bowling. So can I. 4. Roger can play bowling. So can his wife. 5. We didn't go there. Nor/Neither did we. 6. I don't like tea. Nor/Neither do they. 7. I would like to go skiing. So would we. 8. I have lost my passport. So have my children. 9. The food was awful. So was the wine. 10. The food will be awful. So will the wine.

V. GRAMMAR TENSES (GRAMATICKE ČASY)

PRESENT SIMPLE (I do) / PRESENT SIMPLE CONTINUOUS (I am doing)

Exercise 41: Slovesá v tomto cvičení majú odlišný význam v jednoduchom a prítomnom prítomnom čase. 1. Myslím si, že máš pravdu. (*I think*) Premýšľam o najlepšom riešení. (*I am thinking*) 2. Viem, čo myslíš. (*I see*) O 4 hodine mám stretnutie so šéfom. (*I am seeing*) 3. Mám veľa priateľov. (*I have*) Práve obeduje so svojou priateľkou. (*He is having lunch*) 4. Tvoje auto vyzerá výborne. (*it looks*) Pozeráš sa na moje auto, však? (*You are looking at...*) 5. Ali pochádza z Dubaja. (*he comes from*) Dnes večer nás pride navštíviť. (*He is coming*) 6. Jedlo fantasticky vonia. (*it smells*) Prečo ovoniavaš to jedlo? (*are you smelling?*)

Exercise 42: 1. is coming 2. walk, I am going 3. is ringing 4. do you speak 5. is starting 6. are they talking 7. rains 8. is raining 9. answers 10. prefer 11. is having 12. wants 13. Do you like 14. are standing 15. do not watch 16. are you watching 17. don't understand 18. am listening 19. does finish 20. is getting dark 21. do you do 22. am looking 23. Does wash 24. am learning 25. are you cooking

Exercise 43: 1. I'm reading a good book this week. 2. The phone is ringing. 3. I like red roses. 4. The cake smells good. 5. Look, it's raining. 6. We have English twice a week.

PAST SIMPLE (I did) / PAST CONTINUOUS (I was doing)

Exercise 44: 1. begin – began – begun 2. learn – learnt – learnt 3. eat – ate – eaten 4. teach – taught – taught 5. know – knew – known 6. catch – caught – caught 7. speak – spoke – spoken 8. drink – drank – drunk 9. read – read – read 10. get – got – got 11. put – put – put 12. buy – bought – bought 13. bring – brought – brought 14. do – did – done 15. sleep – slept – slept 16. fly – flew – flown 17. drive – drove – driven 18. take – took – taken 19. cut – cut – cut 20. wake – woke – woken

Exercise 45: 1. broke 2. went 3. ate 4. threw 5. felt 6. died 7. started 8. was 9. missed 10. stayed

Exercise 46: 1. Včera som si umyla vlasy. (*I washed... yesterday* – ukončený dej v minulosti) 2. Práve som si umývala vlasy (*I was washing*), keď si prišiel domov (*you came*). (*I was washing* – dej prebiehal v minulosti a bol prerušený jednorázovým dejom v minulosti) 3. Umývala som si (*I was washing*) vlasy, zatiaľ čo moja sestra čítala knihu (*she was reading*). (dva rôzne deje prebiehali naraz v minulosti)

Exercise 47: 1. was shopping, picked 2. stopped, was driving 3. were leaving, were sleeping 4. was getting, attacked, fell 5. had forgotten, broke into, stole 6. was pointing, was counting 7. was snowing, was blowing 8. was having, knocked 9. were playing, started 10. was crying, heard 11. were, doing, was sleeping 12. was, was listening 13. was snowing, woke up 14. fell asleep, was reading 15. cut, was chopping

PRESENT PERFECT (I have done)

Exercise 48: 1. My dad has just fallen off the ladder. *Result:* His leg/arm is probably broken. 2. He has cut his hair himself. *Result:* His hair is probably too short. 3. Mike has washed his car. *Result:* His car is cleaned and shiny now. 4. My mother has lost her key. *Result:* She is probably looking for it everywhere. 5. I have drunk three cups of coffee. *Result:* I can't fall asleep.

Exercise 49: 1. have bought 2. has broken 3. Have, washed 4. has run away 5. has grown up

PAST SIMPLE (I did) / PRESENT PERFECT (I have done)

Exercise 50: **present perfect:** already, yet, never, so far, since 2004, for 10 years
past simple: 10 years ago, last year, in 2004

Exercise 51: 1. came 2. have recently opened 3. danced 4. did, start 5. have not read 6. Have, already phoned 7. Did, sleep 8. left 9. have never been 10. Have you ever played 11. was 12. met 13. haven't seen 14. went 15. has grown 16. Did you watch 17. has travelled 18. visited 19. have spilt 20. haven't been 21. was 22. died 23. have never hurt 24. happened 25. have arrived

PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE (I have done) /

PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS (I have been doing)

Exercise 52: 1. Napísal som si úlohu. (*I have written* – úloha je napísaná, výsledok deja) Môžeš ju skontrolovať, ak chceš. 2. Hodinu si píšem úlohu. (*I have been writing* – priebeh činnosti, ktorá začala v minulosti a stále pretrváva) Prosím ťa, nevyrušuj ma.

Exercise 53: 1. have read 2. have been playing 3. has been barking 4. have painted 5. has written 6. have been waiting 7. have been watching 8. have been travelling 9. has cleaned 10. have invited

Exercise 54:

1. How long *has he been reading* it? He *has been reading* it for an hour. How many pages *has he read* so far? He *has read* three pages. When *did he start reading* it? He *started reading* it an hour ago.

2. How long *has it been snowing*? It *has been snowing* since early morning. How much snow *has it fallen* so far? It *has fallen* 10 centimetres of snow. When *did it start snowing*? It *started snowing* in the morning.
3. How long *have they been learning* it? They *have been learning* it for 2 hours. How much *have they learnt* so far? They *have learnt* everything. When *did they start learning* it? They *started learning* it 2 hours ago.

FOR / SINCE

- Exercise 55: 1. Čakám na teba dve hodiny. (*for two hours* – vyjadruje časovú dĺžku deja)
2. Čakám na teba od druhej hodiny. (*since 2 o'clock* – vyjadruje začiatok deja)

- Exercise 56: 1. for 2. since 3. for 4. for 5. since 6. for 7. since 8. since
9. since 10. for

PAST PERFECT (I had done)

- Exercise 57: 1. Nevieť nájsť naušnicu. (teraz) Niekde som ju stratila. (*I have lost it* – prednedávnom som ju stratila, vyjadrené predprítomným časom)
2. Nevedela som nájsť naušnicu. (v minulosti) Niekde som ju stratila. (*I had lost it* – predtým som ju stratila, vyjadrené predminulým časom)

- Exercise 58: 1. ...my mum had planted them 2. ...the meeting had already started
3. ...we had met before. 4. ...her younger brother had eaten all her sweets.
5. ...we had finished watching television... 6. ...we had bought two days ago
7. ...he had never been abroad before. 8. ...I had left my money at home. 9. My parents had left... 10. Mrs. Mistrik had cleaned...

- Exercise 59: 1. weren't, had eaten 2. had written, went 3. had lived, got 4. ran, had died 5. arrived, had left

PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS (I had been doing)

- Exercise 60: 1. Meškáš. Čakám na teba hodinu. (*I have been waiting* – priebehovosť deja v prítomnosti) 2. Meškal si. Čakal som na teba hodinu. (*I had been waiting* – priebehovosť deja v minulosti)

- Exercise 61: 1. c 2. a 3. e 4. b 5. d

- Exercise 62: 1. They had been travelling all day to get here. 2. When he changed his job, he had been teaching at our school for five years. 3. She had been working hard all day. 4. He had been playing hockey when he fell down and broke his leg. 5. It had been raining yesterday.

FUTURE SIMPLE

- Exercise 63: 1. Mám ti pomôcť s úlohou? (*Shall I help you...?* – ponúkam pomoc)
2. Pomôžeš mi s úlohou? (*Will you help me...?* – žiadam o pomoc)

WILL / GOING TO DO

- Exercise 64: 1. A: Naša starká má dnes narodeniny. B: Ach, zabudol som. Zavolám jej teraz. (*I will phone her* – náhle rozhodnutie, neplánované)
2. A: Naša starká má dnes narodeniny. B: Viem, chystám sa ju navštíviť poobede. (*I am going to visit her...* – plánované vopred)

- Exercise 65: 1. Are you going to... 2. I will... 3. I am going to... 4. It's going to...
5. We are going to... 6. I will... 7. I will... 8. We are going to... 9. I am going to... 10. are going to...

- Exercise 66: 1. Nick is going to catch a fish. 2. His wife is going to hire a car and do some sightseeing. 3. Their daughter is going to learn how to swim. 4. Their son is going to sleep on the beach all day. 5. Their grandmother is going to read her new book.

- Exercise 67: 1. Poobede mám stretnutie so šéfom. (*I am seeing my boss.*) Vopred sme sa dohodli. (vopred dohodnutá a naplánovaná činnosť)
2. Rozhodol som sa porozprávať sa so šéfom. Pôjdem za ním dnes poobede. (*I am going to see him...* – moje stretnutie nebolo vopred dohodnuté)

FUTURE CONTINUOUS (I will be doing) / FUTURE PERFECT (I will have done) / FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS (I will have been doing)

- Exercise 68: 1. Viem, že nevieš po anglicky. Neboj sa, naučím ťa pár slov. (*I will teach you* – určite ťa naučím) 2. Neprid' medzi 15.00 a 16.00. Budem sa učiť. (*I will be learning* – medzi 15.00 a 16.00 sa budem učiť)

- Exercise 69: 1. will have 2. will not wait 3. will be watching 4. will be attending
5. will be driving 6. will be building 7. will get married 8. will be taking
9. will travel 10. I will be studying

REVISION OF TENSES

- Exercise 70: 2. e 3. d 4. l 5. f 6. i 7. k 8. c 9. g 10. b 11. j 12. h

NEGATIVES

- Exercise 71: 1. I'm not married. 2. They have never been to Japan. 3. She can't speak three languages. 4. Uncle John hadn't travelled around the world. 5. She doesn't hate Chinese food. 6. We are not used to cold weather. 7. My father didn't use

to smoke a lot. 8. I don't have to see them. 9. My friend and I weren't playing tennis. 10. Bill's sister doesn't speak French. 11. I don't have to/I needn't work hard. 12. You don't have to open the door. 13. Sarah hasn't got long hair. 14. My parents wouldn't like to build a house. 15. Students weren't well prepared for their final exam. 16. I will not graduate from secondary school next year. 17. The story I told you wasn't true. 18. She is not going to the hairdresser's. 19. Elizabeth can speak neither English nor German. 20. There aren't any people over there.

QUESTION FORMATION

Exercise 72: 1. Ako sa má? 2. Kto je to? 3. Čo robí? 4. Aký je? 5. Ako vyzerá? 6. Čo má rád?

Exercise 73: 1. How are you? 2. Where do you come from? 3. What do you study? 4. Where does Ben work? 5. What are they doing (playing)? 6. What does she look like? 7. What is he like? 8. When is her birthday? 9. Where do they often travel to? 10. Why do they travel there? 11. Who can play this game? 12. Where will you wait? 13. Who told you the truth? 14. What did Mike tell you? 15. Who will she spend Christmas with? 16. How long have you worked for Mr. Brown? 17. Who did you stop working for last year? 18. Who have you been working with for ten years? 19. What did she say? 20. What has happened here? 21. Where do you usually go to do the shopping? 22. What's the weather like? 23. What is your new classmate like? 24. Why did he stay at home? 25. What did she use to play? 26. How much did your new mobile phone cost? 27. Which side of the road are you used to driving on? 28. How many people were there? 29. Why did she say that? 30. Have you ever been to Paris?

Exercise 74: 1. Who do they work for? 2. Who saw you? 3. What did you see? What have you seen? 4. What did you tell him?/What have you told him? 5. What do you think about it?

INDIRECT QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Exercise 75: 1. Čie je to auto? (priama otázka) 2. Vieš, čie je to auto? (nepriama otázka, začína sa ako otázka, ale druhá časť vety je formulovaná ako oznamovací veta, t.j. slovosled nepriamej otázky je rovnaký ako v oznamovacej vete.)

Exercise 76: 1. Do you know where the Main Street is? 2. Could you tell me how long the journey will take? 3. I can't remember where we should turn. 4. I have no idea whose bag it is. 5. Could you tell me what she was wearing? 6. I don't know when your birthday is. 7. Do you know if Jack will be at home? 8. I'm not sure how much our new DVD player cost. 9. I don't know what time it is. 10. She couldn't remember how old she was.

Exercise 77: 1. Could you tell me what time it is? 2. Do you know who that man is? 3. I'm not sure where I parked my car. 4. Could you possibly tell me where the bank is?

QUESTION TAGS

Exercise 78: 1. isn't it? 2. are you? 3. can't she? 4. aren't I? 5. wasn't he? 6. didn't they? 7. wasn't it? 8. aren't you? 9. hasn't she? 10. is it? 11. aren't you? 12. will you?

Exercise 79: 1. can't you? 2. didn't she? 3. will they? 4. isn't it? 5. shall we? 6. aren't I? 7. didn't they? 8. wasn't he? 9. is it? 10. shouldn't I?

HAVE SOMETHING DONE

Exercise 80: 1. Môj brat si opravuje auto. Môj brat si dáva opraviť auto. 2. Nathalie si strihá vlasy. Nathalie si dáva strihať vlasy. 3. Moji rodičia si stavajú dom. Moji rodičia si dávajú stavať dom.

Exercise 81: 1. We are having our new house built. 2. Our neighbour has had the windows cleaned. 3. Jakub had his tooth pulled out. 4. I will have the flight ticket booked. 5. She had her eyes tested.

TO DO / DOING

Exercise 82: 1. Minulý rok som prestal fajčiť. (*I stopped smoking* – prestal som vykonávať istú činnosť) 2. Zastavil som, aby som fajčil. (*I stopped to smoke* – zastavil som, aby som vykonal istú činnosť, vyjadrenie účelu) 3. Pamätám sa, že som zhasol svetlá. 4. Spomenul som si, že mám zhasnúť svetlá.

Exercise 83: 1. to leave 2. to taste 3. to study 4. waiting 5. to sleep

Exercise 84: 1. to avoid 2. to meet 3. to go 4. being 5. giving 6. to give 7. to invite 8. interrupting

TO DO / DO

Exercise 85: 1. to invite 2. to spend 3. to catch 4. explain 5. write 6. to talk 7. to teach 8. to do 9. to pass 10. to see

I USED TO DO / I AM USED TO + -ING

Exercise 86: 1. d 2. e 3. a 4. b 5. c 6. f

VI. MODAL VERBS (MODÁLNE SLOVESÁ)**PRESENT FORMS OF MODAL VERBS**

Exercise 87: 1. Musím umyť okná v našom byte. (*I have to clean... – chcem to spraviť sám od seba, lebo vidím, že je to nevyhnutné*) 2. Musím vyčistiť okná v našom byte. (*I must clean... – niekto mi to prikazuje spraviť*) 3. Nesmíš vyčistiť okná v tvojom byte. (*You mustn't clean... – zakazujem ti, aby si to robil*) 4. Nemusíš vyčistiť okná v tvojom byte. (*You needn't clean... – nie je to tvoja povinnosť*)

Exercise 88: 1. could not/couldn't 2. might not/ mightn't 3. will not/won't 4. would not/wouldn't 5. should not/shouldn't 6. must not/don't have to/needn't to

Exercise 89: 1. can 2. can 3. might 4. must 5. shouldn't 6. don't have to 7. manage to 8. will 9. should 10. must 11. may 12. might be 13. should

LANGUAGE FUNCTIONS

Exercise 90: 1. ability 2. possibility 3. asking for permission 4. request 5. offer 6. offer 7. advice 8. apology 9. request 10. prohibition

VII. PREPOSITIONS (PREDLOŽKY)**PREPOSITIONS OF TIME**

Exercise 91: 1. at 2. at 3. in 4. in 5. on 6. at 7. on 8. in 9. at 10. on

PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE / MOVEMENT

Exercise 92: 1. Žena na obrázku (*in the picture*) je nádherná. (je namalovaná, od fotená) 2. Na obrázku (*on the picture*) je mucha. (*sedí tam*)

Exercise 93: 1. in 2. in 3. on 4. in 5. at 6. by 7. at 8. on 9. at 10. in

Exercise 94: 1. in 2. of 3. at 4. for 5. in 6. to 7. on 8. in 9. to 10. on

PAIRS OF PREPOSITIONS: between – among, over – above, under – below

Exercise 95: 1. among 2. between 3. above 4. below 5. over 6. under 7. under 8. among 9. between 10. below

VIII. FIXED EXPRESSIONS (USTÁLENÉ SPOJENIA)**MAKE / DO**

Exercise 96: 1. make 2. make 3. make 4. do 5. do 6. done 7. do 8. make 9. make 10. do

HAVE / HAVE GOT

Exercise 97: 1. Obyčajne vyfajčím päť cigariet denne. (*have a cigarette – fajčiť, nie mať cigaretu*) 2. Vo vrecku mám (*I have got*) päť cigariet.

Exercise 98: 1. have 2. have got 3. has got 4. has got 5. have 6. have 7. have 8. have 9. Have 10. Have you got

GET / BECOME / GO / TURN / GROW / FALL / COME

Exercise 99: 1. got better 2. became pregnant 3. get dressed 4. got/have got lost 5. go crazy 6. got married 7. get warm 8. turn yellow 9. goes red 10. get divorced 11. getting/growing dark 12. become lazy 13. getting old/growing old 14. fell asleep 15. fall ill

FIXED EXPRESSIONS: prepositions + noun

Exercise 100: 1. In (cash), by (credit card) 2. on (purpose), on (a diet) 3. By (the way), by (R. Dahl) 4. In (my opinion) 5. on (the phone), by (mistake) 6. on (fire), in (danger) 7. by (post) 8. on (What's on?), in (love) 9. at (the age of...), In (other words) 10. by (bus), on (foot)

FIXED EXPRESSIONS: adjective + preposition

Exercise 101: 1. Nick je dobrý k mojim rodičom. (*good to my parents*) 2. Nick je dobrý v jazykoch. (*good at languages*) 3. Ospravedlňujem sa za neporiadok v kancelárii. (*sorry about*) 4. Je mi ľúto pána Browna. (*sorry for*) 5. Prepáčte, že meškám. (*sorry for coming late*)

FIXED EXPRESSIONS: verb + preposition

Exercise 102: 1. interested in 2. pick up 3. take over 4. make up 5. put off 6. send out 7. proud of 8. give up 9. bring up 10. carry on 11. find out 12. look forward to 13. get rid of 14. fill in 15. apply for 16. good at 17. congratulations on 18. depend on 19. run out of 20. kind to/of 21. look at 22. fond of 23. married to (John) with (two children) 24. translate into 25. get on with 26. take part in 27. look up 28. rely on 29. keen on 30. dressed in

Exercise 103: 1. *to look for* – hľadať 2. *to look after* – starať sa o 3. *to look up* – vyhľadať
4. *to look forward to* – tešiť sa na 5. *to switch on* – zapnúť 6. *to switch off* – vypnúť
7. *to take off* – vzlietnuť 8. *to throw out* – vyhodiť 9. *to break down* – pokaziť
10. *to give up* – vzdať sa 11. *to rely on* – spoľahnúť sa na 12. *to act for* – konať za
13. *to be involved in* – byť zahrnutý v 14. *to focus on* – sústrediť sa na
15. *to care about* – mať záujem o

Exercise 104: 1. to 2. to 3. about 4. for 5. about 6. in 7. by 8. of 9. on
10. by/about 11. from 12. of 13. from 14. of 15. to 16. for 17. on 18. for
19. about

IX. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES (PODMIENKOVÉ VETY)

WHEN / IF

Exercise 105: 1. when 2. if 3. when 4. when 5. if 6. when 7. if 8. when
9. when 10. if

3 TYPES OF CONDITIONALS

Exercise 106: 1. watched 2. would have known 3. wouldn't 4. had 5. give
6. had paid 7. had bought 8. would earn

Exercise 107: 1. will go (1) 2. had known (3) 3. turns (1) 4. get (1) 5. would
spend (2) 6. wasn't/weren't (2) 7. will report (1) 8. would it be (2) 9. didn't go
(2) 10. was/were (2) 11. smoke (1) 12. hadn't missed (3) 13. had known (1)
14. would not marry (2) 15. had been sleepy (3) 16. were sleepy (2) 17. had had
(3) 18. go (1) 19. went (2) 20. hadn't gone (3)

Exercise 108: 1. When I get there, I will call you. 2. If the weather is good, we will
go out. 3. If the weather was good, we would have a barbecue. 4. If I were rich,
I would live in Las Vegas. 5. You would feel better if you stopped smoking.

WISH CLAUSES

Exercise 109: 1. I wish it wasn't so hot. 2. I wish I didn't live in a one-room flat
3. I wish I didn't have to get up. 4. I wish I knew his telephone number. 5. I wish
my hair wasn't so short. 6. I wish I got on well with my brother.

Exercise 110: 1. I wish I could ski. 2. I wish I could buy a new car. 3. I wish I could
fix my bike. 4. I wish I could be with my boyfriend/girlfriend. 5. I wish I could
understand it.

X. PASSIVE VOICE (TRPNÝ ROD)

Exercise 111: suggested answers: 1. Návštevníci si môžu vziať brožúru zdarma. (in
the gallery, in the museum) 2. Zachovajte, prosím, ticho. (in the gallery, in the
museum, in the ZOO, in the library) 3. Návštevníci nesmú konzumovať vnútri
nápoje./Vnútri nie je dovolené konzumovať nápoje. (in the gallery, in the muse-
um, in the cinema, in the library) 4. Žiadame divákov, aby si láskavo vypli svoje
mobilné telefóny. (in the theatre) 5. Vstup so zvieratami zakázaný. (at a restau-
rant, in the library, in the museum, in the shop, in the gallery, in the theatre)
6. Zákaz kŕmenia zvierat. (in the ZOO) 7. Čakajte, kým vás usadia. (at a restau-
rant) 8. Zákaz vstupu. (in a production hall, in the ZOO)

Exercise 112: 1. ...is included... 2. ...isn't used very often. 3. ...were cancelled
because of fog. 4. ...is being built in the city. 5. ...was being recorded. 6. ...has
been changed. 7. ...will be given the test results as soon as possible. 8. ...should
be invited to come over.

Exercise 113: 1. An old man has taken this seat. 2. The city council will open the
new theatre. 3. Your daughter dialled this telephone number. 4. Mrs. Clean
should clean the floor. 5. Someone/They invited Jack to the party.

BY / WITH

Exercise 114: 1. Tim rozbil okno./Okno bolo rozbité. – *by Tim (osoba)* 2. Okno bolo
rozbité golfovou palicou. – *with a golf stick (vec)*

Exercise 115: 1. by 2. by 3. with 4. by 5. by 6. with 7. with 8. by

SAY / TELL / TALK / SPEAK

Exercise 116: 1. speak 2. say 3. talk 4. said 5. talk 6. say 7. Tell 8. tell

Exercise 117: 1. were talking 2. said 3. speak 4. talking 5. are, talking 6. tell
7. tell 8. did, say 9. Speak 10. said

XI. INDIRECT (REPORTED) SPEECH (NEPRIAMA REC)

SHIFT OF TENSES IN REPORTED SPEECH

Exercise 118: 1. ...she was learning French. 2. ...her father was a lawyer. 3. ...her
younger brother, Steve, liked playing scrabble. 4. ...she had never been to any
English-speaking country. 5. ...her mother had been working for Tesco for ten
years. 6. ...her cousin, Betty, would come to see her soon. 7. ...she was going

to visit her grandmother at Christmas. 8. ...she had been dreaming about red Porsche. 9. ...she had to help her parents with the household. 10. ...she couldn't come to my birthday party.

TIME EXPRESSIONS IN REPORTED SPEECH

Exercise 119: 1. ...would call me the next/following day. 2. ...would come to see me that evening. 3. ...her husband and she were leaving for Thailand the following week. 4. ...had had a car accident the previous week. 5. ...had won a lottery the previous year. 6. ...couldn't talk to us because she was driving then. 7. ...had come late to work that morning. 8. ...her sister was staying with her friend that night. 9. ...had phoned him the day before. 10. ...her cousin was expecting a baby that month.

Exercise 120: 1. He said: "It is the pullover I bought yesterday." 2. She said: "The train will arrive the day after tomorrow." 3. He informed us: "I have cancelled the meeting today." 4. He told me: "Your car will be repaired next month." 5. He said: "I called you this morning, but nobody answered the phone."

REPORTED QUESTIONS

Exercise 121: 1. ...what his job was. 2. when he was coming. 3. ...if/whether we met before. 4. ...where I was from. 5. ...if/whether I would come the following day. 6. ...who that young lady in red was. 7. ...where the match took place. 8. ...what my plan for that weekend was. 9. ...how long I had been waiting. 10. ...how often I went to the library.

INDIRECT IMPERATIVE

Exercise 122: 1. My boss told me to come on time. 2. My boss told me to wear a suit and a tie. 3. My boss told me to be polite to our clients. 4. My boss told me to send these letters out. 5. My boss told me not to chat with my friends at work. 6. My boss told me to organise my desk. 7. My boss told me to use the company computer. 8. My boss told me to ask questions if I don't understand something. 9. My boss told me to keep deadlines. 10. My boss told me to be non-stop available.

XII. CONJUNCTIONS (SPOJKY)

TIME CLAUSES

Exercise 123: 1. b 2. a 3. g 4. e 5. c 6. d 7. f

PURPOSE CLAUSES

Exercise 124: 1. to 2. so that 3. to 4. so that 5. to

Exercise 125: 1. so that 2. so that 3. to 4. to 5. so that

CONTRAST CLAUSES

Exercise 126: 1. even if 2. although 3. even if 4. Although 5. Despite 6. Despite 7. in spite of

XIII. NUMERALS (ČÍSLOVKY)

Exercise 127: 1. sixty-eight point seven five 2. Elizabeth the second 3. the twenty-fifth of March nineteen seventy-five 4. BrE: the ninth of December two thousand and eight / AmE: the twelfth of September two thousand and eight 5. half past six a.m. 6. ten thousand four hundred and fifty dollars 7. six plus eleven equals seventeen 8. forty-five divided by five equals nine 9. the third of November nineteen ninety-nine 10. double o four two one three seven six five three two nine eight seven

XIV. BRITISH AND AMERICAN ENGLISH (BRITSKÁ A AMERICKÁ ANGLIČTINA)

Exercise 128: 1. f 2. d 3. c 4. k 5. h 6. a 7. e 8. g 9. j 10. i

Exercise 129

AmE: We went downtown to the new mall yesterday. It's great – a colorful, six-story building full of stores and restaurants. After we had done the shopping, we went to the movies and then we had fish and fries. The journey back was a nightmare because we had run out of gas halfway home and I didn't have my cell phone. We took a cab that dropped us off on the sidewalk outside the gas station. Then I realized I'd lost my checkbook!

BrE: We went to the new shopping centre in the city centre yesterday. It's great – a colourful, six-storey building full of shops and restaurants. After we had done the shopping, we went to the cinema and then we had fish and chips. The journey back was a nightmare because we had run out of petrol halfway home and I didn't have my mobile. We took a taxi that dropped us off on the pavement outside the petrol station. Then I realised I'd lost my chequebook!

PÍŠOMNÁ ČASŤ

KEY (ključ k písomnej časti)

úlohy na precvičenie počúvania s porozumením a prepis nahrávok

TRACK 22

1. Improving your eating habits can give you _____

2. Eating all four food groups is _____.

- 1. Cereals, bread and pasta belong to the food group called _____**

4. Vitamin A and folacin can be found in _____

8. Lower-fat milk products _____

- 6. Vegetarians should eat enough _____**

7. If you eat enough starch and fibre, _____

- A your body will store less of the fat C your body increases the amount of the fat
B you will improve your eating habits D you will feel better

TASK 2 (6 points)**TRACK 24**

Vypočujte si dialóg medzi recepcným a hotelovým hosťom, ktorý si rezervuje hotelovú izbu. Na základe vypočutého doplňte chýbajúce slová alebo čísla v uvedenom formulári. Text si vypočujte dvakrát. Teraz máte dve minúty na prečítanie formulára.

WHITE PALACE HOTEL RESERVATION FORM**GUEST DETAILS**Name: Mr. ¹ _____ ² _____

Address: 235b West 23rd. St., New York, NY 10011, USA

Car Reg. Number: ³ _____**ROOM DETAILS**From: Friday 23rd April Number of Nights: ⁴ _____Room: (tick as appropriate) ⁵ Single ☐ Double ☐ Twin ☐Room number: ⁶ _____

► Prepis textu nájdete na strane 300. ◀

TASK 3 (8 points)**TRACK 26**

Vypočujte si telefónny rozhovor medzi recepcným a hotelovým hosťom. Na základe vypočutého sa rozhodnite, ktoré tvrdenie je pravdivé (A – true) a ktoré nepravdivé (B – false). Text si vypočujte dvakrát. Teraz máte dve minúty na prečítanie úloh 1 – 8.

1. The guest wants to be woken at 7.00 in the morning.

A true B false

2. The guest has a meeting at 7.30.

A true B false

3. The guest does not want to have breakfast in her room.

A true B false

4. Breakfast is normally available until nine o'clock.

A true B false

5. The guest would like to have an earlier breakfast.

A true B false

6. The hotel will provide tomato juice for the guest's husband's breakfast.

A true B false

7. All the rooms are given a free copy of the Times newspaper.

A true B false

8. The guest is not happy with the service she has been given.

A true B false

► Prepis textu nájdete na strane 301. ◀

TASK 4 (7 points)**TRACK 28**

Vypočujte si príbeh dievčaťa Betty, ktorá rozpráva o svojich problémoch v škole. Na základe vypočutého si vyberte správnu odpoveď zo štyroch možností. Správna je len jedna z možností. Text si vypočujte dvakrát. Teraz máte dve minúty na prečítanie úloh 1 – 7.

1. Betty has _____.

A one sister and no brother

C no brothers or sisters

B one brother and no sister

D no parents

2. Betty's problems at school started when _____.

A her father got a new job

C she stopped going to school

B her teacher introduced her as Betty

D her parents got divorced

3. Betty's classmates are _____.

A her best friends

C her bullies

B her neighbours

D only girls

4. Betty's classmates _____.

A make fun of her

C give her some money

B ignore her

D make many funny things

5. Betty's mother would not _____.

A believe Betty

C help Betty

B bully Betty

D talk to Betty

6. Betty's teachers have been _____.

A kind

C impatient

B unhelpful

D tolerant

7. Betty's teachers talked to Betty's mother about _____.

A her school attendance

C her mood

B her behaviour

D her school absence and homework

► Prepis textu nájdete na strane 301. ◀

TASK 5 (8 points)**TRACK 30**

Vypočujte si rozhovor medzi novinárom a zahraničným turistom. Na základe vypočutého sa rozhodnite, ktoré tvrdenie je pravdivé (A – true) a ktoré nepravdivé (B – false). Text si vypočujte dvakrát. Teraz máte dve minúty na prečítanie úloh 1 – 8.

- The tourist is from Manchester in England.
A true B false
- She first came to Slovakia at Easter, three years ago.
A true B false
- She said that she doesn't know anyone else from Britain who had visited Slovakia.
A true B false
- She said that many people in Britain live in high-rise flats.
A true B false
- In Britain people normally have flowers instead of vegetables in their gardens.
A true B false
- The tourist can speak Slovak quite well now.
A true B false
- She says that she hasn't been to Bratislava or Nitra.
A true B false
- She has also visited Poland and Hungary.
A true B false

► Prepis textu nájdete na strane 301. ◀

TASK 6 (7 points)**TRACK 32**

Vypočujte si rozhovor medzi novinárom a zahraničným turistom. Na základe vypočutého doplňte chýbajúce slová v nižšie uvedenom texte. V odpovedi použite jedno alebo dve slová. Text si vypočujte dvakrát. Teraz máte dve minúty na prečítanie textu.

The tourist I spoke to had recently visited Orava castle. She was very impressed with the tour there. On each level of the castle there was different entertainment – falconry, a ¹ _____, a weapons demonstration and some

2

She said that the castles in Britain are very dif-

ferent, but that they are very ³ _____ and interesting. She said that Edinburgh castle in Scotland was her ⁴ _____. It is worth visiting in ⁵ _____ because there is a military tattoo. She also mentioned Windsor castle. Queen Mary's dolls ⁶ _____ is there, and the castle is set in beautiful ⁷ _____.

► Prepis textu nájdete na strane 302. ◀

TASK 7 (8 points)**TRACK 34**

Vypočujte si rozhovor medzi realitným agentom a potenciálnym zákazníkom pri kúpe bytu. Na základe vypočutého doplňte chýbajúce slová v uvedenom rozhovore. V odpovedi použite len jedno slovo. Text si vypočujte dvakrát. Teraz máte dve minúty na prečítanie dialógu.

Estate Agent: Here we are, the ¹ _____ storey, flat number six.

Customer: It's a long way up. Isn't there a ² _____?

Estate Agent: There is, but it is being... erm... being repaired today. Well, let's have a look ³ _____ the flat. So what do you think?

Customer: Well, it doesn't seem very big. In the ⁴ _____ it was described as "a luxury penthouse suite". This looks more like a large broom cupboard.

Estate Agent: Well, flats round here are more ⁵ _____. This flat is much bigger than the others in the building.

Customer: Where's the ⁶ _____?

Estate Agent: Erm... Well, there are some wonderful ⁷ _____ in the area.

Customer: And the bathroom?

Estate Agent: That is the beauty of this apartment; everything is in the same room. Lift up the bed, you'll find the bath underneath! So are you ⁸ _____ in renting it?

► Prepis textu nájdete na strane 302. ◀

TASK 8 (8 points)**TRACK 36**

Vypočujte si rozhovor medzi pani Roachovou a Janou, potenciálnou au pair. Na základe vypočutého sa rozhodnite, ktoré tvrdenie je pravdivé (A – true) a ktoré nepravdivé (B – false). Text si vypočujte dvakrát. Teraz máte dve minúty na prečítanie úloh 1 – 8.

1. This is Jana's second visit to England.
A true B false
2. She has been working as an au pair during her time in England.
A true B false
3. The family she was working for have just moved to London.
A true B false
4. The family have a four-year-old boy and twins.
A true B false
5. Jana has looked after her nephew and niece in Slovakia.
A true B false
6. Jana wants to stay in Slovakia until the autumn.
A true B false
7. She wants to study English and German.
A true B false
8. Jana's employer will give her a reference.
A true B false

► Prepis textu nájdete na strane 303. ◀

TASK 9 (5 points)**TRACK 38**

Vypočujte si dialóg medzi predavačom a zákazníkom, ktorý má záujem o kúpu automobilu. Na základe vypočutého doplňte chýbajúce slová v nižšie uvedenom texte. V odpovedi použite len jedno slovo. Text si vypočujte dvakrát. Teraz máte dve minúty na prečítanie textu.

Our car shop offers you ¹_____ cars. For example, the E-type Jaguar is our latest ²_____. We recommend it as a family car because there is enough space for ³_____ people. The B-type Jaguar is also suitable as a family car and it is not so ⁴_____ now. We also sell some Renaults, which I think are not very ⁵_____.

cars for a family. The customers can buy brand new models of Renaults for a good price.

► Prepis textu nájdete na strane 304. ◀

TASK 10 (5 points)**TRACK 40**

Vypočujte si znova predchádzajúci dialóg. Na základe vypočutého si vyberte jednu správnu odpoveď. Text si vypočujte dvakrát. Teraz máte dve minúty na prečítanie úloh 1 – 5.

1. The customer wants to buy _____.
A a family car C a sporty car
B a petrol car D a bike
2. The customer is not interested in _____ because it is too expensive for him.
A Renault C Jaguar
B Octavia D Peugeot
3. The shop assistant doesn't recommend Renault because he thinks that _____.
A it is a bad car C it is not reliable
B it is not comfortable D it is too expensive
4. The shop assistant thinks that the new model of Renault is _____.
A very expensive C a bit expensive
B not too expensive D not cheap
5. The customer is interested in _____.
A reliable cars C new models
B cheap cars D big cars

► Prepis textu nájdete na strane 304. ◀

Tapescripts – prepis nahrávok

TASK 1

TRACK 23

Eat Healthy! Stay Healthy!

Improving your eating habits can have a very positive effect on the way you feel.

There are four basic food groups: grains, vegetables, milk products and meats. Each of the groups is necessary and it is very important to have a good balance between the above food groups.

Grains include cereals and bread – but choose the whole-grain varieties, such as wholegrain pasta and bread.

Dark green and orange vegetables as well as orange fruits are full of key nutrients, such as vitamin A and folacin.

Try lower-fat milk products more often. These products have less fat and calories but still give you the quality protein and calcium needed for healthy body and bones.

It is also important to have foods from the meats group, but vegetarians do not need to worry – they can replace meat with lentils, beans and pulses.

Try to choose leaner meat and cook it in ways that reduce the amount of fat – baking, broiling, roasting or microwaving. Your body will store less of the fat if you eat more starch and fibre. So have some baked beans, pea soup or a lentil casserole.

TASK 2

TRACK 25

- A: Good morning, sir. How can I help you?
 B: I was wondering if you had any rooms available for the next few days.
 A: We're almost fully booked at the moment, but I can have a look for you. What sort of room do you require?
 B: I'd like to book a double room, please.
 A: Certainly, sir. For how many nights?
 B: Three – today, tomorrow and Sunday.
 A: Would you like an en-suite room?
 B: Yes, that would be excellent.
 A: You're lucky, sir, we have just one left, room number 347. Can I take your name, please?
 B: Phelps. P-H-E-L-P-S, Phelps.
 A: Thank you. And your first name?
 B: David.
 A: Do you have a car with you, Mr. Phelps?
 B: Yes.
 A: We have free parking at the back of the hotel, but I'll need to take your registration number.
 B: Of course. It's V 999 JJA.
 A: Thank you. If you could fill in the rest of this form, then I'll get the porter to show you to your room.

TASK 3

TRACK 27

- A: Reception. How can I help?
 B: Room 347 here. Would it be possible to book a wake up call for the morning?
 A: Of course, madam, for what time?
 B: Well, I have a meeting at half past eight, so perhaps seven o'clock would be best.
 A: Certainly, madam. Would you like breakfast in your room?
 B: Er... No, it's all right. I'll come down for breakfast. What time is it available?
 A: From 7.30 till 9. But we can arrange for an earlier breakfast if you require it.
 B: No, 7.30 is fine. My husband normally has tomato juice with his breakfast; he would really be pleased if it was possible.
 A: No problem, madam. I'll speak to the chef and we'll have some ready each morning.
 B: Is it also possible to have a morning paper delivered?
 A: Yes. We provide all the rooms with a complimentary copy of the Telegraph each morning. If you would prefer a different paper, we can order it for you.
 B: Could I have a copy of the Times, as well, please?
 A: Yes, madam. Is there anything else I can help you with?
 B: No, thank you. You've been very helpful.

TASK 4

TRACK 29

I'm 15 years old and I'm an only child. My mother got a new job last year, so we moved to a new area where I started a new school. My problems started there. My teachers brought me to class and introduced me as "Betty". From the very first day, everybody started to call me "Tatty". I have to admit that I am bigger than other girls my age...

The kids at school never accepted me. I have no friends there and nobody ever speaks to me. They just make fun of me. Sometimes, they gang up and attack me. They rip up my exercise books, steal my personal things and money.

I've never told my mum. She wouldn't believe me. My teachers know I am bullied but never do anything to stop it. It's the end of the school year now and the teachers have complained to my mum that I often miss classes and I don't do my homework. I have no friends, nobody talks to me. I hate school.

TASK 5

TRACK 31

- A: Excuse me, madam. Do you have a few minutes spare?
 B: Yes, I do.
 A: Er... Where are you from?
 B: I'm from Manchester, England.
 A: When did you first visit Slovakia?
 B: I came two years ago at Easter.
 A: Do many people from your country visit Slovakia?
 B: No, I don't know any that have been.
 A: What is the biggest difference between your country and Slovakia?

- B: I think the way that you live. You tend to live in high-rise flats with a nice country cottage; we just live in one house and concentrate on that. And I think your gardens are very different. We have lawns and flowers; you have vegetables.
- A: Have you found the language difficult to understand?
- B: The first time I came I found it very, very difficult, but this time I'm understanding more of the speech, but I still can't say anything.
- A: Have you travelled much around Slovakia?
- B: Yes, erm... I've been to the Tatras. I've been to Bratislava, Nitra, Orava and I've also been into Poland and Hungary.
- A: Is there anything here you would like to recommend to other tourists?
- B: Yes, I think the castles.

TASK 6**TRACK 33**

- A: Have you visited many of the castles here in Slovakia?
- B: Yes, on my first visit I went to Bojnica, then this time I've been to Devín and Orava.
- A: Which has been the most interesting?
- B: Oh... Orava, I think.
- A: Why did you particularly like this castle?
- B: Well, the tour was very well done. It's a very high castle and at each level there was some form of entertainment for us. There was falconry, a theatre performance, erm... very light-hearted weapons demonstration and there was some classical music. Erm... I found it really very interesting.
- A: Do you have similar castles in your country?
- B: Well, our castles are different. Erm... They're very beautiful and they're very interesting, but they are different.
- A: If a Slovak was visiting your country, which castles would you recommend for a visit and why?
- B: Erm... Undoubtedly Edinburgh. It's built on a hill opposite the main shopping street and Edinburgh itself is a fantastic city. Erm... I think that's my favourite and it has things to offer, like the military tattoo which is on in August. That is my favourite, I think.
- Erm... But, I also think Windsor Castle is beautiful. For me it's very special because it houses Queen Mary's dolls house and I have a particular interest in things like that. It's set in beautiful countryside; it's easily accessible and it's very different from anything in Slovakia.
- A: Thank you very much for your time and I hope you enjoy the rest of your stay.
- B: Thank you.

TASK 7**TRACK 35**

- Estate Agent:** Here we are, the fifth storey, flat number six.
- Customer:** Oh! It's a long way up. Isn't there a lift?
- Estate Agent:** There is, but it is being... erm... being repaired today. Well, let's have a look inside the flat.
- Customer:** OK.

- Estate Agent:** So, what do you think?
- Customer:** Well, it doesn't seem very big. In the advertisement it was described as "a luxury penthouse suite". This looks more like a large broom cupboard.
- Estate Agent:** Well, flats round here are more expensive. This flat is much bigger than the others in the building.
- Customer:** Where's the kitchen?
- Estate Agent:** Erm... Well, there are some wonderful restaurants in the area.
- Customer:** And the bathroom?
- Estate Agent:** That is the beauty of this apartment; everything is in the same room. Lift up the bed, you'll find the bath underneath! So, are you interested in renting it?

TASK 8**TRACK 37**

- A: Hello.
- B: Hello.
- A: Come in and sit down.
- B: Thank you.
- A: Would you like a cup of coffee or anything?
- B: Umm... No, thank you.
- A: Is this your first visit to England?
- B: Yes, I've been here for three months now.
- A: And you've been working as an au pair all that time.
- B: Yes, I've been with a family in Heald Green.
- A: And why are you leaving that family?
- B: The husband of the family, Mr. Thompson, has just got a new job, erm... so, they will be moving to London next month.
- A: Did you consider going to London with them?
- B: I did, but I'm already on an English course here.
- A: Ah, your English is very good. How long have you been learning?
- B: Oh, about seven years now, but it's really improved since I've been here.
- A: Good. I don't know if the agency told you, but I've got two children that need looking after: John, aged 3 and Toby, who's just started school. Have any experience with younger children?
- B: Yes, the Thompsons have four-year-old twins and I used to look after my nephew and niece in Slovakia.
- A: How old are they?
- B: They are nine and ten now, but I've been looking after them for years.
- A: How much longer do you think you'll stay in England?
- B: I hope to stay until August and then I should be going to university.
- A: Oh really? What are you going to study?
- B: I would like to become a teacher, so I'm going to study English and German.
- A: Hmm... That's very interesting. Well, just one more thing, then. Do you think that the Thompsons will be able to provide a reference for you?
- B: Yes. Mrs. Thompson said that I should give you their phone number so that you could speak to them in person.
- A: Well, that sounds fine. Now, do you have any more questions for me?

TASK 9, 10

TRACK 39

- A: Good evening, sir. How can I help you?
 B: I'm looking for a new car.
 A: Oh! You've come to the right place. We have wonderful cars here. Erm... For instance, this is our latest model. It is the E-type Jaguar.
 B: I'm not really looking for something sporty. I'm after a family car.
 A: Well, this is quite suitable as a family car. It will take up to five people in comfort.
 B: Yeah, but I... it uses a lot of petrol.
 A: Well, yes. I suppose that is true. Well, we do have another type of Jaguar. The B-type. Now, this is not so expensive.
 B: No, no, I think Jaguar's really out of my price range. Have you got something like err... a Renault?
 A: A Renault. We do have some Renaults in the shop, but I don't think they would be suitable as a family car. Have you tried this? This is a newer model of the err... Octavia. Skoda Octavia.
 B: Erm... I was really looking for something like maybe a Peugeot or a Renault, something like... I like the French cars.
 A: Well, Renaults we do, but Peugeot we don't have. Renault is not a very reliable car for the family, we think it would be much more suitable for you now if you got... a little bit of a bigger car. How big is your family?
 B: We're just four at the moment, but who knows.
 A: Well then, four you would fit in a Renault. We have a new Renault just in. It's the brand new make, from 2001.
 B: Is it very expensive?
 A: It's not too expensive. Erm... If you take into account how good a value you will get from this car, then no, it's not expensive.
 B: How much more is it then, say, the Clio, for example?
 A: Err... The Clio is one of our cheapest cars, so err...
 B: I think that's what I'm looking for, just something cheap.
 A: Well, we can give you a Clio, I suppose. We have one out in the back car lot. It's a second hand car.

LANGUAGE IN USE

úlohy na precvičenie anglickej gramatiky

Task 11 (20 points)

Prečítajte si text o internete, v ktorom sú vynechané slová (1 – 20). Vyberte jednu zo štyroch možností, o ktorej si myslíte, že je správna. Správna je len jedna možnosť. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

THE INTERNET

The Internet presents a true revolution in ⁰ _____ (A) _____ areas of our life. It has changed the way we study, work, entertain or communicate ¹ _____ family, friends, business partners and people we do not know. It saves our time and money to find any ² _____. Nowadays, we do not have to use the phone ³ _____ to find out about departures of trains, ⁴ _____ hours or details about products or services. We do not depend on encyclopedias or dictionaries to find information. Internet search engines and online books and dictionaries are gradually replacing ⁵ _____.

It is becoming a must for companies and different institutions and organisations ⁶ _____ their own website. ⁷ _____ professions or services depend on the Internet. Via the Internet we ⁸ _____ documents, buy things, book hotels, reserve tickets, transfer our money or find life partners.

⁹ _____ days, more and more people use e-mail to communicate and send information or documents. Many Slovaks use the Internet ¹⁰ _____ a form of entertainment. They can ¹¹ _____ find articles about matters they are interested ¹² _____, download music or even films. Copyright is often misused on the Internet. Confidential material, films or music clips appear on the Internet without ¹³ _____ permission to use it freely. Chatting, joining different discussion groups and reading blogs is becoming very popular, especially ¹⁴ _____ the young.

Access to the Internet has also ¹⁵ _____ easier in our country. Most schools, companies and institutions have access to ¹⁶ _____. The high number of Inter-

net providers has decreased the ¹⁷ _____ of using the Internet. It is becoming
¹⁸ _____ that Slovaks also have access to the Internet at home.

Much discussion concerning the safety of the Internet has been going on in the
 last ¹⁹ _____ years. The safety of personal information and the safety of bank
 transfers are the most discussed topics. Many hackers get into different computer
 systems and misuse the data. They also create computer viruses which ²⁰ _____
 destroy the data completely.

0	A many	B much	C little	D such
1	A with	B about	C by	D from
2	A inform	B informations	C information	D informs
3	A more	B anymore	C any	D anywhere
4	A opened	B to open	C open	D opening
5	A their	B themselves	C them	D they
6	A had	B to have	C have	D having
7	A many	B much	C a	D such
8	A are sending	B send	C sent	D sending
9	A few	B those	C the	D these
10	A as	B like	C how	D such
11	A hardly	B ease	C easily	D easy
12	A for	B in	C on	D about
13	A these	B an	C the	D a
14	A with	B behind	C between	D among
15	A becoming	B to become	C became	D become
16	A its	B him	C it	D them
17	A sum	B prizes	C money	D prices
18	A now	B normal	C normally	D actually
19	A some	B few	C little	D past
20	A can	B should	C must	D are

Task 12 (10 points)

V texte sú vynechané slová (1 – 10). Slová v pravom stĺpci vložte do viet
 v správnom tvare. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

Example: Badminton is an ⁰ enjoyable sport for all-round
 fitness.

ENJOY

It can be played by two or four ¹ _____.
 You can start to play from a fairly low level of fitness and
² _____.

PLAY

ABLE

If you haven't played it yet, or you need more practice,
 then the ³ _____ thing is to choose part-
 ners whose level of fitness and skill is similar to your own.
⁴ _____ and weight do not matter so much.
 There are over 3 500 clubs in the UK, many of which in-
 vite ⁵ _____ to join in the fun and offer
⁶ _____ coaching.

IMPORTANCE

HIGH

BEGIN

PROFESSION

Badminton's a very ⁷ _____ game.

INTEREST

Your ⁸ _____ sports centre may have bad-
 minton facilities, so give them a call and book a court. The
 game will give you sense of ⁹ _____ and
¹⁰ _____.

LOCATION

HAPPY

RELAX

Task 13 (10 points)

Prečítajte si nasledujúci text. Slovesá v zátvorkách dajte do správneho grama-
 tického tvaru. Podľa kontextu použite buď predprítomný čas (I HAVE DONE)
 alebo jednoduchý minulý čas (I DID). Postupujte podľa príkladu.

Example: I ⁰ (live) have lived in my new house for about three years.

I used to live in a block of flats in the middle of the town, but I ¹ (find)
 _____ that extremely noisy. However, it ² (be) _____ very
 convenient – especially for evenings out. My new house ³ (make) _____
 my sister quite jealous. When I moved in, she said that she would have to find
 a place of her own. She ⁴ (live) _____ in a flat with some friends when she

⁵ (study) _____ at university. I know that my little terraced house isn't perfect. But it is all mine. I ⁶ (decorate) _____ it in a style I really like. It's very colourful. I don't like student houses with their boring white walls and old carpets. I ⁷ (read) _____ somewhere that more people are living alone now. I'm not really surprised, because I ⁸ (find out) _____ that it's much more comfortable. I don't have to worry about who forgot to do the washing up or who ⁹ (leave) _____ the bathroom in a mess. I always know that it ¹⁰ (be) _____ me!

Task 14 (20 points)

Prečítajte si text o americkom prázdninovom kempe pre deti (Camp America), v ktorom sú vynechané slová (1 – 20). Vyberte jednu zo štyroch možností, o ktorej si myslíte, že je správna. Správna je len jedna možnosť. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

CAMP AMERICA

Camp America provides American children ⁰ _____ (C) _____ a productive way of spending their summer vacation. It also provides a great opportunity ¹ _____ employment for students from all the world. Each year around seven ² _____ children are taken care of in over 10 000 camps across the USA. Most of ³ _____ camps have permanent buildings for sleeping, eating and theatrical performances. Workers in the camps ⁴ _____ take on a variety of roles. Counsellors are workers ⁵ _____ entertain the children. Specialist counsellors are responsible for such activities ⁶ _____ horse-riding, drama, tennis or crafts. It is ⁷ _____ but rewarding work, with the counsellors living in ⁸ _____ same cabins as the children and strict rules (smoking and alcohol are not ⁹ _____). The role requires someone who is patient, ¹⁰ _____ and good with children. There ¹¹ _____ also support roles, such as cooking and cleaning – Camppower. The work is long and hard (up to 12 hours ¹² _____ day), but they have an opportunity to learn new skills. For many, no ¹³ _____ is required. There are also a number of specific roles ¹⁴ _____ require some experience, such as car maintenance ¹⁵ _____ horse care. The Camppower workers have a little more spend-

ing time and more free evenings ¹⁶ _____ the general counsellors. You need to be over 18 to ¹⁷ _____, speak fluent English and be ¹⁸ _____ fit. Workers are expected to ¹⁹ _____ on any date in June and be ready ²⁰ _____ work a minimum of nine weeks.

0	A of	B for	C with	D because
1	A for	B in	C with	D on
2	A millions	B million	C million	D milions
3	A most	B a	C these	D so
4	A can	B do	C have	D had
5	A who	B which	C with	D such
6	A for	B like	C than	D as
7	A hardly	B hard	C easy	D light
8	A with	B a	C the	D an
9	A fined	B forbidden	C permitted	D prohibited
10	A understandable	B understanding	C understood	D understand
11	A some	B a	C is	D are
12	A in	B a	C on	D with
13	A expectation	B experience	C expert	D experiment
14	A which	B who	C with	D such
15	A that	B because	C without	D and
16	A as	B that	C than	D like
17	A application	B apply	C applicant	D applying
18	A good	B well	C physical	D physically
19	A go	B arrive	C live	D leave
20	A to	B for	C of	D with

Task 15 (10 points)

Prečítajte si nasledujúci text. Slovesá v zátvorkách dajte do správneho gramatického tvaru. Podľa kontextu použite buď jednoduchý prítomný čas (I DO), jednoduchý minulý čas (I DID), priebehový minulý čas (I WAS DOING) alebo pasívum jednoduchého minulého času (...WAS/WERE DONE). Postupujte podľa príkladu.

Example: When I ⁰(move) moved to England, I was surprised at all the differences in the customs.

Christmas ¹(be) _____ a great shock to me. When I ²(go) _____ out to the shops, I couldn't find any live fish anywhere, instead all the shops were stocked with turkeys. Christmas Eve was disappointing for me. I ³(wait) _____ for everything to happen on the 24th December, but no one seemed to be preparing anything. The family ⁴(decorate) _____ their Christmas Tree at the beginning of December. I ⁵(sit) _____ in the kitchen while the family was doing their last minute Christmas shopping. I was waiting to start cooking the Christmas dinner. My presents ⁶(prepare) _____ under the Christmas tree.

Finally, the mother of the family ⁷(explain) _____ – in Britain everyone ⁸(open) _____ their presents on 25th December in the morning and then have a Christmas lunch together. If I ⁹(come) _____ next year, I will be better prepared. I can say that I ¹⁰(prefer) _____ our customs.

Task 16 (20 points)

Prečítajte si nasledujúci text. Slovesá v zátvorkách dajte do správneho gramatického tvaru. Podľa kontextu použite buď jednoduchý prítomný čas (I DO), jednoduchý minulý čas (I DID) alebo priebehový minulý čas (I WAS DOING). Postupujte podľa príkladu.

NICK'S FIRST JOB

Example: Hi! My name ⁰(be) is Nick.

I ¹(finish) _____ grammar school two years ago. I ²(want) _____ to study at university but they ³(not/accept) _____

me. So, I ⁴(go) _____ to the job centre to be registered as unemployed. I ⁵(look) _____ for a job everywhere. It ⁶(be) _____ time-consuming and also very depressing. Finally, I ⁷(find) _____ a job as a secretary in a Dutch company.

I ⁸(make) _____ coffee and welcomed clients. My friends ⁹(make) _____ fun of me. I ¹⁰(have) _____ to say that it ¹¹(be) _____ a difficult time for me.

One day when I ¹²(arrange) _____ a business trip for a colleague, the boss ¹³(call) _____ me into his office. He ¹⁴(tell) _____ me that he ¹⁵(look) _____ for a new sales manager and ¹⁶(ask) _____ me if I ¹⁷(want) _____ the job. I couldn't ¹⁸(believe) _____ it. Of course, I ¹⁹(take) _____ the job.

I ²⁰(like) _____ it a lot. So far, I'm happy being who I am.

Task 17 (20 points)

Prečítajte si text, The Leprechaun, o škriatkovi z írkej mytológie. V texte sú vynechané slová (1 – 20). Vyberte jednu zo štyroch možností, o ktorej si myslíte, že je správna. Správna je len jedna možnosť. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

THE LEPRECHAUN

The leprechaun is a traditional figure ⁰____(D)_____ Irish mythology. It has some unusual features. To begin with, it ¹_____ only male. He varies in height ²_____ 60 centimetres to 90 centimetres and dresses mostly in green: green trousers, green jacket or shirt, green hat and black shoes. He is usually quite ³_____, with a white beard.

⁴_____ leprechaun lives underground in small caves and only comes out ⁵_____ two special reasons. The first is ⁶_____ play tricks on people, usually by hiding ⁷_____. This is why when many ⁸_____ lose something, they blame it on leprechauns. When my father ⁹_____ find his car keys in the morning, he often said: "The *bloody* leprechauns have taken my keys again!". The other reason for coming out into the open is to wash their gold. Every

leprechaun has his own pot of gold which gives him ¹⁰ _____ powers. When you take a leprechaun's pot of gold from him, he must grant you three wishes before ¹¹ _____ it back – but be careful as the leprechauns will still try to trick you with your wishes. ¹² _____ it rains, the leprechaun takes out his pot of gold and washes it in the rain. ¹³ _____, he lets it dry in the sun, and when the sun reflects back into the sky, ¹⁴ _____ causes a rainbow. This is ¹⁵ _____ many parents explain the rainbow phenomenon to ¹⁶ _____ children, and it is often possible, after a storm, to see a group of children in wellington boots and raincoats marching across fields looking ¹⁷ _____ the end of the rainbow and a pot of gold.

Leprechauns are bringers of good luck and to see one means luck for the rest of ¹⁸ _____ life. Most Irish people have a leprechaun symbol in some shape or form – usually ¹⁹ _____ ceramic figure, a stuffed toy, a picture or a decorated ornament. I, ²⁰ _____, have a mug with a leprechaun motif and the motto "May the luck of the Irish be always with you!"

0	A with	B from	C on	D of
1	A can	B is	C has	D does
2	A to	B by	C from	D of
3	A looks	B old-looking	C looking	D look
4	A These	B The	C Those	D A
5	A to	B because	C from	D for
6	A too	B for	C to	D –
7	A something	B somewhere	C someone	D some
8	A figures	B people	C person	D persons
9	A shouldn't	B can't	C couldn't	D wouldn't
10	A any	B magician	C magic	D magical
11	A give	B giving	C get	D getting
12	A When	B If	C How	D After
13	A Never	B Then	C When	D If
14	A Its	B they	C it	D he
15	A why	B how	C like	D that
16	A some	B these	C their	D them

17	A like	B from	C for	D after
18	A a	B their	C one	D one's
19	A those	B an	C the	D a
20	A my	B mine	C myself	D me

Task 18 (10 points)

V texte sú vynechané slová (1 – 10). Slová v pravom stĺpci vložte do viet v správnom tvare. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

Example: I have still not finished my ⁰ studies.

My cousin, Pete, ¹ _____ from university last year. I was really quite surprised that he managed to pass all his ² _____ because I never saw him studying. He ³ _____ applied for postgraduate study, but unfortunately he was not ⁴ _____. He even considered trying some ⁵ _____ universities, but they would be too expensive. Instead he has been looking for some ⁶ _____, but unfortunately, he still has not found any. He has sent out lots of ⁷ _____ letters, so I hope that he will find something ⁸ _____ soon.

It is quite ⁹ _____ for me because I should be finishing my ¹⁰ _____ next year and I will be in the same position as him.

STUDENT
GRADUATION
EXAMINE
RECENT
SUCCESS
FOREIGNER
EMPLOY
APPLY
INTEREST
WORRY
EDUCATE

Task 19 (10 points)

Prečítajte si nasledujúci text. Slovesá v zátvorkách dajte do správneho gramatického tvaru. Podľa kontextu použite buď jednoduchý prítomný čas (I DO) alebo jednoduchý minulý čas (I DID). Postupujte podľa príkladu.

Example: I normally ⁰(wake up) wake up just before seven o'clock.

That ¹(give) _____ me just enough time to have a shower and breakfast before my 7.45 train. I ²(hate) _____ travelling to work by train. It's always very overcrowded and I only occasionally get a seat. Last week I ³(catch) _____ the 7.15 train which was less crowded. To be honest, I ⁴(not, have) _____ the discipline to wake up at 6.30 every morning!

Usually, everyone else is in the office before me, but I normally finish later. A month ago, we ⁵(start) _____ a difficult advertising campaign. The office ⁶(be) _____ in the centre of Birmingham so I often ⁷(go) _____ out for lunch with my colleagues. I ⁸(begin) _____ working for Abbott and Abbott two years ago. I ⁹(feel) _____ that I am bored of the routine. That is the reason why I have decided to find a new job. I ¹⁰(hope) _____ that I will find one.

Task 20 (8 points)

V texte sú vynechané slová (1 – 8). Slová v pravom stĺpci vložte do viet v správnom tvare. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

Example: Thirty per cent of ⁰ Americans aged four to thirty bite their nails.

¹ _____ show that nail-biting can cause many ² _____ problems connected with teeth, such as ³ _____ of the tooth and trauma to the gums. Spread of skin ⁴ _____ from the hands to the mouth is also very ⁵ _____.

Tommy Hopkins, a nine-year-old boy, made complaints to his dentist about the ⁶ _____ in his gums. During a check-up his dentist noticed that Tommy had a ⁷ _____ nail-biting habit. The dentist then explored the swollen area in his mouth and found a piece of nail stuck in the gums. Certainly these cases add scientific ⁸ _____ to parents when they say "Don't bite your nails."

AMERICA

STUDY

HEALTHY

LOSE

INFECT

DANGER

PAINFUL

SERIOUSLY

IMPORTANT

READING TASKS

práca s textom

Task 21 (7 points)

Prečítajte si krátky príbeh Jany, v ktorom chýbajú časti viet. Rozhodnite sa, ktoré časti viet z možností A – I sa do textu najlepšie hodia. Každú časť vety môžete použiť len raz, pričom jedno spojenie nemožno do textu vôbec doplniť. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

Example: It was my dream 0 – I.

I wanted to go there to visit two friends of mine. They have been working there as au pairs for six months. My friends advised me to fly **1** – _____. That was the best way for me to travel. I had never flown before, so I was quite nervous.

Whenever my family goes on holiday, we always forget to take something with us. Once, my brother forgot to take his camera. Then, my grandparents **2** – _____. This time I forgot my passport. When I arrived at the airport, the woman at the check-in desk asked me for the passport. I couldn't **3** – _____. I had to leave the queue and then phone home. My mum answered and told me that I had left the passport on the hall table. Luckily, she had asked Aunt Lucy to bring it to me at the airport. She gave me **4** – _____. Just as I was dialling the number, a large customs officer tapped me on the shoulder. I turned round, quite frightened. He asked me **5** – _____. I was going to answer when I noticed that he was having my passport in his hand! Aunt Lucy was standing just behind him and smiling like an idiot. Aunt Lucy went with me back to the queue at the check-in desk. I was really nervous, **6** – _____. After getting my ticket, I saw that I only had a few minutes left. I said goodbye to Aunt Lucy and ran up to the security control. The woman at the desk took my ticket and **7** – _____. "Of course", I answered with a smile.

- A) if I had lost something
- B) forgot their bus tickets
- C) my aunt's mobile number
- D) find it anywhere
- E) asked: "Do you have your passport?"

- F) from Bratislava to Copenhagen
- G) so I was happy that she was there with me
- H) had no money with her
- I) to go to Denmark

Task 22 (8 points)

Prečítajte si dialóg medzi Luciou a Máriou a rozhodnite, ktoré tvrdenia (1 – 8) sú pravdivé (A – true) a ktoré nepravdivé (B – false). Uvedte aj číslo riadku, podľa ktorého ste sa rozhodli pre vašu odpoveď. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

1. *Lucy*: I finally got the invitation for the interview. I can't wait to go to London.
2. You can't imagine how excited I am about it.
3. *Mary*: Wait, did you really apply for that job as an au pair? Are you sure about
4. going to London? Sorry, I just thought that you weren't interested in that job anymore.
5. I am really surprised by your decision.
6. Why are you going?
7. *Lucy*: Well, I simply ran out of money. I can't live on the money I get here.
8. *Mary*: OK. I am not surprised by that. But have you ever thought of the risks of
9. being an au pair? Family life in Britain is different from ours.
10. *Lucy*: I can't think of anything that will stop me from going.
11. *Mary*: Are you sure that you can take care of small children? Lucy, listen to me.
12. You will be responsible for them. It's not easy.
13. *Lucy*: Look, it's really important to me! I insist on going.
14. *Mary*: I am really sorry for shouting. I'm just worried about you. Please, don't go.

0.	Lucy wants to go to work to London very much.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> A (true)	<input type="checkbox"/> B (false)	Which line (1 – 14) supports your answer?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1
1.	Mary has finally been invited for the interview.	<input type="checkbox"/> A (true)	<input type="checkbox"/> B (false)	Which line (1 – 14) supports your answer?	<input type="checkbox"/>
2.	Mary was not surprised about Lucy's decision to go to London.	<input type="checkbox"/> A (true)	<input type="checkbox"/> B (false)	Which line (1 – 14) supports your answer?	<input type="checkbox"/>
3.	Lucy wants to work in London because she has no money now.	<input type="checkbox"/> A (true)	<input type="checkbox"/> B (false)	Which line (1 – 14) supports your answer?	<input type="checkbox"/>
4.	Mary is surprised about Lucy's money situation.	<input type="checkbox"/> A (true)	<input type="checkbox"/> B (false)	Which line (1 – 14) supports your answer?	<input type="checkbox"/>
5.	Mary is worried about Lucy because family life in Britain is different.	<input type="checkbox"/> A (true)	<input type="checkbox"/> B (false)	Which line (1 – 14) supports your answer?	<input type="checkbox"/>
6.	Mary is explaining Lucy that looking after children is hard.	<input type="checkbox"/> A (true)	<input type="checkbox"/> B (false)	Which line (1 – 14) supports your answer?	<input type="checkbox"/>
7.	Mary apologised for her behaviour.	<input type="checkbox"/> A (true)	<input type="checkbox"/> B (false)	Which line (1 – 14) supports your answer?	<input type="checkbox"/>
8.	Mary is trying to persuade Lucy not to go.	<input type="checkbox"/> A (true)	<input type="checkbox"/> B (false)	Which line (1 – 14) supports your answer?	<input type="checkbox"/>

Task 23 (5 points)

Prečítajte si text o Vianociach a vianočných nákupoch. Na základe prečítaného textu doplňte vety 1 – 5 jedným slovom z textu. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

Christmas is said to be a time of peace. Everybody finds their own meaning with-in it. Some people look forward to the Christian spirit of Christmas, others to eating delicious food, watching television and simply relaxing. However, the pre-Christmas period is not very peaceful. People seem to go crazy buying presents for their friends and families. All the sellers push their goods in different ways – through TV commercials, magazine advertisements or on billboards. It is especially difficult for parents of young children. In the months before Christmas the adverts tell the children exactly what they should ask for from Father Christmas. With all these 'suggestions', parents hurry out to spend their hard-earned money. Supermarkets are filled with Christmas decorations, toys and clothes. Everything sells well, even if the quality isn't high. Some people don't care. They will buy anything if the price is good enough. Of course, there is an alternative to these shops – Christmas fairs. There are crowds of people there, but there is also a special Christmas atmosphere.

Example: The time before Christmas is not peaceful.

1. The sellers _____ their goods through advertising.
2. The adverts tell _____ what to ask for from Father Christmas.
3. Parents _____ their money on presents from the adverts.
4. People don't _____ to buy goods of low quality.
5. Christmas markets are full of people who want to experience Christmas _____.

Task 24 (7 points)

Prečítajte si text o 1. apríli, v ktorom chýbajú časti viet. Rozhodnite sa, ktoré časti viet z možností A – I sa do textu najlepšie hodia. Každú časť vety môžete použiť len raz, pričom jedno spojenie nemožno do textu vôbec doplniť. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

Example: The early history of April Fools Day 0 – A.

It is thought that 1 – _____. In 1582, Pope Gregory introduced a new calendar which became known as the Gregorian calendar (and is still used today). The new

calendar moved 2 – _____. However, news travelled slowly in those days and so 3 – _____. These people were called "April fools" by the rest of the population. In the eighteenth century, the celebration spread to Britain and from there to 4 – _____. Nowadays, it is an international festival of fun. The kinds of jokes which people play on April Fools Day range from the very simple – sugar in the saltcellar or 5 – _____. More organised jokes, such as exchanging classrooms, 6 – _____. One of the best-known and complex practical jokes was a BBC programme which showed "spaghetti farmers" harvesting spaghetti from "spaghetti trees" and 7 – _____.

- | | |
|---|--|
| A) is not totally clear | F) many of its colonies and former colonies |
| B) resetting clocks and alarms | G) the start of the new year from April 1 st to January 1 st |
| C) many people continued to celebrate the new year in April | H) laying it in the sun to dry |
| D) the "celebration" began in France in the sixteenth century | I) to confuse teachers are also common |
| E) when people make fun | |

Task 25 (5 points)

Prečítajte si text o tom, prečo ľudia menej čítajú knihy ako kedysi a rozhodnite, ktoré tvrdenia (1 – 5) sú pravdivé (A – true) a ktoré nepravdivé (B – false). Uvedte aj odsek (a – e), podľa ktorého ste sa rozhodli pre vašu odpoveď. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

- | | |
|----|---|
| a) | Slovaks do not buy many books. There are two main reasons for this. The first one is that books are getting more and more expensive and people cannot afford to buy many of them. This also leads to illegal photocopying, mainly among students who often copy textbooks. Slovak libraries lack finances to be able to provide better services and a wider range of books to readers. |
| b) | The second reason why people in Slovakia and other countries do not buy many books is that they do not read so much anymore. There are several reasons why there is a crisis of reading nowadays. People do not look for information in books (such as encyclopedias or textbooks) as much as they used to in the past. They need to save as much time as possible and therefore they prefer to look up the information on the Internet. Instead of reading good fiction, they watch films. |

- | | |
|----|---|
| c) | Reading a book takes days or weeks, watching a film just one or two hours. People do not need to concentrate so much; they do not need to imagine things. Everything is ready for them on the screen. Moreover, teenagers prefer the interactive virtual reality of computer games. They participate in the game, take action, feel what the heroes feel. Adults read more and more magazines because it takes less time and concentration than reading a book. |
| d) | To change this negative trend it is very important to develop a good relationship towards reading from a very young age. When a positive relationship is developed, books enrich our lives. We read for pleasure, we train our imagination. Books make us think, amuse us and give answers to some questions. A good book is also a pleasant way to escape from the real world. When we read a lot, we improve our vocabulary too. People who read enough, express themselves better. |
| e) | Some people think that books will die out one day. They say that everything will be read in electronic form and people will have less and less time to read books. Others argue that reading is a hobby for many people and books are a part of the cultural heritage of every nation. That is why they think that the book will stop to exist. |

- | | |
|----|--|
| 0. | Students make photocopies of textbooks because they do not have enough money to buy them.
A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – e) supports your answer? a |
| 1. | Slovak libraries have enough money to offer different books to readers.
A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – e) supports your answer? <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. | Nowadays, people read less because it is a time-consuming activity.
A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – e) supports your answer? <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. | Reading a book does not require concentration and imagination.
A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – e) supports your answer? <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. | Reading books develops thinking, imagination and vocabulary.
A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – e) supports your answer? <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. | Some people think that books will not exist in the future.
A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – e) supports your answer? <input type="checkbox"/> |

Task 26 (7 points)

Prečítajte si text o japonských školách, v ktorom chýbajú časti viet. Rozhodnite sa, ktoré časti viet z možností A – I sa do textu najlepšie hodia. Každú časť vety môžete použiť len raz, pričom jedno spojenie nemožno do textu vôbec doplniť. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

Example: Slovakia and Japan 0 – G.

This is true for politics, culture, religion 1 – _____. The differences are seen immediately when you enter a Japanese classroom. The students look neat and tidy. They all wear 2 – _____. It is totally different from the Slovak schools where there is no school uniform as such. The system is so strict in Japan that students are not allowed to dye their hair (and are sent home if they do so). They cannot wear watches or earrings, and even have to have standard schoolbags. They cannot even 3 – _____. It will take you a long time to find a cleaner in a Japanese school. You can find one among the students themselves! After school, the students spend fifteen to thirty minutes 4 – _____. Everything from taking out rubbish and scrubbing the floors to cleaning the toilets (the least favourite job). The fact that students are responsible for the cleaning means that 5 – _____. Most of the graffiti that is there is written in pencil so that it can easily be cleaned off. The students all study extremely hard. They know that if they fail at school, they will not get a second chance in life. Just a few bad marks can mean the difference between a high-powered executive job and life on the factory floor. The examinations are very difficult and 6 – _____. They only get six weeks of summer holidays to recover. Does all this mean that the students get a better education? Well, they are among the best in mathematics and science. When it comes to languages like English 7 – _____. They are taught to remember words and phrases by heart instead of using them in communication.

- A) there is very little graffiti in the schools.
- B) but also for the education system.
- C) the students are not good enough.
- D) travelled to school by bus.

- E) cleaning the whole building.
- F) exactly the same uniform.
- G) are very different countries.
- H) stressful for the students.
- I) carry money.

Task 27 (5 points)

Prečítajte si text o možnostiach a spôsoboch cestovania Slovákov do zahraničia. Na základe prečítaného textu doplňte vety 1 – 5 jedným slovom z textu. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

The average Slovak family tries to go on holidays at least once a year. Some prefer winter holidays and go to Slovak or Austrian ski resorts to ski. Most people travel during the summer holidays because the weather conditions are usually favourable and children do not go to school. Some people address a travel agency and choose a trip from a catalogue. The agency usually arranges everything – travel, accommodation, insurance and a travel guide. The most frequent summer holiday destinations of Slovaks are Croatia, Egypt, Greece, Italy, Spain, Tunisia, or Thailand. Last minute or first moment offers have become extremely popular and people use them a lot. However, some Slovaks prefer to travel on their own and do not need a travel agency to make arrangements for them. They book accommodation and travel on the Internet and study everything necessary before the departure. They are called *backpackers* and they usually get to know the country better because they are in closer contact with its people. Travelling is a lifetime passion for many people in Slovakia. *Globetrotters* (world travellers) and travel journalists spend most of their time travelling seeking adventure and knowledge.

Example: Most Slovak families travel for summer holidays because of good weather.

1. Some people _____ travel agencies to arrange the trip for them.
2. Last minute and first moment trips are very _____.
3. Some people prefer to _____ alone.
4. _____ organise their trips on their own.
5. _____ look for adventure.

Task 28 (5 points)

Prečítajte si text o brušných tancoch a rozhodnite, ktoré tvrdenia (1 – 5) sú pravdivé (A – true) a ktoré nepravdivé (B – false). Uvedte aj odsek (a – e), podľa ktorého ste sa rozhodli pre vašu odpoveď. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

- a) Belly dancing is the oldest form of dance. It has roots in all ancient cultures from India to the Middle East. According to some dancers, it originated in Egypt. It developed through the influence of many different cultures. Belly dance has traditional associations with both religious and erotic elements.
- b) It is wrong to say that belly dancing is danced to entertain men. In the past, this ritual was performed for other women – especially during parties preparing a young woman for marriage and childbirth. Even today, the presence of men is not permitted in many countries. For Saudi women, the dance is sacred and it cannot be watched by men at all. Many Middle Eastern countries forbid women to perform the dance in public. During the 1950's, belly dancing was illegal in Egypt. Nowadays, it can be danced with one condition that dancers do not show their stomachs.
- c) Belly dance is designed for the female body, with an emphasis on hip moves and chest moves. It is a dance characterised by smooth movements alternated with shaking and shimmy type moves. During dancing, different parts of the body are isolated. It is danced barefoot to feel connection between the dancer, her expression and Mother Earth.
- d) Belly dancing costumes are colourful and decorated. The dancers wear finger cymbals and belts made of coins which in the past expressed the family's wealth. Other interesting accessories used during the dance are swords, snakes and huge candelabras with flaming candles.
- e) Nowadays, the popularity of belly dancing is growing. Belly dance festivals, workshops and seminars attract large audiences of interested men and women. Many dancers now study the art form of the dance. They travel to the Middle East and elsewhere to learn it. In the present, belly dance is enjoyed for its artistry, ethnicity, beauty, healthy eroticism and fun.

0.	Belly dance is a religious dance of Egypt. A (true) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> B (false) Which paragraph (a – e) supports your answer? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
1.	Belly dance is danced for men. A (true) <input type="checkbox"/> B (false) Which paragraph (a – e) supports your answer? <input type="checkbox"/>
2.	Belly dance can be danced for public in many countries of the Middle East. A (true) <input type="checkbox"/> B (false) Which paragraph (a – e) supports your answer? <input type="checkbox"/>
3.	Smooth and shaking movements are typical for belly dancing. A (true) <input type="checkbox"/> B (false) Which paragraph (a – e) supports your answer? <input type="checkbox"/>
4.	Dancers dance in colourful costumes with interesting accessories. A (true) <input type="checkbox"/> B (false) Which paragraph (a – e) supports your answer? <input type="checkbox"/>
5.	Nowadays, belly dance is becoming very popular. A (true) <input type="checkbox"/> B (false) Which paragraph (a – e) supports your answer? <input type="checkbox"/>

Task 29 (5 points)

Prečítajte si text o mobilných telefónoch. Na základe prečítaného textu doplňte vety 1 – 5 jedným až dvoma slovami z textu. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

The amount of people using mobile phones has rapidly increased, especially in Eastern Europe. Mobile phones have become either the symbol of comfortable, quick communication or fashion, mainly among young people. On the other hand, a recent survey indicates growing fear of radiation from using mobile phones. People are worried that their everyday usage might cause diseases, such as cancer.

The mobile phones are not radioactive as such, but they emit radio waves, just as other electronic equipment does, when they are switched on. However, mobiles are held against the head for a long time which might be harmful to our brain. However, there is still a lack of evidence to prove this.

If you are concerned about it, here are some precautions you can take:

- Do not spend hours on the mobile phone.
- If you have regular headaches, stop using your mobile phone for a while to see if that helps.
- Send messages instead of calling. It will save your money too.

Some people advise using hands free kits (you carry your mobile phone in your pocket, listen to the earpiece and talk on a tiny microphone). However, the Consumer Association thinks that having tiny earpieces may even increase the level of radio emissions because the wire acts as an extra antenna. Hopefully, the wireless earpieces will reduce all risks and will guarantee safe and "healthy" calling.

Example: Mobile phones are fashionable among young people.

1. Using mobiles can be dangerous for our _____.
2. The mobile phones are not _____; it is the radio waves.
3. When mobiles are switched on, they _____ radio waves.
4. Sending _____ will save your money.
5. It is believed that using the _____ instead of mobiles will guarantee safe calling and will prevent health problems connected with using mobiles.

Task 30 (6 points)

Prečítajte si text o žralokoch a rozhodnite, ktoré tvrdenia (1 – 6) sú pravdivé (A – true) a ktoré nepravdivé (B – false). Uveďte aj odsek (a – f), podľa ktorého ste sa rozhodli pre vašu odpoveď. Postupujte podľa príkladu.

a)	Sharks belong to the worlds oldest creatures. They first appeared 400 million years ago and became highly developed over the next 200 million years. There are over 300 species in the world, ranging in size from less than 30 centimetres to over 15 metres in length.
b)	They are an amazing example of evolution. They are efficient killing machines, which can hunt systematically and skilfully. Their teeth re-grow when they are knocked out. They have a simple but highly effective immune system – sharks never get cancer.
c)	Sharks are seen as a store of medical miracles. There is no careful research to discover what medical advances are locked up in their bodies. They are killed for their body parts and other unknown reasons.
d)	They are also being killed for their meat, skin and jaws (which can sell for thousands of pounds to collectors). Tens of millions of sharks are fished each year and a similar number are accidentally caught when fishing for other fish species. This is why there are 80 % less sharks.
e)	This can have a negative effect on sea life. Sharks are part of a finely-balanced eco-system and without them there could be population explosions of other sea creatures. For example, in Australia a low number of sharks was the reason of huge increase in octopus numbers which caused that local shrimp catch was devastated.
f)	It is true that people are killed in shark attacks, but these cases are extremely rare. There is much more chance that sharks could save lives through their proven medical properties.

0.	Sharks appeared 200 million years ago. A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – f) supports your answer? a
1.	Sharks are systematic and skilful hunters. A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – f) supports your answer? <input type="checkbox"/>
2.	Sharks' immune system is weak. A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – f) supports your answer? <input type="checkbox"/>
3.	There are tens of millions of sharks caught by accident. A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – f) supports your answer? <input type="checkbox"/>

4.	Without sharks, there would be more sea creatures in the sea. A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – f) supports your answer? <input type="checkbox"/>
5.	In Australia, reduced amount of sharks caused more shrimps in the sea. A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – f) supports your answer? <input type="checkbox"/>
6.	The shark attacks on people are not very frequent. A (true) B (false) Which paragraph (a – f) supports your answer? <input type="checkbox"/>

WRITING TASKS

úlohy na precvičenie písania

Task 31 (20 points)

Write a story about summer holidays that you have spent with your friends at the seaside. Write about:

- what you did there
- what happened (positive and negative events)
- whether you liked it or not.

► See model story on page 328 ◀

Task 32 (20 points)

An exchange student will soon stay with you and your family. Write a letter to him/her about:

- your flat or house
- your mother
- your father.

► See model letter on page 329 ◀

Task 33 (20 points)

Write an e-mail to your friend and ask him to go out on a trip with you. Describe:

- where and when you will go
- how you will get there
- what you will do there.

► See model e-mail on page 330 ◀

Task 34 (20 points)

Write a short description of your hometown. Describe:

- its size, population and location
- interesting places to visit
- what you like and dislike about it.

► See model description on page 331 ◀

Task 35 (20 points)

Is the Internet a Must? Write a short composition about this topic. Write about:

- what people use the Internet for
- the advantages of using the Internet
- the negative impacts the Internet has on people
- your personal opinion on the usefulness of the Internet.

► See model composition on page 332 ◀

Task 36 (20 points)

Write a report about a volleyball competition that was held at your school. You were one of the players. Describe:

- the participants
- the development of the game
- the final score
- your feelings about the event.

► See model report on page 333 ◀

Hodnotenie písomnej formy internej maturitnej skúšky

V písomnom prejave sa hodnotí:

obsah (5 bodov)

Najprv si rozmyslite, aký slohový útvar idete písať, pre koho je určený a akým štýlom sa taký útvar píše. Do slohu zahrňte všetky body zadania a približne dodržte predpísaný počet slov (počítajú sa aj členy, predložky a pod.). Použite fantáziu a tvorivosť – obsah nemusí byť pravdivý. Pri prvom čítaní hotového textu sa zamerajte na obsah.

členenie a stavba textu (5 bodov)

Text by sa mal členiť na úvod, jadro a záver a mal by byť rozdelený do odsekov.

gramatika – morfológia, syntax, pravopis (5 bodov)

Dodržiavajte jednotnú britskú alebo americkú pravopisnú normu. Píšte čitateľne. Pri druhom čítaní hotového textu sa zamerajte na gramatiku a pravopis.

slovná zásoba (5 bodov)

Používajte overenú slovnú zásobu, ktorú poznáte. Často sa opakujúce slová nahraďte synonymami.

WRITING – EXAMPLES

Príbeh (Story telling)

Pri písaní príbehu je tvojou úlohou prerozprávať príbeh pútavým spôsobom. Nezapomni, že každá situácia musí byť vsadená do kontextu, preto opíš celé dianie a jeho následky.

Ak opisuješ viac situácií, snaž sa dodržať logický sled a udalosti navzájom prepoji.

Rozprávanie môžeš ukončiť vlastným názorom, v ktorom okomentuješ celé dianie. Práve záver zanecháva v čitateľovi najsilnejší dojem.

Summer – Time to Relax?

Last summer, I found a last-minute-holiday offer to Majorca. There was no need to wait for anything better because everything seemed ideal, so I called my friends Martin and Adam to join me. They were very pleased and agreed to go with me.

The flight from Bratislava airport was on time and smooth. We were looking forward to new experiences on the island. And one of them happened after the arrival when Adam didn't find his luggage. We had to report it and then hoped it would arrive later. However, they didn't find it, and Adam has never seen his suitcase again.

Of course, we tried to help him as much as we could. We lent him our clothes and also bought him a nice T-shirt. It was a present for his birthday, which we celebrated in a lovely restaurant very close to the beach.

The food there was great. We wanted to stay there much longer, but it was impossible because the next morning we travelled to the north of Majorca. However, a bad luck continued because Martin got sick. It seemed he had eaten something wrong at the restaurant. He got fever and kept vomiting. Of course, we couldn't go anywhere because someone had to stay with him.

Later, when Martin's health improved, we travelled a little bit. We enjoyed our trips a lot. In spite of the bad luck we had in Majorca, we think that the time we spent there was great.

V príbehu zvyčajne opisuješ dej, ktorý sa udial, preto pri písaní používaj minulé časy a súseďnosť časov. Keďže ide o neformálny spôsob komunikácie, môžeš používať hovorový jazyk a skrátené tvary. Zo slovných druhov majú najširšie zastúpenie slovesá, podstatné a prídavné mená.

Dej príbehu musí mať jasné smerovanie. Zvyčajne sa používa chronologický sled informácií s využitím časových príslovičiek, napr. last, later, next, at the same time, then, a pod.

Praktické rady: Pred písaním si premysli hlavnú myšlienku deja a snaž sa ju dodržať. Príbeh by sa mal odohrávať v krátkom čase (týždeň, deň, hodina...) a počet osôb, o ktorých píšeš, by nemal byť vyšší ako tri. Text by mal čitateľa upútať od začiatku, t.j. úvodu. Pri písaní sa zameraj na hlavné dianie a vynechaj nezaujímavé detaily, tým vytvoríš priestor pre čitateľovu predstavivosť.

Súkromný list – opis miesta a osoby (Personal letter – Description of place and people)

Adresa na Slovensku začína názvom ulice, po ktorom nasleduje číslo domu. O riadok nižšie sa uvádza PSČ a mesto.

Bernolákova 17
850 11 Zvolen
Slovakia

Dátum je zarovnaný na rovnakú pozíciu ako adresa odosielateľa.

June 12th 2008

Dear Justin,

Pred oslovením a po ňom vynechaj voľný riadok. Na koniec oslovenia napíš čiarku.

Thank you very much for your letter. I must say we all are looking forward to having you as an exchange student here with us. We hope you'll enjoy it too.

Ak odpovedáš na list, v úvode sa zaň poďakuj a snaž sa zodpovedať na otázky z listu.

Our house isn't very big but quite new. We moved in about five years ago. It's situated close to the city centre, but there's no heavy traffic close to us. The house has four bedrooms, a living room, a kitchen and two bathrooms. It may seem big, but the rooms aren't very spacious. And don't worry, one bedroom will be only yours.

Pri opise miesta si zvol, ktorú priestorovú líniu chceš dodržať: zvnútra smerom von, od hora nadol, z jednej strany na druhú...

My mother, Laura, isn't very tall; she's quite thin and smiles a lot. She likes to work around the house. We have a small garden in our backyard where she grows some vegetables but mostly flowers. Mom says it is the best hobby a woman can have.

Pri opise osôb ich najprv predstav mienom, povedz v akom ste príbuzenskom vzťahu. Ak opisuješ niekoho cudzieho, mal/-a by si uviesť, ako ste sa zoznámili. Ďalej pokračuj v opise fyzického vzhľadu a postupne prejdí na charakterové črty. Používaj veľa rozmanitých prídavných mien.

My father, Roman, works for an international company, so he travels abroad very often. He looks serious, but people who know him say he's very gentle and nice. I can agree with it. Whenever he can, he tries to spend as much time with us as possible. In summer, he always takes us for a holiday. I am sure you'll like him.

So, if you want more information, just ask me. I think we'll have a great time together because I take you as my brother whom I never had.

Best wishes,

Peter

Na záver vyjadrí úprimné potešenie súvisiace s nasledujúcou korešpondenciou, spoločným stretnutím a pod. Po zdvorilostnej fráze, napr. *Best wishes, With love, See you soon* a pod. sa podpíše.

Pri opise sa zameraj aj na to, ako sa typické charakterové črty prejavujú. Ak chceš o niekom povedať niečo negatívne, postupuj opatrne a vyberaj jazykové prostriedky, ktorými zmierniš výpoveď, napr. "John is a selfish person" nahraď slovným spojením "John seems to be a selfish person". V prípade, že píšeš o stretnutí s novou osobou, opíš čo tomu predchádzalo, ako sa stretnutie udialo a vyvíjalo. Zahrň do opisu aj prostredie, pocity a pod, napr. "It was a very cold morning and I was walking down the street listening to the rain when..."

Súkromný e-mail – pozvanie (Personal e-mail – invitation)

Na rozdiel od listu, v elektronickej pošte sa používa štandardizovaná emailová adresa. Snaž sa na svoj e-mail upútať lákavým predmetom.

Po obsahovej stránke sa e-mail od listu nelíši. V úvode prejav záujem o adresáta. Spýtaj sa na jeho život a/alebo dianie v jeho okolí.

Jadro pozvania tvorí informácie o dĺžke pobytu, lokalite, stravovaní, spôsobe dopravy a iné.

Tvoje slová by mali znieť lákavo a presvedčivo. Napokon, chceš, aby čitateľ prijal tvoje pozvanie.

Na záver vyjadrí presvedčenie, že adresát tvoju ponuku prijme. Daj mu čas na rozmyslenie.

To	friend@mojmej.sk
Cc	
Subject	Holidays in Slovakia

Dear Mark,

How are you? I hope you're fine and enjoy the beginning of the summer holiday. Do you have any plans?

Yesterday, I talked to my father and he told me that our cottage house in the mountains would be free until August. I like it very much and I think I'd like to spend a few days there. Now, I need to find out who would like to join me and that's the reason why I'm writing you.

As you can remember, a few years ago we were there together and you seemed to like it. Since then, it has got better because of new facilities and attractions that are available there. They also offer rides on horses.

I would like to go sometime next week and plan to spend there 5 days or so. Travelling is no problem because a railway station is very well connected with the cottage house. As for food, I would like every guest to bring something over. We'll talk about this later, ok?

Please, reply soon. I need to know whether you want to go or not. But I think if you go, we'll have a great time.

Have a nice day,

Andrew

Rozlúčenie je veľmi osobné. Môžeš popriať príjemný deň alebo použiť bežné spojenia známe z listovej korešpondencie.

SEND

CANCEL

Adresu odosielateľa nie je nutné uvádzať, pretože sa nachádza v záhlaví e-mailu. Avšak v prípade oficiálnej elektronickej korešpondencie je vhodné na záver e-mailu priložiť kontaktné údaje: meno a priezvisko odosielateľa, pracovnú pozíciu, adresu spoločnosti, telefónne číslo a iné.

Opis (Descriptive essay)

Nitra – My Birthplace

Za nadpisom sa bodka nepíše.

Every person has his/her favourite place. For me this place is my birthplace and hometown – Nitra.

I was born in Nitra almost 20 years ago and have lived there ever since. Many people prefer to move to bigger towns, but I like Nitra a lot and do not want to move away.

The town is not very big, but it is a strategic point in the south-west region that is known for the agriculture industry. There are many wheat and sunflower fields surrounding the town. Another landscape mark is Nitra Castle, around which the town spreads. From the castle hill there is a very nice view of the city and its surroundings.

The centre is quite small but very rich in history and culture. We have two theatres that are frequently visited by people from all Slovakia. Another typical feature of Nitra is the high number of young people that you can normally see there. It is because there are two universities.

I especially like the pedestrian zone with small shops and many terraces in summertime. This street is full of people who want to enjoy the unique atmosphere of Nitra. For those who want to enjoy nature there is a town park with a lake, animals and facilities for children. If you want to do some climbing, go up the Zobor hill.

As many other Slovak towns, Nitra has its own housing estates that are not very nice, but they offer comfortable living conditions.

Even though Nitra seems a regular town, similar to many others in our country, I feel a strong bond that connects me to this place. I think I would not like to move away because my entire life is here.

Pri písaní opisu sa musíš vcítiť do vnímania čitateľa a ponúknuť mu text, ktorý stimuluje čo najviac zmyslov. Pri čítaní by si mal čitateľ vedieť vytvoriť predstavu: vidieť opisovaný predmet, cítiť jeho vôňu, teplo a pod.

Myšlienky by mali byť usporiadané. Napríklad v tejto ukážke sa zameriavame na opis centra a príslušných budov, keďže ide o najnavštevovanejšiu časť mesta.

Esej má klasickú štruktúru: úvod, jadro a záver.

Formátovanie odsekov:

1. vlož voľný riadok medzi odseky a prvý riadok odseku odsad' od kraja strany
2. odseky sú zviazané bez voľného riadku a prvý riadok je odsadený od kraja

- Pri opise sa zameraj na špecifické črty opisovaného objektu, ktoré čitateľa upútajú.
- Sústreď sa na čo najviac detailov.
- Používaj slovnú zásobu, ktorá evokuje zmysly a vnemy čitateľa.
- Dodržuj chronologickú a/alebo priestorovú líniu.
- Poukazuj na vývoj objektov.
- Buď kreatívny a nezabudni na základné pravidlo: "SHOW, DON'T TELL!"

Esej s prvkami argumentácie (Argumentative essay)

V prvom odseku predstav tému. Je vhodné vybrať si aktuálnu problematiku, o ktorej sa diskutuje. Snaž sa prezentovať najčastejšie názory iných.

Vyjadri kladné názory. Argumenty môžu gradovať, t. j. posledný bude najsilnejší. Názory podlož príkladmi.

Rovnakým spôsobom opíš opačné názory. Opäť nezabudni na príklady.

Zosumarizuj obe strany a v závere vyjadri svoje jednoznačné stanovisko.

Is the Internet a Must?

In the last decade, people have started to use the Internet almost daily. Browsing websites, sending e-mails, chatting and other forms of communication became a part of our lives. But can we live and work in the present world also without the Internet?

People who communicate at work with their customers or clients on daily basis say the Internet is a great phenomenon. For example, most companies and people prefer e-mail to regular mail because it is much faster.

Another advantage is the amount of information the Internet collects. It can be understood as an enormous encyclopedia that can be used freely. Just type what you are looking for and within a few seconds you get the information.

On the other hand, the Internet can make us addicted to it. There are some people who browsed websites without stopping. Later on, they feel nervous when they cannot browse. Unfortunately, these people sometimes do not recognise that there is something wrong with them.

Many parents leave their children to use the Internet without supervising them. However, the content of many websites is not for children, so they come across violence or any other inappropriate material. This content can negatively influence child's behaviour.

I think the Internet can be very helpful because it makes our communication faster and widens our knowledge. However, it must be used wisely because there are cases of Internet addiction or children with behaviour defects.

Esej s prvkami argumentácie môžeš rozvíjať dvoma spôsobmi.

I. Vyrovnaný pohľad: autor sa snaží presvedčiť čitateľa až v závere

1. odsek: úvod (predstavenie problematiky, prezentácia rôznych názorov) – 2. odsek (názory v prospech argumentu) – 3. odsek (názory proti argumentu) – 4. odsek: záver (sumarizácia názorov, prezentácia vlastného pohľadu na problematiku)

II. Snaha o presvedčanie: autor v úvode vyjadri vlastné stanovisko, ktoré sa snaží objektívnym spôsobom obhájiť.

1. odsek: úvod (predstavenie témy, vyjadrenie vlastného postoja) – 2. odsek (názory v rozpore s autorovým názorom) – 3. odsek (silné názory v prospech autorovho postoja) – 4. odsek: záver (zhrnutie názorov, autor neopakuje vlastný názor, ale snaží sa ho podporiť niečím zapamätateľným, napr. citáciou a pod.)

Správa (Report)

Sports Day

Last week on Monday, February 20th, a volleyball competition called HS VolleyCup was held at our secondary school on Tulipánova street. All the teams from schools in Nitra participated in this competition: Krčmériho School, Benkova School, Beethovenova School, Fatranská School and our Tulipánova School.

The first ten minutes of the game were quite easy. Our team scored some points that motivated us a lot. Everything went well, but then our captain, Jana Dušková, got hurt and it was impossible to continue the game.

Suddenly, the coach chose me to substitute Jana. At first, I panicked, but later on I was able to concentrate and play without faults. I felt that with each touch of the ball my confidence was growing and my performance was improving.

We qualified for the finals where we played against the Tulipánova School team. Their team had won many competitions, so they came with ambitions to win this one as well. The game was quite difficult, but we won because the opposite team made a few mistakes. Finally, after forty-three minutes, we scored our final points and an unexpected victory was on our side. The final score was 3:1 for our team.

I think that no one imagined that we would win the competition followed by the team from Tulipánova and Fatranská School. It was a surprise for everyone and a source of prestige for our school. Our principal organised a lovely celebration and a day trip to the mountains.

Nezabudni, že správa je krátky útvar, ktorého cieľom je informovať čitateľa. Opisuj len najzákladnejšie informácie: kto, kedy, kde, ako, prečo, atď. Nezabudni, že správa musí byť v minulom čase.

Autor správy môže pridať vlastné hodnotenie priebehu, udalostí, akcie a iné.

V správe prevažujú jednoduché, faktografické vety. Snaž sa byť stručný/-á a vyjadruj sa presne. Neustále maj na pamäti, že tvojou úlohou je odovzdať informácie, o ktorých čitateľ nevie.

KEY

kľúč k písomnej časti

■ LISTENING TASKS

TASK 1

1. A 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. B 7. A

TASK 2

1. David 2. Phelps 3. V999 JJA 4. three 5. Double 6. 347

TASK 3

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. B

TASK 4

1. C 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. A 6. B 7. D

TASK 5

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. B 8. A

TASK 6

1. theatre performance 2. classical music 3. beautiful 4. favourite
5. August 6. dolls house 7. countryside

TASK 7

1. fifth 2. lift 3. inside 4. advertisement 5. expensive 6. kitchen 7. restaurants 8. interested

TASK 8

1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. A 6. B 7. A 8. A

TASK 9

1. wonderful 2. model 3. five 4. expensive 5. reliable

TASK 10

1. A 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. B

■ LANGUAGE IN USE

TASK 11 The Internet

1. A (with) 2. C (information) 3. B (anymore) 4. D (opening) 5. C (them) 6. B (to have) 7. A (many) 8. B (send) 9. D (these) 10. A (as) 11. C (easily) 12. B (in) 13. C (the) 14. D (among) 15. D (become) 16. C (it) 17. D (prices) 18. B (normal) 19. B (few) 20. A (can)

TASK 12

1. players 2. ability 3. important 4. height 5. beginners 6. professional
7. interesting 8. local 9. happiness 10. relaxation

TASK 13

1. found 2. was 3. made 4. lived 5. studied 6. have decorated
7. have read 8. have found out 9. left 10. was

TASK 14 Camp America

1. A (for) 2. B (million) 3. C (these) 4. A (can) 5. A (who) 6. D (as) 7. B (hard) 8. C (the) 9. C (permitted) 10. B (understanding) 11. D (are) 12. B (a) 13. B (experience) 14. A (which) 15. D (and) 16. C (than) 17. B (apply) 18. D (physically) 19. D (leave) 20. A (to)

TASK 15

1. was 2. went 3. was waiting 4. decorated 5. was sitting 6. were prepared
7. explained 8. opens 9. come 10. prefer

TASK 16 Nick's First Job

1. finished 2. wanted 3. didn't accept 4. went 5. was looking 6. was
7. found 8. made 9. made 10. have 11. was 12. was arranging 13. called
14. told 15. was looking 16. asked 17. wanted 18. believe 19. took 20. like

TASK 17 The Leprechaun

1. B (is) 2. C (from) 3. B (old-looking) 4. B (The) 5. D (for) 6. C (to) 7. A (something) 8. B (people) 9. C (couldn't) 10. C (magic) 11. D (getting) 12. A (When) 13. B (Then) 14. C (it) 15. B (how) 16. C (their) 17. C (for) 18. D (one's) 19. D (a) 20. C (myself)

TASK 18

1. graduated 2. exams (examinations) 3. recently 4. successful 5. foreign
6. employment 7. application 8. interesting 9. worrying 10. education

TASK 19

1. gives 2. hate 3. caught 4. don't have 5. started 6. is 7. go 8. began
9. feel 10. hope

TASK 20

1. studies 2. health 3. loss 4. infection 5. dangerous 6. pain 7. serious
8. importance

■ READING TASKS**TASK 21**

1. F 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. A 6. G 7. E navyše: H

TASK 22

1. A line 1 2. B line 5 3. A line 7 4. B line 8 5. A line 9 6. A line 12 7. A line 14 8. A line 14

TASK 23

1. push 2. children 3. spend 4. care 5. atmosphere

TASK 24

1. D 2. G 3. C 4. F 5. B 6. I 7. H navyše: E

TASK 25

1. B paragraph a 2. A paragraph c 3. B paragraph c 4. A paragraph d 5. A paragraph e

TASK 26

1. B 2. F 3. I 4. E 5. A 6. H 7. C navyše: D

TASK 27

1. address 2. popular 3. travel 4. Backpackers 5. Globetrotters

TASK 28

1. B paragraph b 2. B paragraph b 3. A paragraph c 4. A paragraph d 5. A paragraph e

TASK 29

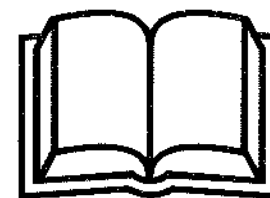
1. brain 2. radioactive 3. emit 4. messages 5. wireless earpieces

TASK 30

1. A paragraph b 2. B paragraph b 3. A paragraph d 4. A paragraph e 5. B paragraph e 6. A paragraph f

■ WRITING TASKS

TASK 31 – 36: see pages 328 – 333



LITERATÚRA

LITERARY TERMS (literárne termíny)

SOME ENGLISH AND AMERICAN WRITERS (vybraní anglickí a americkí autori)

The Tragedy of Hamlet, Prince of Denmark (Tragédia o Hamletovi, Princovi dánskom – rozbor)

The Old Man and the Sea (Starec a more – rozbor)

KEY (kľúč k literárnym úlohám)

LITERARY TERMS

act – dejstvo
 allegory – alegória
 antagonist – protivník hlavného hrdinu
 blank verse – blankvers, päťstopový jam-
 bický nerýmovaný verš
 character – postava v literárnom diele
 alebo v dráme
 climax – vyvrcholenie deja
 colloquial language – hovorový jazyk
 comedy – komédia
 conflict – konflikt
 dialogue – dialóg
 diction – štýl, spôsob vyjadrovania
 drama – dráma, divadelná hra
 figurative language – obrazný jazyk
 form – forma
 genre – žáner
 hero – (hlavný) hrdina
 heroine – (hlavná) hrdinka
 metaphor – metafora
 monologue – monológ

narrator – rozprávač príbehu
 novel – román
 novella – novela (prozaický literárny žáner
 stredného rozsahu; má zložitejší dej a
 viac postáv ako napr. poviedka)
 play – hra
 play within the play – hra v hre (napr.
 v tragédii Hamlet skupina hercov hrá
 tragédiu, ktorá usvedčí vraha)
 playwright – dramatik
 plot – zoradenie dejových zložiek
 poem – báseň
 prose – próza
 protagonist – hlavná postava
 scene – scéna
 setting – prostredie, dejisko
 simile (čítaj simili) – prirovnanie
 theme – téma, námet, látka (o čom dané
 dielo je)
 tragedy – tragédia

SOME ENGLISH AND AMERICAN WRITERS

William Shakespeare – the greatest English playwright and poet (1564 – 1616)

The greatest English playwright and poet was born in Stratford upon Avon. Young Shakespeare probably attended grammar school. At the age of 18, he married Ann Hathaway who was seven years older than him. Some years later, he left Stratford and went to London. He started his career as a playwright with **historical plays**, which won him success with the audience. His earliest plays are the three parts of *Henry VI* (*Henrich VI.*) and *Richard III* (*Richard III.*) His **comedies** include *The Comedy of Errors* (*Komédia omylov*), *The Taming of the Shrew* (*Skrotenie zlej ženy*), *The Two Gentlemen of Verona* (*Dvaja šľachtici z Verony*), *Love's Labour's Lost* (*Márna lásky snaha*), *A Midsummer Night's Dream* (*Sen noci svätajánskej*), *The Merchant of Venice* (*Kupec benátsky*), *Much Ado About Nothing* (*Mnoho kriku pre nič*), *As You Like It* (*Ako sa vám páči*), *Twelfth Night or What You Will* (*Večer trojkráľový alebo čo len chcete*) and *The Merry Wives of Windsor* (*Veselé panie windsorské*). In his beautiful **lyrical tragedy** *Romeo and Juliet* (*Rómeo a Júlia*) he presented the themes of love, friendship and joy of life but also vendettas and hatred. His most remarkable **tragedies** include *Hamlet* (*Hamlet*), *Othello* (*Othello*), *King Lear* (*Kráľ Lear*), *Macbeth* (*Macbeth*) and other plays. In the end of his life, Shakespeare wrote **romantic dramas** in which he used magical, mythological and fairy-tale elements.

Agatha Christie – English detective novelist and playwright (1890 – 1976)

In her first novel, *The Mysterious Affair at Styles* (*Záhada zámku v Styles*), she introduced the character of detective Hercule Poirot, who appeared in about 25 of Christie's detective novels and short stories. Her other detective figure, an elderly lady, Miss Marple, first appeared in *The Murder at the Vicarage* (*Vražda na fare*). Agatha Christie wrote more than 75 detective novels. Most of them became best-sellers and some were adapted into films. The most successful film adaptations include *Murder on the Orient Express* (*Vražda v Orient Expresse*) and *Death on the Nile* (*Smrť na Nile*). Christie's *Autobiography* (1977) was published posthumously (after her death).

Charles Dickens (1812 – 1870) English novelist of the Victorian period

He spent his childhood in poverty and received little education. Dickens began his career as a journalist and reporter of the debates in Parliament. He is the author of *The Pickwick Papers* (*Pamäti klubu Pickwickovcov*), a collection of humorous sketches, which made him famous. Dickens's ability to present characters and to

describe human weaknesses with humour and understanding became evident here. He wrote a number of novels including *Oliver Twist* (*Oliver Twist*), *Nicholas Nickleby* (*Nicholas Nickleby*), *The Old Curiosity Shop* (*Starožitnícky obchod*), *David Copperfield* (*David Copperfield*), *Little Dorrit* (*Malá Dorritka*) and *Great Expectations* (*Veľké nádeje*). Many of them reflect Dickens's own unhappy childhood experiences. His realistic pictures of schools, orphanages, courts and prisons contributed much to their reform. Dickens created a truthful image of Victorian England, mainly of the lower-middle class. In his works, he presented social wrongs and injustice as well as the cruelty of human nature.

Ernest Hemingway (1899 – 1961) American novelist

He is the most representative figure of American literature of the first half of the 20th century. He is remembered as an excellent novelist and a master of short literary forms. Hemingway was born in Illinois in 1899. He left college to begin a career as a journalist. During World War I, he was sent to Europe with an American ambulance unit. In 1918, he was severely wounded and had to return to the USA to recover. In 1921, he went to France as a foreign correspondent for the *Toronto Star*. Soon, Hemingway published his first collection of stories and the first novel *The Sun Also Rises* (*Slnko aj vychádza*) which made him famous. He was a member of the so-called "lost generation", a group of writers who expressed their feelings and opinions on life, especially the loss of illusions. Hemingway wrote collections of short stories and the novel *A Farewell to Arms* (*Zbohom zbraniam*) which became a great success. The novel *For Whom the Bell Tolls* (*Komu zvoní do hrobu*) is a literary description of the Spanish war. After the war, he returned to his home in Cuba and published a novella, *The Old Man and the Sea* (*Starec a more*), for which he received the Nobel Prize for Literature in 1954. After Fidel Castro's revolution he decided to leave for the USA. In a deep depression, unable to cope with his problems, he committed suicide. There are few authors who during their lives achieved such popularity as Hemingway.

Jack London (1876 – 1916) American novelist and short story writer

He spent his adventurous life travelling and working as a sailor, miner and gold-digger in Alaska during the gold rush. He learnt a lot about people, nature and knew much about life. His own experiences provided him with the most interesting topics for writing. His most famous short stories and novels include *The Call of the Wild* (*Volanie divočiny*), *The Sea-Wolf* (*Morský vlk*), *White Fang* (*Biely tesák*), *Love of Life* (*Láska k životu*), *Martin Eden* (*Martin Eden*) and *The Valley of the Moon* (*Mesačné údolie*).

Jerome David Salinger (1919) American novelist and short story writer

He was born in New York in 1919 and graduated at a military academy. He went to a number of colleges but finished none of them. However, at Columbia University he showed an interest in writing and began to publish his first short stories in several magazines. He also took part in the World War II and after landing in Normandy he met Ernest Hemingway who was working as a war correspondent. The novel which made him famous was *The Catcher in the Rye* (*Kto chytá v žite*) written in 1951. Although Salinger wrote only one novel and several short stories (e.g. a collection called *Nine Stories – Deväť poviedok*) and novellas, in the fifties and early sixties he became one of the most popular writers among young people. In his novel, he described the emotional state of the young generation after the war.

THE TRAGEDY OF HAMLET, PRINCE OF DENMARK by William Shakespeare

□ GENRE AND FORM

The Tragedy of Hamlet, Prince of Denmark (1600) is a revenge tragedy but it has many characteristics of a philosophical problem play. It is full of questions about human nature and meaning of life. It consists of five acts which are divided into scenes. It is written in blank verse, but some passages are written in prose. There are some songs included in the text, too (e.g. the grave-diggers song). The use of "the play within the play" is an important element. The characters present themselves through dialogues and monologues.

□ THEMES

In this work, Shakespeare focusses on the good and the bad, the moral and the corrupt, certainty and doubt, innocence and guilt. The central theme is reflected in the following idea: It is very difficult to know the truth about other people, their true feelings and motivations of their actions.

□ CHARACTERS

Hamlet, the prince of Denmark, is the protagonist of the play. He is a student at the University of Wittenberg, an intellectual, philosopher. He is very sad because of the death of his father and is unhappy about his mother, Queen Gertrude, who remarried shortly after her first husband's death. Though the ghost tells him who murdered his father, he needs to find proof before he takes his revenge. The conflict within Hamlet's personality is the central conflict of the *Tragedy of Hamlet*. To kill Claudius or not is Hamlet's basic dilemma. Hamlet is often alone on the stage and in his monologues he asks many questions about people's behaviour, the meaning of life, death and afterlife. His character is complex; he is not presented only in a positive light.

The Ghost of Hamlet's father, the former King of Denmark, is a mysterious character that appears at Elsinor. The ghost tells Hamlet that he was murdered by his own brother and asks for revenge.

Claudius, the present King of Denmark, is the antagonist and the villain of the play. He murders his brother, the former King, to become the King himself and marries the Queen. King Claudius does not believe Hamlet is mad and he plots Hamlet's death. Claudius is the kind of character who manipulates other people.

Gertrude is the Queen of Denmark and Hamlet's mother. Very soon after the death of her husband, the King of Denmark, she marries Claudius who becomes the new King. She is presented as weak and dependent. There are many questions con-

cerning her character: Did she know about Claudius's plan to murder her husband? Did she have an affair with Claudius before her husband's death? Did she love Claudius? Does she believe prince Hamlet is mad?

Polonius is the Lord Chamberlain, the King's advisor. He is shown as a person controlling Laertes and Ophelia, his children. He dies accidentally stabbed by prince Hamlet.

Ophelia is Polonius's obedient daughter. She is in love with prince Hamlet. Ophelia ends tragically – she goes mad and drowns herself in a brook.

Laertes is Ophelia's brother who wants to revenge his father's death and kill Hamlet. He acts impulsively. At the end of the play, the dying Laertes forgives prince Hamlet.

Horatio is Hamlet's best friend. He is wise, responsible and self-controlled. Horatio knows about the motives of Hamlet's behaviour. Horatio tells the world what happened in the castle of Elsinore.

Rosencrantz and Guildenstern are Hamlet's schoolmates whom the King invites to Elsinore. They betray Hamlet and serve the King.

Fortinbras is the prince of Norway, the future King of Denmark.

There are many minor characters in the play: officers, soldiers, ambassadors, messengers, grave-diggers and servants.

□ SUMMARY OF THE PLOT

The ghost of Hamlet's father appears at the platform of the castle of Elsinore and tells prince Hamlet that he was murdered. His own brother Claudius killed him – he poured poison into his ear – to become the King of Denmark. The ghost asks Hamlet to revenge his death. **Hamlet** is horrified to hear about his father's murder. He is also sad about his mother who remarried his uncle, Claudius, very early after the death of her first husband. Hamlet pretends madness to find proof that Claudius murdered his father. **King Claudius** does not believe in Hamlet's madness. Hidden behind the curtain with Polonius, he wants to listen to a dialogue of Hamlet and Ophelia. Hamlet enters the room saying the words: *To be or not to be; that is the question*. Pretending madness, he tries to persuade Ophelia that he does not love her and sends her to a nunnery. Ophelia is confused and desperate.

Travelling actors come to the castle and Hamlet asks them to play a tragedy. The play shows the murder of his father. During the performance, in the scene showing a murder of a King, Claudius leaves the hall. Hamlet and his friend Horatio agree that the King has just proven his guilt. Now, Hamlet has got proof that his uncle is his father's murderer and he can carry out his revenge. He enters the King's room, prepared to kill Claudius. He finds him praying and is not able to do it. He delays his revenge.

Queen Gertrude, Hamlet's mother, calls Hamlet to meet her in her chamber where Polonius stands behind the curtain. Hamlet's words are hard and cynical. He wants his mother to admit her sin. She fears for her life, Polonius cries out for help

and the curtain moves. Hamlet stabs Polonius, thinking he is King Claudius. When Hamlet finds out he has killed Polonius, he says: *A bloody deed. Almost as bad, good mother, as to kill a King and marry his brother.* The Queen is horrified and thinks Hamlet is really mad. He swears he is not and asks her to keep his secret.

King Claudius plots Hamlet's death. He sends Hamlet to England with **Rosencrantz and Guildenstern**, Hamlet's schoolmates. They carry a letter ordering Hamlet's execution. The pirates capture Hamlet and send him back to Denmark.

Claudius makes a new plan to kill Hamlet, this time with **Laertes** who returned from France and wants to revenge his father's death. It is planned to look like an accident: In a duel with Hamlet, Laertes will use a poisoned sword and the King will offer Hamlet poisoned wine. Queen Gertrude enters the room with sad news. **Ophelia** has committed suicide.

Hamlet and his friend **Horatio** meet at a graveyard where grave-diggers dig a new grave. Suddenly, a funeral procession enters. Hamlet soon realises it is Ophelia's funeral. Laertes and Hamlet start to fight. Next day, Hamlet explains Horatio how he escaped the king's plan to transport him to England: he exchanged the letter ordering his execution for another, ordering the execution of his false friends.

The royal couple and Laertes come to the hall. Hamlet apologises to Laertes, they choose swords and the duel begins. The King drops poison into Hamlet's cup and offers him the drink. Hamlet refuses, but Queen Gertrude takes the cup and drinks the poisoned wine. The King warns her, but it is too late. Laertes wounds Hamlet and in the fight they exchange swords. The Queen dies and Hamlet wounds Laertes. He reveals the King's murderous plan to Hamlet and he can finally carry out his revenge. Hamlet wounds the King with the poisoned sword and makes him drink the poisoned wine. Laertes is reconciled with Hamlet and dies. Hamlet asks Horatio to tell the world what happened in the castle of Elsinore and says that **Fortinbras**, the prince of Norway, should become the new King of Denmark. Hamlet dies and Horatio wishes him: *Good night, sweet prince, and flights of angels sing thee (you) to thy (your) rest.*

□ SETTING

The setting is mostly projected into the castle Elsinore, Denmark, its halls, chambers, Polonius's house. Occasionally, the scenes happen outside: at a platform of the castle, in the graveyard or on a plain. The events take several days, beginning at night in a platform and ending in the castle hall. The mood of the play is mysterious, melancholic, dark, full of uncertainty, violence and revenge.

□ LANGUAGE

The playwright mostly uses high diction, e.g. the speech of Claudius, the queen, but also the colloquial language that brings humour to the tragedy (the grave-diggers dialogue and the song). Shakespeare is the master of figurative language. He often uses simile, metaphor or personification.

□ VOCABULARY

accidentally – náhodou
to act – konať
to admit – prijať
advisor – poradca
afterlife – posmrtný život
to appear – objaviť sa
balance – rovnováha
behaviour – správanie
to be horrified – zhrozený
to betray – zradiť
brook – potok
to capture – zajať
to carry out – uskutočniť, vykonať
certainty – istota
chamber – izba, komnata
to commit suicide – spáchať sebevraždu
to concern – týkať sa
to consist of – skladať sa z
curtain – záves, opona
deed – čin, skutok
to delay – oddialiť
desperate – zúfalý
doubt – pochybnosť
to drown – utopiť sa
execution – poprava
to forgive – odpustiť
former – bývalý
ghost – duch
grave-digger – hrobár
graveyard – cintorín

guilt – vina
to have an affair – mať ľúbostný pomer
human nature – ľudská povaha
innocence – nevinnosť
mad – duševne chorý
minor – menej významný
murder – vražda
mysterious – záhadný
nunnery – kláštor
obedient – poslušný
to order – objednať si
playwright – dramatik
to plot – zosnovávať, plánovať
to pour – naliať
to present – predstaviť
to pretend – predstierať
proof – dôkaz
to prove – dokázať
to reconcile – uzmierniť sa
to remarry – znovu sa oženiť/vydať
to revenge – pomstiť sa
revenge – pomsta
to serve – slúžiť
sense – zmysel
sin – hriech
to stab – bodnúť
sword – meč
villain – podliak
to wound – zraniť

□ PRACTICE TASKS

A

Who are the following characters? Choose the name from the box.

→

Ophelia Polonius Laertes Horatio Claudius Rosencrantz
~~Gertrude~~ Guildenstern Fortinbras

Example: Queen of Denmark and Hamlet's mother – Gertrude

- Polonius's daughter and Laertes's sister – _____
- The present King of Denmark, Gertrude's husband, Hamlet's uncle – _____

- c) Hamlet's best friend – _____
- d) Ophelia's brother, Polonius's son – _____
- e) Ophelia's and Laertes's father – _____
- f) Hamlet's schoolmates – _____ and _____
- g) the prince of Norway and the future King of Denmark – _____

B True or false? Correct the false statements.

- 1. Hamlet became mad when his father died. _____
- 2. Hamlet is married to Ophelia. _____
- 3. King Claudius poisoned Hamlet's father and then he married Hamlet's mother. _____
- 4. Hamlet wants to revenge the death of his father. _____
- 5. Travelling actors played the tragedy which showed the death of Ophelia. _____
- 6. Horatio knows about Hamlet's plan and about his pretended madness. _____
- 7. Gertrude drinks the poisoned wine and dies. _____
- 8. King Claudius wants to kill Hamlet. _____
- 9. Hamlet leaves Denmark for England and never comes back. _____
- 10. Laertes becomes the new prince of Denmark. _____

C Complete the following sentences with the missing words from the box.

*poison proof revenge dilemma madness stabs
sin sword murder suicide*

- 1. The ghost asks Hamlet to _____ his death.
- 2. Hamlet needs to find _____ of who killed his father.
- 3. Hamlet pretends _____.
- 4. To kill Claudius or not is Hamlet's basic _____.
- 5. Travelling actors performed the _____ of Hamlet's father in their play.
- 6. Ophelia has committed _____.
- 7. Hamlet _____ Polonius thinking that it is Claudius.

- 8. Gertrude is expected to admit her _____ when she remarried too shortly after the death of her husband.
- 9. Claudius dropped _____ into Hamlet's cup.
- 10. Hamlet wounded the King with the poisoned _____.

D Reorder the following acts from *The Tragedy of Hamlet, Prince of Denmark*.

- a) Hamlet is sent to England. _____
- b) Ophelia commits suicide. _____
- c) Hamlet fights in duel with Laertes. _____
- d) The Ghost of Hamlet's father appears at Elsinore Castle. _____
- e) Gertrude drinks the poisoned wine. _____
- f) Claudius kills Hamlet's father to become the King of Denmark. _____
- g) Hamlet meets Ophelia and pretends that he does not love her. _____
- h) Travelling actors play the tragedy which shows the murder of Hamlet's father. _____
- i) Gertrude marries Claudius. _____
- j) Polonius is accidentally stabbed by Hamlet. _____

E How did the following characters die in *The Tragedy of Hamlet, Prince of Denmark*?

a) Hamlet's father	– was wounded by Laertes in a duel.
b) Hamlet	– was poisoned by Claudius who poured poison into his ear.
c) Ophelia	– was wounded and killed in a duel with Hamlet.
d) Gertrude	– committed suicide.
e) Laertes	– drank poisoned wine.
f) Polonius	– was wounded by Hamlet with the poisoned sword and was made to drink the poisoned wine.
g) Claudius	– was accidentally stabbed by Hamlet when standing behind the curtain.

F Why does Hamlet say the words: "To be or not to be – that is the question"?

THE OLD MAN AND THE SEA

by Ernest Hemingway

□ GENRE AND FORM

The Old Man and the Sea (1952) is a novella. As most of Hemingway's works, it is an allegory to life in which an individual either wins or loses.

□ THEMES

The Old Man and the Sea deals with the struggle of an individual with the forces of nature. The central theme can be summarised in the words of Santiago: *A man can be destroyed but not defeated*. The author concentrates on bravery, honour and respect, man's close relationship with nature, loneliness and the need for friendship but also fear and death.

□ CHARACTERS

Santiago, the protagonist of the book, is a poor old Cuban fisherman. His body and face are wrinkled, his hands are scarred. Everything about him is old except his eyes. They are blue as the sea and cheerful. For many days, Santiago has not caught any fish. He is experienced and has a great knowledge of the sea and fishing. He hopes the good luck will come. He is modest but proud of his abilities. Santiago lives in a shack made of palm leaves. There is just one room with the bed, a table, a chair and a place where he can cook. On brown walls there are religious pictures. He used to have a picture of his wife there too.

Marlin is a giant fish, eighteen feet long. After a hard struggle, Santiago succeeds in catching it.

Manolin is a boy who has learnt fishing from Santiago since he was five. Manolin likes the old man very much and admires his experience and knowledge. He feels sympathy when Santiago loses his good luck and hopes for better days. Manolin takes care of Santiago and brings him food and coffee. He likes their discussions about baseball. Though Manolin is physically present only at the beginning and in the end of the book, he never leaves the mind of the old man. He wishes Manolin was there during his struggle with the big fish.

Joe DiMaggio, one of the best American baseball players of the time. Santiago often thinks about him in the most difficult situations of the journey.

Perico is the man who provides Santiago with newspapers publishing the baseball results.

Martin is the owner of the Terrace where Manolin gets meals for Santiago.

□ SUMMARY OF THE PLOT

Santiago and Manolin

The narrator introduces the old man and the boy. Santiago, the old fisherman, has not caught a fish for eighty-four days. The first forty days, Manolin goes out with him, but then the boy's parents send him to a luckier boat. In the evenings, the boy comes to help Santiago. He keeps him company, talks to him and encourages him, invites him for a glass of beer. Most of the fishermen make fun of the old man, but he is not angry at them. Others feel compassion for him.

Manolin goes to get sardines and bait for the old man. Santiago falls asleep. When the boy comes back, the old man is still sleeping. Manolin spreads an old army blanket over his shoulders and leaves again. He returns with supper from Martin, the owner of the Terrace. They eat and talk about the best baseball players and Manolin says: *And the best fisherman is you*. That makes the old fisherman happy. Manolin leaves and the old man goes to bed. He dreams of Africa, of the long golden beaches and the white lions.

Santiago sails out of the harbour to catch the big fish

Very early in the morning, before it is light, Santiago goes to Manolin's house to wake up the boy. They go back to Santiago's shack to take the gear and have a cup of morning coffee. Manolin asks the old man how he feels today and Santiago says he feels confident. Then they go to their boats and wish each other good luck. It is still dark when all the boats sail out of the harbour.

The old man sails alone in his boat. He prepares the lines with baits and before the sunrise all the lines are in water. Santiago can see flying fish and a black bird circling above his boat. It means the bird has noticed something. Dolphins. He sails on. He is sure his big fish must be somewhere. He catches two tunas for bait and for himself to eat.

Santiago catches marlin, the big fish

The sun is hot. Watching the lines, Santiago can suddenly see a pull: a marlin is eating his sardines. He thinks of using a harpoon but is unable to raise the fish out to the surface. The fish starts pulling the boat slowly and Santiago holds the line. He wishes the boy was there. It is two hours before sunset. According to the stars in the sky Santiago can see that the fish does not change the eastward course. He begins to pity the big fish. He and the fish are joined together and there is no one who can help either of them.

Santiago struggles with marlin

Before sunrise, the big fish pulls him down and he hurts his eye, hand and the back. The fish is not tired. The old man feels respect for the fish, but he says he will kill it before the day ends. He notices the fish has slowed down. Santiago decides to eat some tuna meat. His hand aches.

In the afternoon, Santiago desperately needs some sleep. This is the second day and he does not know the most recent baseball results. He wonders what the great

DiMaggio would do in his situation. Before the dark comes, he catches a dolphin. He remembers the fish has not eaten anything since it was caught.

At night he again feels pity for the fish, his true brother. From the sky, Santiago can tell that in three or four hours bad weather will come. Then he falls asleep and dreams about a village, yellow beach and lions. He is woken up by the fish. The fish jumps up and then heavily falls back into water. Then it jumps again and again. Santiago knows that the fish will start circling soon.

Santiago kills marlin

At sunrise, the fish starts circling and the fight begins. Pulling hard on the line, Santiago feels faint and struggles to control his pain. He makes several unsuccessful attempts to kill the marlin and at noon he finally succeeds. He kills it with his harpoon. Then he tries to tie the fish to the boat and changes course to sail back home.

Santiago's fight with sharks

Soon a big blue shark appears close to the boat. Santiago kills the shark but loses his harpoon. He knows that the blood will attract more sharks and prepares his knife. More sharks come and each takes a piece of meat from the marlin. Santiago kills one and hurts two. They swim away, but almost half of the big fish is eaten. He worries about the night and the new sharks that may come.

Around ten o'clock at night, he can see the lights of Havana, but by midnight he has to fight with sharks. No sharks come – there is no more meat for them to eat.

Santiago returns home

Santiago sails his boat to the shore easily, there is no great weight to carry. He sails into a little harbour and pulls the boat out as far as he can. He is very tired. Climbing to his shack made of palm leaves, he looks behind at marlin's naked back bone. Finally, he gets into his shack, crawls into his bed and falls asleep.

Santiago gains respect from Manolin and other fishermen

In the morning, Manolin comes and seeing the old man's hurt hands he starts crying. He goes to get coffee for Santiago. Meanwhile, a group of amazed fishermen circles Santiago's boat, measuring the length of marlin's skeleton. They say it is the biggest fish they have seen and express their respect for the old man.

Santiago wakes up when the boy comes back and learns they were searching for him with the coast guard and planes. He realises how pleasant it is to have someone to talk to instead of speaking only to himself and to the ocean. Manolin wants to sail with the old man again, but Santiago says he is not lucky any more. The boy says he will bring him the newspaper and something from the drugstore to cure his hands. The story ends with a group of tourists inspecting the white spine and believing it is a shark. They have no idea of the struggle the old man has undergone.

□ SETTING

The story begins and ends in the same place: on the coast and in Santiago's shack in a small Cuban village near Havana. The long central part of the story is set in the old man's boat sailing further and further into the open sea of the Gulf of Mexico. Mostly, there is the atmosphere of tragedy and loneliness. Towards the end, the mood changes towards a more positive one. Though Santiago is defeated by the sharks and brings only the skeleton of the marlin to the shore, he wins spiritually and morally and gains the respect of other fishermen.

□ LANGUAGE AND STYLE

Hemingway uses a simple and exact style which reflects his experience as a journalist. His sentences are short; he avoids using too many adjectives. Descriptions of nature (the sea, the sky, the fish and the birds) and of Santiago's activities and reactions are presented in detail. The descriptions alternate with Santiago's thoughts and monologues.

Hemingway uses some Spanish words and phrases (*Qué va, la bodega, agua mala, galanos*, etc.) and the jargon of fishermen (*skiff, coil, a killing lance*, etc.).

There are some examples of figurative language, such as simile and metaphor (the old man's scars were *as old as erosions in a fishless desert*; the sword of the fish was *as long as a baseball bat*) and personification (*the water and he knew he would not go away and his head was clear*).

□ VOCABULARY

to ache – bolieť	eastward – východný
to alternate – striedať sa	to encourage – povzbudiť
amazed – ohromený	to express – vyjadriť
attempt – pokus	faint – slabý, malátny
backbone – chrbtová kosť	to fall asleep – zaspáť
bait – návnada	fear – strach
to be angry at somebody – byť na niekoho nahnevany	fisherman – rybár
to be unable to do – nebyť schopný urobiť niečo	force – sila
blanket – prikrývka	to gain – získať
bravery – statočnosť	gear – výstroj
to carry – niesť	to leave the mind – zísť z mysle, prestať myslieť na
cheerful – veselý	giant – obrovský
compassion – súcit	harbour – prístav
confident – sebaistý, odvážny	honour – česť
to crawl – vliecť sa	journey – cesta
to defeat – poraziť	to learn – dozvedieť sa; učiť sa
desperately – zúfalo	line – prút
to destroy – zničiť	loneliness – osamelosť
	to make fun of somebody – robiť si z niekoho žarty

modest – skromný
 mood – nálada
 to pity – ľutovať
 to provide somebody with something –
 poskytnúť, dať niekomu niečo
 to raise – zdvihnúť
 to reflect – odrážať
 to sail out of the harbour – vyplávať z
 prístavu
 scarred – zjazvený
 shack – chatrč

skeleton – kostra
 to spread – prestreť, rozložiť
 struggle – bojovať s, namáhať sa
 to succeed in – uspieť v niečom
 sunset – západ slnka
 surface – povrch
 sympathy – súcit
 to undergo something – podstúpiť niečo
 weight – váha
 wrinkled – zvráskavený

□ PRACTICE TASKS

A True or false? Correct the false statements.

1. Santiago has not caught any fish for a long time. _____
2. Manolin has taught Santiago everything about fishing. _____
3. Manolin and Santiago like talking about basketball. _____
4. Santiago sails out of the harbour in the evening. _____
5. Santiago feels confident and ready to catch the big fish. _____
6. Manolin helps Santiago to catch the big fish. _____
7. Santiago was struggling with marlin for two days. _____
8. Santiago hurt his legs. _____
9. Santiago's marlin was eaten by sharks. _____
10. When other fishermen saw the fish skeleton, they were disappointed. _____

B Which of the following things did Santiago use to catch the big fish?

rope harpoon line gun baits boat knife

C Complete the following sentences with the missing words from the box.

sympathy shack fisherman experience blood skeleton
 harbour baits sunrise hurts

1. Santiago is a poor old Cuban _____
2. Santiago lives in a _____ made of palm leaves.

3. Manolin feels _____ when Santiago loses his good luck.
4. Manolin admires Santiago's _____ and knowledge.
5. It is still dark when all the boats sail out of the _____.
6. The old man prepares the lines with _____.
7. At _____, the fight with marlin begins.
8. The big fish pulls him down and he _____ himself.
9. Santiago knows that the _____ will attract sharks.
10. Some curious fishermen were measuring the marlin's _____.

D Reorder the following events from the novella *The Old Man and the Sea*.

- a) Manolin brings some sardines and the baits for the old man. _____
- b) Santiago sails out of the harbour very early in the morning. _____
- c) Santiago wakes up Manolin and they have a cup of morning coffee.

- d) Santiago fights the blue sharks with his knife. _____
- e) Santiago has difficulties in killing the marlin. _____
- f) Santiago sees dolphins. _____
- g) Santiago gains respect from Manolin and other fishermen. _____
- h) Tourists look at the skeleton of the big fish. _____
- i) Santiago loses his harpoon. _____
- j) Santiago catches two tunas for bait and for himself to eat. _____

E Explain the meaning of the old man's saying: *A man can be destroyed but not defeated.*

More about English and American writers and their works can be found in Z. Fabianová: "Spríevodca dielami anglickej a americkej literatúry" (Literary analysis of selected literary works in English), Enigma, www.enigma.sk

KEY**klúč k literárnym úlohám****The Tragedy of Hamlet, Prince of Denmark**

- A** a. Ophelia b. Claudius c. Horatio d. Laertes e. Polonius f. Rosencrantz and Guildenstern g. Fortinbras
- B** 1. F (Hamlet pretended his madness.) 2. F (Hamlet is single.) 3. T 4. T 5. F (They play the play about the death of Hamlet's father.) 6. T 7. T 8. T 9. F (He returned to Denmark.) 10. F (Fortinbras becomes the new King of Denmark.)
- C** 1. revenge 2. proof 3. madness 4. dilemma 5. murder 6. suicide 7. stabs 8. sin 9. poison 10. sword
- D** 1. f 2. i 3. d 4. h 5. g 6. j 7. a 8. b 9. c 10. e
- E**
- a) Hamlet's father was poisoned by Claudius who poured poison into his ear.
 - b) Hamlet was wounded by Laertes in a duel.
 - c) Ophelia committed suicide.
 - d) Gertrude drank poisoned wine.
 - e) Laertes was wounded and killed in a duel with Hamlet.
 - f) Polonius was accidentally stabbed by Hamlet when standing behind the curtain.
 - g) Claudius was wounded by Hamlet with the poisoned sword and was made to drink the poisoned wine.

THE OLD MAN AND THE SEA

- A** 1. T 2. F (Santiago taught Manolin.) 3. F (They like talking about baseball.) 4. F (early in the morning) 5. T 6. F (Santiago sailed off alone on his boat.) 7. T 8. F (He hurt his eye, hand and the back.) 9. T 10. F (They expressed their respect for the old man.)
- B** harpoon, line, baits, boat, rope (Santiago tied the fish to the boat.) (Knife was used in the fight with sharks.)
- C** 1. fisherman 2. shack 3. sympathy 4. experience 5. harbour 6. baits 7. sunrise 8. hurts 9. blood 10. skeleton
- D** 1. a 2. c 3. b 4. f 5. j 6. e 7. i 8. d 9. g 10. h

**ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES AND SLOVAKIA**

(anglicky hovoriace krajiny a Slovensko)

THE EUROPEAN UNION AND NATO (EÚ a NATO)**SOME USEFUL PHRASES AND EXPRESSIONS** (niektoré užitočné frázy a výrazy)**SHORT DIALOGUES** (krátke dialógy)**WORD FORMATION** (slovotvorba)**BASIC PHRASAL VERBS** (základné frázové slovesá)

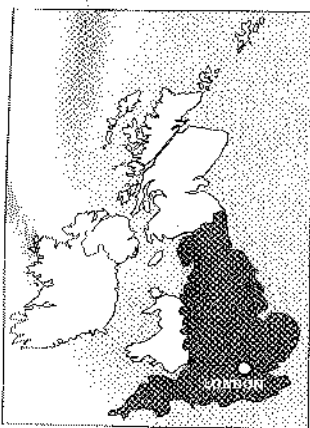
ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES AND SLOVAKIA

ANGLICKY HOVORIACE KRAJINY A SLOVENSKO

THE UNITED KINGDOM

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland is situated on the British Isles. Great Britain comprises England, Wales and Scotland. The English, Scottish, Welsh and Irish people differ in their way of life, customs, values and traditions. The largest cities of the UK are London, Birmingham, Glasgow, Liverpool, Manchester, Sheffield, Bristol, Leeds and Edinburgh. The UK is an industrialised country which is now moving more towards service industries, such as finance. Major industries are iron and steel engineering. The chief agricultural products are wheat, potatoes, milk and meat.

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland is a constitutional monarchy. The present sovereign, Queen Elizabeth II, has little real political power. The United Kingdom is governed by the Cabinet with twenty ministers and the Prime Minister. The official residence of Prime Minister is at 10 Downing Street. The Parliament consists of the House of Lords and the House of Commons. The House of Lords also functions as the highest court in the land. Britain's most important political parties are the Conservative Party, the Labour Party and the Liberal Democrats.



□ ENGLAND

England is divided into 36 counties. Lancashire, Yorkshire, Kent, Essex and Sussex are the largest and the most populated. The country is highly industrialised. Sheffield has concentrated on the iron and steel industries. Birmingham, the second largest city of England, has developed light engineering and motor vehicle manufacture. England has a very rich architecture. Many of the greatest cathedrals and churches were built between 1100 and 1500. The English countryside is remarkable for its green fields and trees. Small villages and old market towns look beautiful with their well-kept gardens and houses. The

country has a long coastline with many famous seaside resorts, such as Brighton. The most beautiful natural scenery can be seen in the north-west of England in the Lake District, an area which inspired many of the English romantic poets.

London

London is the capital of England and of Great Britain. It is a city of traditions, historic buildings, monuments, theatres, parks and interesting museums. It is the biggest city in Europe.

On the *River Thames*, there is *Tower Bridge* and the *Tower* visited by many tourists. In the past, it was a fortress, a royal palace and a prison. Now the Tower is a museum of arms and the place where the crown jewels are kept.

There are many beautiful churches in London. *St. Paul's Cathedral* is the greatest of English churches. It was built by the famous English architect, Sir Christopher Wren. Wellington, Nelson and other great British figures are buried there. *Westminster Abbey* is the coronation church of almost all English monarchs and most of them are buried there.

Nearby stands the *Palace of Westminster*, also known as the *Houses of Parliament*, which is the seat of the British Parliament. While Parliament is in session a flag flies at the top of the *Big Ben* clock tower, which is famous for its accuracy and for its 13-ton bell.

Another place of interest for visitors to London is *Buckingham Palace*, the London residence of the British royal family. Every day at 11:30 the Queen's Guard in uniform perform the ceremony of the Changing of the Guard.

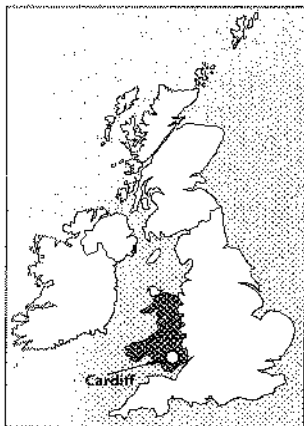
The most famous streets for its shops and entertainment are *Piccadilly*, *Bond Street*, *Regent's Street*, *Carnaby Street* and *Oxford Street*. In the centre of Piccadilly Circus there is the *Statue of Eros* (God of Love). One of the largest London squares is *Trafalgar Square* with the statue of Admiral Nelson in the centre.

National Gallery contains Britain's best-known collection of paintings. *The Tate Gallery* is another big gallery containing modern art. Visitors of *Madam Tussaud's* can see waxworks of famous people from all the world.

London has a large number of parks and gardens. The best-known are *St. James's Park*, *Buckingham Palace Gardens*, *Hyde Park*, *Regent's Park* and *Kensington Gardens*. Hyde Park is the largest of the royal parks. It has many attractions including a small lake and Speaker's Corner, where anybody can make a public speech about any topic.

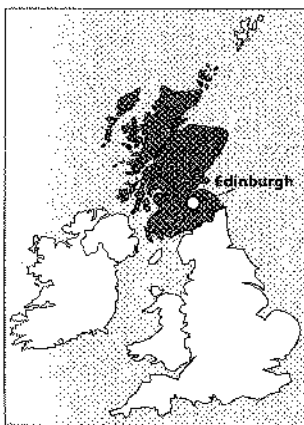
Cambridge

Cambridge is a beautiful city lying on the east bank of the river *Cam*. It is situated 80 km north of London. Cambridge is famous for its university. The first college was founded in 1284 and over the following 300 years most of the other colleges were established. The beautiful architecture of the college buildings is combined with the beauty of open spaces, gardens and bridges over the river Cam. The oldest of colleges also include *Clare* (1326), *Trinity Hall* (1350), *Corpus Christi* (1352), *Queen's* (1448), *St. Catherine's* (1473) and *Trinity* (1546). All of them are rich in history and tradition.



WALES

Wales is a largely mountainous country. It is famous for its long rivers, wide lakes and high hills. The majority of the people live in the coal-mining and industrial region of the south around Cardiff, the capital of Wales, and Swansea. There are two languages spoken in Wales – English and Welsh, which is a Celtic language and very different from English. Welsh is spoken by about 21 per cent of the population and is the official language together with English. Wales is rich in culture and history. The Welsh people are known for their love of music and poetry. The University of Wales is the most prestigious university.



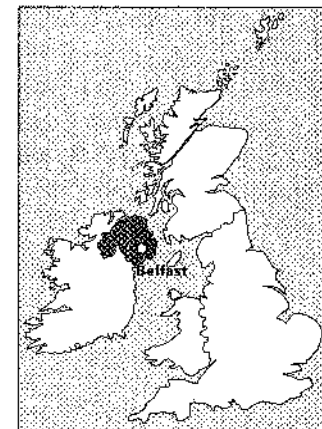
SCOTLAND

Scotland is a wonderful country – full of traditions, colour and romance. Scottish people are very independent and proud of their culture and heritage. They speak various dialects of English and 60 000 also speak Gaelic, an ancient Scottish language (in the Highlands and the Western Isles). Scotland is a country of hills, lakes (called lochs), swift rivers and deep valleys (glens). The most beautiful part of Scotland is the region known as the Highlands. The most famous lakes are Loch Lomond and Loch Ness where a mythical monster, Nessie, lives according to legends.

There are four big cities in Scotland – Glasgow, Edinburgh, Dundee and Aberdeen. Edinburgh, the ancient capital of Scotland, is one of the most beautiful cities in the world. It has become an international centre of music and drama and is famous for its annual festival – the Edinburgh International Festival of Music and Drama. Edinburgh is also famous for the engineering, printing and electronic industries. Glasgow was known all over the world for its shipbuilding and heavy steel manufacture. Scotland has its own law and education system. There are also special traditions in Scotland, such as playing bagpipes and wearing kilts (typical skirts for both men and women). Scotland has many whisky distilleries with a long tradition, which has made Scottish whisky world-famous.

NORTHERN IRELAND

Northern Ireland occupies the northern fifth of Ireland. Belfast, the capital, is also the location of Queen's University. The city is the shopping, educational, commercial, entertainment and service centre of Northern Ireland. It is also an important port. The chief exports of Northern Ireland are ships, aircraft and linen textiles. There are many small farms producing pigs, cattle, milk and eggs. The principal crops are potatoes, barley and oats. The population of Northern Ireland is Protestant and about 40 per cent are Catholic. The religious and economic problems of the people in the Northern Ireland is still alive. The Protestant community do not want to join the Republic of Ireland, but they want to remain the part of the UK.



REPUBLIC OF IRELAND

The Republic of Ireland has a population of almost four million people, who are mainly Catholics. The capital is Dublin. Other important towns are Cork, Limerick and Waterford.

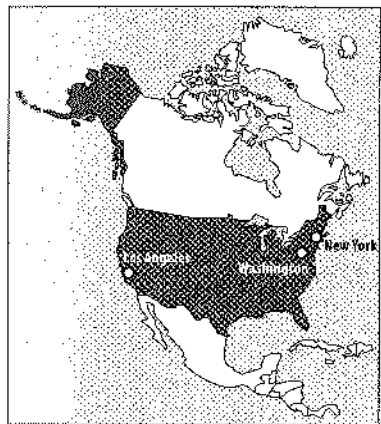
From 1845 to 1846, there was a great famine because of the failure of the potato crop. At that time, over 1.5 million people emigrated, mostly to the USA. In 1921, the Irish Free State was formed. The terrorist activities between the Catholics and Protestants have caused many political difficulties between the governments of Ireland and the UK.



THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

USA is home to people of European origin, Afro-American origin, Native American, Japanese, Chinese and other origins. Their official language is English. Many people of the USA also speak their minority and immigrant languages.

The USA is a federation of 50 states including Alaska and the island state of Hawaii. The most densely populated are the states of New York, Pennsylvania, Illinois, Ohio and Michigan. There are the most important cities, e.g. New York (14 million people), Washington DC (the capital of the USA), Philadelphia and the biggest industrial centres, Chicago and Detroit. The USA is rich in most of the metals and minerals needed in basic industries.



The northern region of the USA is called New England. It includes the states of Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Rhode Island and Vermont. It is the region where some of the first colonists settled. Old traditions are still preserved, especially in architecture and lifestyle. There are some of the most famous private universities, e.g. Harvard and Yale.

The Southern states of Virginia, West Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Kentucky, Tennessee, Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, Florida and Arkansas are agricultural, growing cotton and tobacco. It is here that the slave trade

started and Negro slaves were used to work on cotton and tobacco plantations. Racial problems are still a serious problem for the south. The State of Florida is different from the rest of the south. There are pine forests, orange plantations and beaches. This part of the country often suffers severe damage from hurricanes.

Texas, the largest state of the federation, is famous for its oil, prairies and cattle ranches. Native Americans still live on reservations in New Mexico and Arizona. The Southwest with its extensive deserts is characterised by the lack of rain and extreme temperatures during summer. The famous Grand Canyon is situated in this region.

The American West includes the following states: Washington, Oregon, Wyoming, Montana, Utah, Idaho, Nevada and California. They are also called the Rocky Mountain States. With the exception of its cities, the American West is very thinly populated. The natural beauties of national parks of this region of the USA are world famous. Thousands of tourists visit the Rocky Mountains and California beaches every year. Visitors are also attracted to the cities of California, such as San Francisco and Los Angeles. One of the most famous districts of Los Angeles, Hollywood, is the centre of both the motion-picture and television industries. Besides southern California, there are also other tourist centres, such as the semi-tropical areas of Florida, Hawaii, Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands with fine beaches. Winter sports

resorts with beautiful sceneries can be found in the Rocky Mountains and in New England. The Canadian-American Niagara Falls figures among the most beautiful natural wonders of the world.

The American system of government is based on the principles established in the Constitution, written in 1787, and in the Bill of Rights. The Constitution divides the powers of the government into three branches – the Executive Branch, the Legislative Branch and the Judicial Branch. The President of the United States is chosen in a national election for a term of four years and may only be re-elected once. In January 2009, Barack Obama became first Afro-American president of the USA.

New York City

New York City is the largest city in the USA. Its population is more than 8 million people. It is an important seaport and the largest business, industrial and cultural centre of the USA. It is also the centre of the art world, the media world, the theatre world and the fashion world.

New York, originally called New Amsterdam, was a little Dutch town built on a small part of Manhattan Island. In 1626, the Dutch colonizers bought the island from the Native Americans for 24 dollars in goods. The Dutch protected the town against the natives with a wooden wall. Today, it is *Wall Street*, which is known as the world's most important financial centre.

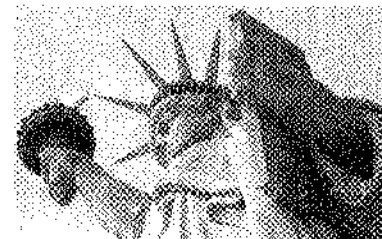
One of the most impressive views of New York City is the typical *Manhattan* skyline, seen from Liberty Island, which is dominated by a number of skyscrapers. In 2001, the tallest of them, the 110-storey *Trade Centre Towers*, were destroyed in a terrorist attack.

There are many famous attractions in New York City. The *Empire State Building* has 102 storeys and a TV tower at the top. It was the highest building in the world until 1954. Another famous place is the *Rockefeller Centre*, a large business and entertainment complex of 21 buildings, mostly skyscrapers.

The *Brooklyn Bridge* was once the longest in the world. It connects Brooklyn (one of the five boroughs of New York City) to Manhattan Island. The Brooklyn Bridge is a masterpiece of 19th century engineering. It was the first bridge to use steel for cable wire.

The *Statue of Liberty* stands with its torch in *New York City Harbour*, on *Liberty Island*. It is 92 metres high and it weighs 225 tons. The Statue symbolises freedom and democracy. It was the first sight for immigrants coming to the USA by ship in 19th and 20th centuries.

Another interesting place for visitors to New York is *Fifth Avenue*, famous for its luxurious shops, jewellers and office buildings. Equally famous is *Broadway*, an old Indian road. Most theatres and well-known *Metropolitan Opera* and *Carnegie Hall* as well as many cinemas and bars are on Broadway.



Statue of Liberty

People coming to New York City like to visit *Chinatown* with its restaurants serving typical Chinese food. A unique atmosphere is characteristic of *Greenwich village*, the home of artists, writers, actors and musicians.

Central Park is the largest and most important park in New York City. It offers both summer and winter attractions, such as a zoo, an ice-skating rink, an open-air theatre, tennis courts, cycle paths, children's playgrounds, concerts and dances.

Washington, D. C.

Washington, D. C. (District of Columbia) is the capital of the USA. There are the government buildings, such as the *White House*, the official residence of the U.S. president, the *Capitol*, which is the Congressional building and the *Supreme Court*.

There are more than 300 memorials and statues in Washington including the three most famous ones, the *Washington Monument*, the *Lincoln Memorial* and the *Jefferson Memorial*. *Georgetown*, situated to the west of the city, is the oldest and the most prestigious part and houses many foreign embassies. To the south-west are *Arlington National Cemetery*, *Ronald Reagan Airport* and the *Pentagon*, the U.S. military headquarters.

Washington is also a major national centre of culture and education. There are four universities in Washington, including *Georgetown University* (1815), which is Catholic, *George Washington University* (1821), the *American University* and *Howard University* which was opened in 1860 as a university for black students.

Principal cultural institutions are the *National Gallery of Art*, the *Smithsonian Institution* and the *Library of Congress*. The *Smithsonian Institution* is the world's largest museum complex of 15 museums and the zoo. It is an important centre for research in the arts, science and history. The *Library of Congress* is the largest U.S. library. It contains great collections of books, manuscripts and maps.

San Francisco

San Francisco is one of the most interesting cities in the United States and a major tourist centre. The city of San Francisco was almost completely destroyed by earthquake and fire in 1906, but it was quickly rebuilt. Now, San Francisco is the second largest city of California and an important financial, commercial and industrial centre on the Pacific Ocean. The famous *Golden Gate Bridge*, which is 1 280 metres long, crosses the entrance to San Francisco Bay, one of the best natural harbours in the world. The city has an interesting street railway system, which is a combination of streetcars, trolley coaches, buses and cable-cars.



Golden Gate Bridge

CANADA

Canada is the second largest country in the world. It is a country of colonial origins, first French and then British. About 29 million people of different national and cultural groups live there. Canada's population is 48 per cent of British origin, 31 per cent French origin, 2 per cent Native American and Eskimo and other minorities. English and French are both official languages, but only 17 per cent of the population is bilingual; 67 per cent speak only English, 14 per cent only French and 2 per cent other languages. All the largest cities, e.g. Montreal, Toronto, Vancouver, Winnipeg, Ottawa (the capital) and Quebec are situated near Canada's southern border. Canada is rich in raw materials including gold, silver, nickel, uranium, copper, zinc, coal, natural gas and oil. One-third of the country is covered with forest. Canada is a leading exporter of wood and wood products.



Fishing is also an important export industry: fish are caught in the rivers, lakes and ocean too. The standard of living is very high there. Canada is divided into ten provinces and two national territories. The provinces have control over education or natural resources. The responsibility for social welfare and health care is divided between federal and provincial governments.

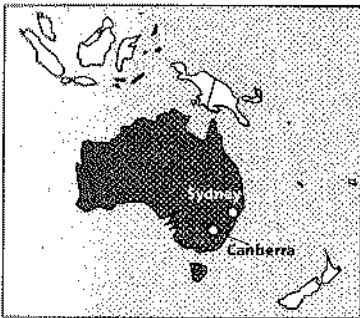
Ottawa

Ottawa is the capital of Canada. The most famous buildings, which dominate the Ottawa skyline, are the *Houses of Parliament* built in the Neo-Gothic style in 1865. The central feature of the Parliament is the *Peace Tower*, which houses the Memorial Chamber commemorating those Canadians who died for their country. Major education centres include the *University of Ottawa* and *St. Paul University*. These two universities are bilingual. The third major Canadian university, *Carleton University*, is English.



AUSTRALIA

Australia is an island continent. There are two big deserts here, the Great Sandy Desert and Great Victoria Desert. The only fertile western area is the Swan land, which has a Mediterranean climate. Australia is not densely populated. With in its large area there are only about 18 million inhabitants, mostly of British origin.



There are about 430 000 Aborigines living in Australia. Recently, many people from Asian countries have settled there. The Commonwealth of Australia is an independent self-governing country within British Commonwealth. Queen Elizabeth II, represented by a governor-general, is Head of State. The capital, Canberra, is the seat of the Federal Parliament, which consists of two houses, the Senate and the House of Representatives. The largest cities are Sydney, Melbourne, Adelaide and Brisbane. There

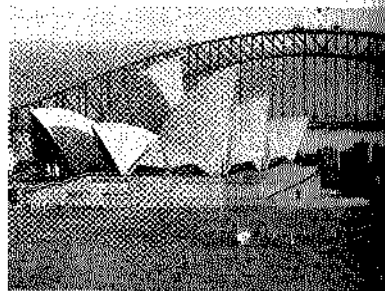
are about 40 universities in Australia. The oldest of them are in Sydney and Melbourne. Australia is an important wool-growing country. It is one of the leading producers of meat and dairy products. The Pacific Coast beaches of Australia are attractive for many tourists.

Canberra

Canberra is the capital of Australia. All the important buildings of Canberra are relatively new. They include the *Australian National University* (1936), the *National Library of Australia* (1968), the *High Court of Australia* (1981), the *Australian National Gallery* (1982) and many other important cultural centres and institutions. There are various light industries in Canberra and a growing tourism industry.

Sydney

Sydney is the largest city and the chief port of Australia. It lies in *Port Jackson Bay*, which is quite large and deep enough for even the biggest transoceanic ships. The bay is crossed by a long bridge called *Harbour Bridge*. The well-known *Opera House* lies in the bay near Harbour Bridge. The *Art Gallery* contains many works of Australian and European masters. Sydney has two universities – *Sydney University* and the *University of South Wales*. There are numerous skyscrapers in Sydney. The *Centre Point Tower* is 304.8 metres high and is the highest building in the southern hemisphere. There are restaurants and platforms from which visitors can get a view of the bay, the harbour and sky-



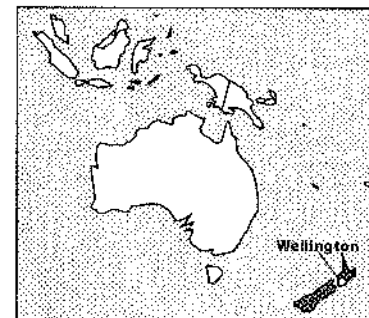
scrapers. Sydney has about 4 million inhabitants. The majority of the population live in houses in suburbs surrounding the city centre. Sydney is rich in parks and also has *The Royal Botanic Garden* with many exotic plants. There are many beautiful sandy beaches close to the city where the people can relax during hot summer.

NEW ZEALAND

New Zealand is an island country in the Pacific situated south-east of Australia. It consists of two principal islands, North Island and South Island. The northern part of the island has rolling hills and low mountains. The southern half rises from fertile plains along the coast to volcanic mountain peaks in the centre. The city of Rotorua is visited by thousands of tourists each year for its hot springs and geysers.

New Zealand is an independent parliamentary democracy within the British Commonwealth. The official Head of State is the British Queen, represented by a governor-general. Most of the population are of British origin (93 per cent), and about 7 per cent of the population are Maoris – Polynesian people. The Maoris are the original inhabitants of New Zealand who nearly all live in North Island. English is the official and dominant language. The Maoris speak Maori, a Malayo-Polynesian language. The town of Wellington, situated in the south of North Island, is the capital of New Zealand and a busy seaport.

New Zealand is a wealthy country. It is the world's third largest producer of wool and the exporter of meat, especially mutton and lamb.



SLOVAKIA

□ Geography

The **Slovak Republic** is an independent state situated in Central Europe. This area also includes Poland, the Czech Republic, Hungary, Austria, Switzerland and Germany. The Slovak Republic is bordered in the west by the Czech Republic, in the north by Poland, in the east by Ukraine and in the south by Hungary and Austria.

The most important rivers of Slovakia include the Danube, the Váh, the Moravia, the Hron, the Nitra, the Hornád and the Orava. The only river that is used for river transport is the Danube. In the course of the 20th century, many dams have been built to serve the needs of hydro-electric power, water supply, agricul-



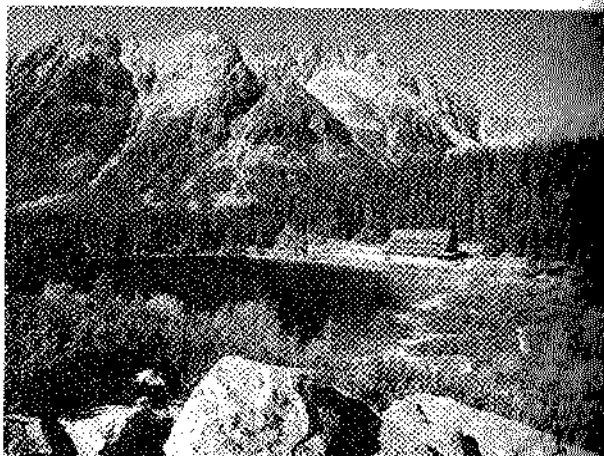
ture, tourism and sports. Most of them have been built on the river Váh, the Danube and other rivers, such as the Orava and the Hornád. There are beautiful mountain lakes in Slovakia, many of which are of glacial origin. The country is also rich in thermal springs and have been used in healing serious diseases for many centuries.

Slovakia is largely a mountainous country. There are extensive lowlands only in the southern and south-eastern parts. In the west, the Little Carpathians are situated to the north of Bratislava. They provide excellent opportunities for inhabitants of the capital and its surroundings to relax and enjoy the beautiful scenery. There are many caves and canyons in the area. The White Carpathians create a natural border between Slovakia and the Czech Republic. There are several national parks and protected regions in Slovakia, such as the High Tatras – the highest mountains of the country – the Low Tatra, the Little Fatras, the Great Fatra, Upper Orava, Kysuca, Poľana, Štiavica hills, Slovak Paradise.

The High Tatras

The High Tatras is situated in the north of Slovakia and creates the natural border between Slovakia and Poland. The highest peaks of the High Tatras are: Gerlach (2 655 m), Lomnický štít (2 632 m) and Kriváň (2 494 m). The most frequently visited lake of the High Tatra is Štrbské pleso. It is popular not only for wonderful views of the surrounding mountain peaks but also for excellent climate which is good

for healing some diseases of the respiratory system. Visitors to Štrbské pleso can stay in modern hotels Panorama and Patria. For tourists interested in older architecture there is Starý Smokovec, founded at the end of the 18th century. The High Tatras National Park is Slovakia's largest. Some 1 500 species of various plants are represented in the flora of this area including the oldest protected flower of Slovakia – the edelweiss. As for the fauna of the High Tatra, it is still possible to see bear, lynx, wildcats, otters, mountain eagles, chamois, marmot and other animals here.



Slovak Paradise

Slovak Paradise is a romantic and picturesque region. There are many rock windows, caves, wild and deep ravines, waterfalls but also vast plains and ridges with fascinating views of the area. The richness of flora and fauna and the beautiful scenery make the Slovak Paradise an attractive area for tourism. The village of Čingov

is the main holiday resort there. Dobšinská ľadová jaskyňa is the oldest ice cave in Europe. It is one of the most attractive places for tourists visiting Slovak Paradise.

Economy

In the past, the majority of people worked in agriculture. Nowadays, it is only 10 per cent of population. The following resources of raw materials and fuel resources can be found on the territory of Slovakia: copper, iron ore, lead, zinc, precious metals, magnesite, limestone, dolomite, ceramic materials, mineral salts, brown coal and natural gas. Industry is the most important branch of the Slovak economy. It employs a third of the country's population. Enormous ironworks were built in the east, near Košice, to produce steel, iron and tin for the needs of engineering. In recent years, these have become the part of US Steel. The chemical industry is concentrated in the western part of the country, especially in Bratislava (Slovnaft) and Šaľa (Duslo). Car industry has become very important in the last years.

Population and towns

Slovakia is one of the smaller European countries. People of several nations and ethnic groups live on the territory of Slovakia. 85.7 per cent of inhabitants are Slovaks. The most numerous minority, the Hungarians live in the south of Slovakia. The Ukraine and Ruthenian minorities are concentrated in the eastern part of the country. The Roma people live throughout the whole of Slovakia. The Czech, German and Polish people form the smallest minorities.

Slovakia has a long Christian tradition. The majority of religious people are Roman Catholics, Evangelists, Greek Catholics, Calvinists and Russian Orthodox. The Jewish community is small because many Slovak Jews died in the Holocaust during World War II.

The capital of Slovakia, Bratislava, is the political, cultural and industrial centre of the country. The larger towns of Slovakia include Košice, Prešov, Nitra, Žilina, Banská Bystrica. The smaller towns and villages most frequently visited by tourists are Banská Štiavnica, Vlkolíne, Kremnica, Bardejov, Levoča (with the largest wooden altar in the world made by Master Paul in the early 16th century). Many smaller Slovak towns, e.g. Bojnice, Zvolen, Trenčín, Oravský Podzámok, Spišská Nová Ves, Krásna Hôrka, Antol are famous for their castles. The following ones are included in the UNESCO World Cultural Heritage List: Spiš Castle – the largest medieval castle of the Central Europe built in the 12th century, Vlkolíne – a mountain village with typical folk architecture located in the natural setting of the Veľká Fatra mountains, and Banská Štiavnica – a town reservation located in a beautiful valley in the Štiavnica Hills.

Bratislava

Bratislava is the capital of Slovakia. It has a long history. It was important in Celtic and Roman times. Later the Slavs and then the Avars settled in the area. In the 9th century, Bratislava became an important town of the Great Moravian Empire. In 1467, the first Slovak university, *Academia Istropolitana*, was established. From 1526 to 1784 Bratislava was the capital of Hungary. During that time, the Hungarian kings and queens had their coronations there.

There are around 300 historic palaces and buildings in the old town of Bratislava that are museums and galleries now. In *Bratislava Castle* there are the greatest treasures of the country's ancient history, such as the Paleolithic Venus, gold Paleolithic jewellery, Celtic coins, silver Roman dishes and jewellery.

The *Old Town Hall*, the oldest town hall on the territory of Slovakia, is also a museum today. The largest palace in the town is *Primaciálny Palace*. It is a gallery presenting Flemish and Italian painters of the 16th to 18th centuries.

Pálffy's Palace exhibits baroque paintings of central Europe and Slovak paintings from the 19th and the 20th centuries. The *Slovak National Gallery* is situated close to the river Danube. Inside the building, there are exhibitions of Slovak art from the 12th century up to the present day.

Michal Tower, with its famous *Michal Gate* is the only preserved part of the town fortifications. There are hardly any visitors to Bratislava who would not pass through Michal Gate, which is the gate to the Old Town. The exhibition in Michal Tower describes the battles which took place in Bratislava. Plans, arms and military kit of the time are displayed there.

Bratislava is the residence of the Slovak President, the seat of national, political, economical, social and scientific bodies and institutions. It is also the seat of the country's government and parliament. Bratislava houses the most important university in Slovakia, *Comenius University*. The *Slovak National Theatre* and a number of other theatres, concert and exhibition halls, cinemas are also centres of the country's cultural life.

Košice

Košice is the metropolis of East Slovakia. It has a long history. In the 15th century it became one of the biggest European trade centres. The Turkish invasion of Europe in the 16th century changed everything. The trade routes turned westwards and the town was rebuilt into a strong anti-Turkish fortress. In the 17th century there were few rebellions. The tomb of the leader of the last anti-Habsburg uprising, F. Rákóczi II, is in the *Minster of St. Elizabeth*. An exposition documenting this period can be found in the *East Slovak Museum*. In the 17th century, a university in Košice was established. In the 18th and 19th centuries, a number of palaces appeared, which now serve various public purposes: the *Empire Forgach Palace* and the classicist *Town*

Hall are libraries, the baroque *Rákóczi Palace* is a technical museum. The rich history and different architecture of Košice fascinate its visitors. It is a pleasant place to live.

Banská Bystrica

Banská Bystrica was a famous mining town in the past. Nowadays, it is an important administrative, economic and cultural centre of central Slovakia. The centre is dominated by the town castle which dates from the 14th century and the late Gothic town hall, rebuilt at the end of the 15th century. In the historic centre, visitors can admire Gothic, Renaissance and baroque houses. One of them, *Thurzo's house*, was the seat of the Thurzo-Fogger Mining Society in the 15th – 16th century. Now, it is a museum with archaeological expositions containing collections documenting the importance of mining and crafts in the town. One of the most interesting memorials in Slovakia is the *Museum and Memorial of the Slovak National Uprising*. It is situated in a large modern building together with the open space around it. The heavy arms used in the Slovak National Uprising are displayed there. Inside the monument, the military activities in the battlefields of World War I and II are documented. It is also the seat of one of the most recently established universities, the *University of Matej Bel*.

Nitra

The history of **Nitra** is connected with the history of the Great Moravian Empire. *Nitra Castle* was the residence of princes and sovereigns including Prince Svätopluk. The castle often changed its feudal lords. In the 17th century, the Turks conquered the town and the castle and left it in ruins. The most important historic buildings are *St. Emeram's Church* (Pribina's church) and the *Bishop's Cathedral*, the *Great Seminary – St. Gorazd Theological School*, the *Franciscan Monastery and Church*, and a rich diocesan library, unique in Central Europe. Close to the entrance of the castle stands the *Plague Column*, which is the most valued in the country. The modern history of Nitra started after 1945 with rapid development of the town. Nitra has developed into an important district town with two universities – the *University of Agriculture* and the *University of Constantine the Philosopher*. Nitra has become a famous centre of agriculture with its popular summer exhibitions of agricultural machinery, food products and animals, which can be seen every year in the large exhibition area of the *Agrokomplex*. *Andrej Bagar Theatre* is a modern building in the centre of the town.

THE EUROPEAN UNION

The European Union was originally a common market for coal and steel formed by the *Treaty of Paris* in 1951. The idea was first proposed by the French foreign minister, *Robert Schuman*, in a speech on May 9th, 1950. This date is now celebrated as Europe Day.

What is today the *European Union* (EU) began as a trading bloc between six countries: Belgium, Germany, France, Italy, Luxemburg and the Netherlands. The United Kingdom joined in 1973, Greece in 1981, followed by Spain and Portugal in 1986, and Austria, Finland and Sweden in 1995. The expansion in May 2004 includes 10 new countries: Cyprus, the Czech Republic, Estonia, Hungary, Latvia, Lithuania, Malta, Poland, Slovakia and Slovenia. In 2007, Bulgaria and Romania joined the EU. This makes a total of 27 countries. The EU flag has 12 gold stars on a blue background. Its anthem is Beethoven's *Ode to Joy*.

The EU deals with many different topics important to our everyday life: citizens' rights and freedom, security, justice, job creation, regional development and environmental protection. It respects the differences between nations, promoting unity while preserving diversity. All the languages of the European Union states are official languages of the European Union. Citizens have a right to communicate with the EU institutions in any of them.

The 1997 *Amsterdam Treaty* extended the *Schengen area* – a common zone ensuring freedom of movement within the EU for all its citizens. The *Schengen area* currently excludes the UK and Ireland. Slovakia entered the Schengen passport-free zone in 2008.

The 1992 *Maastricht Treaty on European Union* prepared the way for further expansion. It also brought in a new currency, the euro (€) from 1999. At first, the euro was only in electronic form, but was introduced as a full currency in January 2002. Slovakia joined the euro zone in 2009.

The EU is based on democratic principles. The *European Council* is a meeting between the heads of the EU states at least twice a year. The presidency of the *European Council* changes between countries every six months. It is the main decision-making body of the EU.

The *European Commission* is the executive body of the EU. It has its headquarters in Brussels, the capital of Belgium. Commissioners are selected from the European Union countries.

The *European Parliament* provides democratic control for the EU. Meeting in Strasbourg, France, it monitors the work of the Commission and votes on its programme each year. The members of the Parliament are directly elected by the citizens of each country in the EU. Other important EU institutions are the *Court of Human Rights* in Strasbourg, the *Court of Justice* in Luxembourg and the *Court of Auditors*, which monitors EU budgets.

One of the main concerns nowadays is to fight against financial crisis. The EU calls for stronger coordination of economic and financial policies.

EU Members

1952	Belgium, France, Germany, Italy, Luxembourg, the Netherlands
1973	Denmark, Ireland, the United Kingdom
1981	Greece
1986	Portugal, Spain
1995	Austria, Finland, Sweden
2004	Cyprus, the Czech Republic, Estonia, Hungary, Latvia, Lithuania, Malta, Poland, Slovakia, Slovenia
2007	Bulgaria, Romania

NATO

The North Atlantic Treaty Organisation (NATO) was founded in 1949 as an alliance of 12 countries in the North Atlantic and Europe to guard against further expansion of the Soviet Union. Its general aim was to "safeguard the freedom, common heritage and civilisation" of its members. The members agreed that an armed attack against one will be considered an attack against them all. A counter-alliance called the *Warsaw Pact* was formed by the Soviet Union and eastern European countries in 1955.

NATO's role changed with the collapse of the Soviet Union in 1991. It has since led peacekeeping operations in Bosnia, Yugoslavia, and Kosovo and built new relationships with former Warsaw Pact countries and Russia. The NATO-Russia Council, established in 2002, gave Russia an equal role in the fight against terrorism and other threats.

NATO has its headquarters in Brussels, Belgium. Its main body, the *Council of Foreign Ministers*, has permanent representatives there. NATO currently consists of 28 member countries. These include: Albania, Belgium, Bulgaria, Canada, Croatia, the Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Italy, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Turkey, the United Kingdom, the United States. Slovakia officially became a partner country of NATO in 1993 and a member in 2004.

The war on terrorism represents a challenge for NATO. After the terrorist attack on New York and Washington on September 11th, 2001, Secretary-General *George Robertson* offered support to the USA. However, the USA did not involve NATO in the military campaign against Afghanistan that followed. 2003 was a difficult year for NATO. Its members argued over the need to go to war against Iraq.

SOME USEFUL PHRASES AND EXPRESSIONS

niektoré užitočné frázy a výrazy

Box 1: HOW TO DESCRIBE A PICTURE (ako opísať obrázok)

In this picture, there's a... Na obrázku sa nachádza...
I can see a/some... Vidím nejaký/nejakú/nejaké...

Box 2: HOW TO DESCRIBE A STRANGE OBJECT (ako opísať neznámy predmet)

It's a thing which... To je vec, ktorá...
It looks like... Vyzerá to ako...

Box 3: HOW TO DESCRIBE A PLACE (ako opísať miesto)

This place is famous for... Toto miesto je známe pre...
It's situated in... Nachádza sa...

Box 4: HOW TO DESCRIBE A PERSON (ako opísať človeka)

What does he/she look like? Ako vyzerá?

He/She is quite/rather/very tall/skinny/stylish. Je dosť/skôr/veľmi vysoký/-á/vychudnutý/-á/moderný/-á.

He/She has got short/black/curly hair. Má krátke/čierne/kučeravé vlasy.

He/She cares about himself/herself. Stará sa o seba.

What is he/she like? Aký/Aká je?

He/She is quite/rather/very friendly/responsible/careless. Je dosť/skôr/veľmi priateľský/-á/zodpovedný/-á/nedbanlivý/-á.

He/She cares a lot about other people. Veľmi sa zaujíma o druhých ľudí.

He/She is the sort of a person who... Je to typ človeka, ktorý...

He/she makes me happy. Som šťastný/-á, keď som s ním/ňou.

How old is he/she? Koľko má rokov?

He/She is in his/her early/mid/late twenties. Má niečo po dvadsiatke/asi 25/takmer 30.

Box 5: HOW TO COMPARE (ako opísať spoločné vlastnosti)

It's similar to... Podobá sa to na...
It's the same as... Je to rovnaké ako...

Box 6: HOW TO CONTRAST (ako opísať odlišné vlastnosti)

It's different from... Líši sa to od...
There are few differences between... Medzi... je niekoľko rozdielov.
The biggest difference between... is... Najväčší rozdiel medzi... je...

Box 7: HOW TO DESCRIBE ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES (ako opísať výhody a nevýhody)

There are few advantages/disadvantages of... Medzi výhody/nevýhody patria...
The first advantage/disadvantage is that... Prvou výhodou/nevýhodou je to, že...

Box 8: HOW TO EXPRESS OPINION (ako vyjadriť názor)

I think/believe/feel... Myslím si/verím/cítim, že...
In my opinion/view... Podľa môjho názoru/z môjho hľadiska...
According to some people... Podľa niektorých ľudí...

Box 9: HOW TO AGREE WITH AN OPINION (ako súlašiť s názorom)

I agree (completely)/(entirely). (Celkom/úplne) súhlasím.
Exactly. Absolutely. Definitely. Presne. (Rozhodne.)
I think so. Myslím, že áno.

Box 10: HOW TO DISAGREE WITH AN OPINION (ako nesúhlasiť s názorom)

Yes, but... Áno, ale...
I agree with you, but... Súhlasím s vami/tebou, ale...
I don't think so. Nemyslím si to.

Box 11: HOW TO GIVE REASONS, ARGUMENTS AND EXAMPLES (ako argumentovať a uviesť príklady)

Firstly.../Secondly... Po prvé, po druhé...
The first reason is... Prvým dôvodom je...
For example... Napríklad...

Box 12: HOW TO START AN INFORMAL CONVERSATION WITH FRIENDS (ako začať neformálnu konverzáciu s priateľmi)

Hi, Tim, is that you? Ahoj Tim, si to ty?
I haven't seen you for a long time. Dlhoo som ťa nevidel.
Tim, how have you been? Tim, ako sa mávaš?

Box 13: HOW TO START A FORMAL CONVERSATION WITH STRANGERS
(ako začať formálnu konverzáciu s neznámymi)

Are you here for business or pleasure? Ste/si tu kvôli práci alebo zábave?
Is this your first visit to Slovakia? Ste/si na Slovensku prvýkrát?
The weather is awful, isn't it? Počasie je hrozné, však?
I'm sorry to trouble you, but haven't we met before? Prepáčte, že vás obťažujem, ale nestretli sme sa už?

Box 14: HOW TO FINISH A CONVERSATION (ako ukončiť konverzáciu)

It was great to see you/to talk to you again. Som rád/-a, že sme sa znova stretli./Rád/rada som sa s vami/tebou porozprával/-a.
I am afraid that it's getting late. Bohužiaľ, už je dosť neskoro. (Musím ísť.)
I've got to go now, see you. Už musím ísť. Maj sa.

Box 15: HOW TO GIVE RECOMMENDATIONS (ako odporučiť)

I'd really recommend... Určite by som odporučil/-a...
You must/should certainly try... Určite musíte (musíš)/mali by ste (mal by si) vyskúšať...
You shouldn't ... Nemali by ste.../Nemal by si...
You should never... Nikdy by ste nemali.../Nikdy by si nemal...

Box 16: HOW TO MAKE POLITE REQUESTS (ako zdvorilo o niečo požiadať)

Excuse me, can I...? Prepáčte, môžem...?
Would you mind...-ing? Vadilo by vám...?/Vadilo by ti...?
Do you mind if I...? Vadí vám...?/Vadí ti...?
Can you/Could you..., please? Môžete (môžeš)/Mohli by ste (mohol by si)...?
May I...? Smiem...?

Box 17: HOW TO INVITE (ako pozvať)

Would you like to...? Chceli by ste...?/Chcel/-a by si...?
Do you feel like... -ing? Chcelo by sa vám/ti...?

Box 18: HOW TO ACCEPT AN INVITATION (ako prijať pozvanie)

Yes, I'd love to. Áno, rád/-a by som...
That would be great. Thanks. To by bolo výborné. Ďakujem.

Box 19: HOW TO REFUSE AN INVITATION (ako odmietnuť pozvanie)

We can't, I'm afraid. Obávam sa, že nemôžeme.
Sorry, but we're busy. Prepáčte, ale sme zaneprázdnení.
Well, actually... Nuž, vlastne...

Box 20: HOW TO ASK FOR HELP/ADVICE: (ako požiadať o pomoc/radu)

Excuse me, could you tell me how to get to... Prepáčte, mohli by ste mi povedať, ako sa dostanem...?
Do you think you could help me with...? Myslíte, že by ste mi mohli pomôcť s...?

Box 21: HOW TO OFFER HELP (ako ponúknuť pomoc)

Shall I help you? Mám vám/ti pomôcť?
Can I help you? Môžem vám/ti pomôcť?
I'll do it for you. Spravím to pre vás/teba.

Box 22: HOW TO ACCEPT HELP (ako prijať pomoc)

Thank you. That's very kind of you. Ďakujem, je to od vás/teba veľmi milé.

Box 23: HOW TO REFUSE HELP (ako odmietnuť pomoc)

It's all right. To je v poriadku.
Thanks. I can manage. Ďakujem. Zvládnem to.

Box 24: HOW TO COMPLAIN (ako sa sťažovať)

I would like to complain about... Chcel/-a by som sa sťažovať kvôli...
I am not happy with... Nie som spokojný/-á s...
I was very disappointed when I... Bol/-a som sklamaný/-á, keď...

Box 25: HOW TO APOLOGISE (ako sa ospravedlniť)

I am afraid that I cannot... Obávam sa, že nemôžem...
I am sorry... Je mi to ľúto...

Box 26: HOW TO EXPRESS PREFERENCE (ako vyjadriť to, čo uprednostňujeme)

I prefer... because... Uprednostňujem..., pretože...
I like... more than/less than... because... Mám/nemám radšej... ako..., pretože...
I enjoy... because... Mám rád/-a/Teším sa z..., pretože...

Box 27: HOW TO EXPRESS SYMPATHY (ako vyjadriť súcit)

I'm sorry to hear that. Je mi to ľúto.
I hope it's not serious. Dúfam, že to nie je vážne.
How bad! To je zlé!

Box 28: HOW TO GIVE ADVICE (ako poradiť)

I think we should... Myslím, že by sme mali...

I think that you should... Myslím si, že by ste mali/že by si mal/-a...

You'd better... Mali by ste radšej/Mal/-a by si radšej...

Box 29: HOW TO GIVE COMPLIMENTS (ako pochváliť)

It tastes good/delicious. Chutí to dobre.

It's very tasty. Je to veľmi chutné.

What a nice sweater! Aký pekný sveter!

That's an elegant handbag. To je elegantná kabelka.

That's a beautiful scarf. To je krásna šatka.

What a good material! Aký dobrý materiál!

Box 30: HOW TO CRITICISE (ako vyjadriť kritiku)

It tastes good/delicious. Chutí to dobre.

I think it's too spicy/salty/overcooked. Myslím, že je to príliš korenisté/slané/prevarené.

It's not salty enough. Nie je to dosť slané.

It's tasteless. Je to bez chuti.

There's not enough salt in it. Nie je tam dosť soli.

I'm afraid there's a fly/hair in my soup. Obávam sa, že v mojej polievke je mucha/vlas.

This blouse doesn't suit you. Táto blúzka ti nepristane.

These shoes don't go well with your dress. Tieto topánky sa nehodia k твоjim šatám.

It doesn't match your skirt at all. Vôbec sa ti to nehodí k sukni.

What an awful pattern! Aký hrozný vzor!

This T-shirt is too tight. Toto tričko je príliš úzke.

It doesn't look good on you. Nevyzerá to na tebe dobre.

Box 31: HOW TO ASK FOR INFORMATION (ako žiadať o informáciu)

Sorry, what/who/where/why/how...? Prepáčte, čo/kto/kde/prečo/ako...?

Excuse me, do you know...? Prepáčte, viete/poznáte...?

Excuse me, could you tell me...? Prepáčte, mohli by ste mi povedať...?

I'd like to know/ask if... Chcel/-a by som vedieť/spýtať sa či...

Could you tell me how to...? Mohli by ste mi povedať, ako...?

Could you give me some information about...? Mohli by ste ma informovať o...?

I wonder if you could tell me... Mohli by ste mi povedať...

Box 32: HOW TO FILL TIME IN CONVERSATION (ako vyplniť čas počas konverzácie)

How should I say this? Ako by som to mal/-a povedať?

You know, I think that... Viete/vieš, myslím si, že...

Box 33: HOW TO EXPRESS WISHES (ako vyjadriť želanie)

I wish I saw.../went to... because... Želám si, aby som videl/-a.../išiel/išla do..., pretože...

I wish I lived/studied/worked... Želám si, aby som žil/-a/študoval/-a/pracoval/-a...

I would really like to see... because... Veľmi rád by som videl/-a..., pretože...

Once, I would like to live/study/work in... because... Raz by som rád/-a žil/-a/študoval/a/pracoval/a..., pretože...

Box 34: HOW TO PERSUADE (ako presvedčiť)

You (certainly, definitely) should... Určite by si mal/-a/by ste mali...

If I were you, I would... Keby som bol/-a tebou/vami...

SHORT DIALOGUES

krátke dialógy

☐ Greetings (Pozdravy)

- Good morning. – Good morning. (*until noon*)
- Good afternoon. – Good afternoon. (*until 6 p.m.*)
- Good evening. – Good evening.
- Hello, Pat. – Hello, Mike. (*Do not use "hello" to say goodbye!*)
- Hi. – Hi.

☐ Farewells (Lúčenie sa)

- Goodbye. – Goodbye.
- Good night. – Good night. (*after 8 p.m. or before going to bed*)
- See you later. – All right. (*the same day*)
- See you tomorrow. – Good. See you then.
- Bye-bye. – Bye.

☐ Meeting friends (Stretnutie s priateľmi)

- Hi, Bob! How are you?
- Fine, and you?
- Not bad. What's new?
- Not a lot. How's your family doing?
- Pretty good, thanks. And yours?
- My mother is ill.
- I'm sorry to hear that.
- Morning, Pat. Nice to see you.
- Morning, Peter. How are you?
- Quite well, thank you. How are you getting on?
- Not too bad, thanks.
- How's Mr. Lee? I heard he had a serious illness. Has he already recovered?
- Yes, he is all right now.
- Please, give him my best wishes.
- Yes, I will, thank you.
- How's it going?
- Fine, thanks./So-so.
- How are things?
- Okay./Couldn't be better.
- What's new?
- Not much.

☐ Introductions (Predstavovanie)

- Allow me to introduce Dr. Smith. This is Mr. Malý.
- Nice to met you. Welcome to Slovakia.
- Thank you, I'm happy to be here.
- Let me introduce Mr. Parker. This is Mr. Paprčka.
- Pleased to meet you.
- I'd like you to meet my friend, Bob Parker.
- Hello, Bob. I'm Jane.
- Hello. It's a pleasure to meet you.
- Have you met Betty?
- No, I haven't. Hello, Betty. I'm Frank.
- Hello, Frank, I've heard so much about you.
- Have you two met?
- No, we haven't.
- Oh, sorry, George. This is Harry. Harry, this is George.
- Pleased to meet you.
- May I introduce myself? My name is...

☐ Invitations/Requests (Pozvanie/Žiadosť – prosba)

Acceptance/Refusal (Priятие/Odmietnutie)

- ☐ Would you like to come for a drive with us tomorrow?
- ✓ Yes, I'd love to. I'd love that very much.
- ✗ I wish I could, but I've got something else on.
- ☐ Could I invite you to a movie tonight?
- ✓ Thanks a lot. That sounds great.
- ✗ I'm sorry, but I'm already busy. May be some other time.
- ☐ What about going for a trip on Sunday?
- ✓ What a great idea! I'd love to.
- ✗ I really would like to, but I'm too busy this weekend. Sorry.
- ☐ Would you like to join me for dinner?
- ✓ With pleasure.
- ✓ Certainly.
- ✗ It's very kind of you, but unfortunately I can't.
- ☐ Would it disturb you if I opened the window?
- ✓ No, of course not. Go ahead.
- ✗ I'm sorry, but I'd prefer you didn't. It's very noisy outside.
- ☐ Would you pass me the pen, please?
- ✓ Yes, of course. Here you are.
- Thank you.
- You're welcome.

- ☐ Can you tell me the time?
- ✓ Certainly, it's...
- ✗ I'm afraid I can't. I don't have a watch on.
- ☐ Can you help me, please?
- ✓ With pleasure. What can I do for you?
- ✗ I'm sorry, but I'm very busy right now. Do you think you could ask someone else?
- ☐ Excuse me, may I smoke here?
- ✓ Of course you can.
- ✗ Well, you are allowed to, but I'd rather you didn't.
- ✗ I'm sorry, but it's not allowed in this part of the building.
- ☐ I'm sorry to trouble you, but I'm lost. Do you think you could help me?
- ✓ Yes, certainly. Where are you trying to get to?
- ✗ I'm sorry, but I'm a stranger here, myself.

□ Expressing thanks (Poďakovanie)

- You've been very kind. Thank you.
- It was my pleasure.
- Thank you very much for your advice.
- You're welcome.
- I'm very grateful to you for helping me.
- Don't mention it, I'm glad I could help.
- That was very nice of you. Thank you.
- Really, it was nothing. You don't need to thank me.
- Thanks for the invitation.
- You're welcome.
- Thank you for coming.
- Thank you for a wonderful meal.
- Thank you for seeing/walking me home.
- It was a pleasure.
- Thank you for a very pleasant evening.
- It was really nice having you here with us. We hope to see you again soon.

□ Apologies (Ospravedlnenie sa)

- Excuse me, please.
- Of course, forget it.
- I'm very sorry.
- That's quite all right.
- Sorry I'm late.
- It's okay, don't worry about it.

- Sorry, I forgot to tell you.
- Don't worry about it.
- Excuse me for being late.
- Never mind. That's okay.
- I'm afraid I won't be able to come tomorrow.
- Oh, I'm sorry to hear that.
- Just a minute. I'll be right back.
- It's all right. I'm in no hurry.

□ Misunderstandings (Nedorozumenie)

- Excuse me, are you Mr. Smith?
- No, I'm not. There must be some mistake.
- Oh, sorry.
- That's all right.
- Excuse me, I'm looking for Mr. Blake.
- Sorry, he's not here right now. Can I help you?

□ Agreement and disagreement (Vyjadrenie súhlasu a nesúhlasu)

- ☐ It's a nice day, isn't it?
- ✓ Yes, it is.
- ☐ It looks like rain, doesn't it?
- ✓ I'm afraid it does.
- ✗ I hope not.
- ☐ Nasty day, isn't it?
- ✓ Oh yes, dreadful.
- ☐ You don't mind walking, don't you?
- ✓ No, of course not.
- ✗ Well, not really. I'd prefer to go by car.
- ☐ That's a nice dress.
- ✓ Thank you, it's so kind of you to say so.
- ☐ Tom will be surprised.
- ✓ Yes, I think he will.
- ☐ He'll be angry.
- ✓ Yes, I'm afraid he will.
- ✓ Yes, I expect so.
- ✗ No, don't worry, he'll be fine about it.
- ☐ Rose will be on time.
- ✓ Yes, I hope so.
- ✗ Well, unfortunately, she might not be, she isn't very punctual.

- ☐ We'll catch the morning train.
☒ I hope so.
- ☐ It'll be crowded.
☒ I hope not.
- ☐ Ann won't come, will she?
☒ No, I'm afraid she won't.
- ☐ Let's go for a walk. What do you say?
☒ Good idea. That would be nice.
☒ Well, I don't know – it looks like it might rain.
- ☐ Young fathers do not take good care of their children.
☒ I couldn't agree with you more.
☒ I'm sorry, but I can't agree with you.
☒ I personally don't think so.
- ☐ Most pupils hate mathematics.
☒ Oh, I wouldn't say that. Some of them love it.

WORD FORMATION

slovo tvorba

NOUN (podstatné meno)	ADJECTIVE (prídavné meno)	VERB (sloveso)
ADVENTURE dobrodružstvo	ADVENTUROUS dobrodružný	~
ARGUMENT argument; hádka	ARGUMENTATIVE hašterivý	TO ARGUE diskutovať, hádať sa
ARRIVAL príchod	~	TO ARRIVE prísť
BENEFIT prínos	BENEFICIAL prínosný	TO BENEFIT ťažiť (z), profitovať (z)
BOREDOM nuda	BORING nudný BORED znudený	TO BORE nudiť, otravovať niekoho TO BE BORED nudiť sa
CARE pozornosť, starostlivosť	CAREFUL opatrný, starostlivý	TO CARE (about) starať sa o
COMFORT pohodlie	COMFORTABLE pohodlný	~
COMPETITION súťaž, konkurencia	COMPETITIVE konkurencieschopný	TO COMPETE súťažiť, konkurovať
CREATIVITY tvorivosť	CREATIVE tvorivý	TO CREATE vytvoriť
DANGER nebezpečenstvo	DANGEROUS nebezpečný	~
DEPENDENCE závislosť	DEPENDENT závislý	TO DEPEND (on) závisieť na
DESCRIPTION opis	DESCRIPTIVE popisný	TO DESCRIBE opísať
DIFFERENCE rozdiel	DIFFERENT odlišný	TO DIFFER líšiť sa
DIFFICULTY problém, ťažkosť	DIFFICULT ťažký, zložitý	~
EMPATHY súcit	EMPATHIC empatický, súcitný	~
ENJOYMENT radosť, potešenie	ENJOYABLE radostný, príjemný	TO ENJOY mať radosť, mať potešenie z
ENTERTAINMENT zábava	ENTERTAINING zábavný	TO ENTERTAIN zabávať
ENTRANCE vstup	~	TO ENTER vstúpiť
EXCITEMENT rozrušenie, nadšenie	EXCITING vzrušujúci EXCITED nadšený	TO EXCITE nadchnúť, vzbudiť nadšenie
FAME sláva	FAMOUS slávny	~
FINANCES financie	FINANCIAL finančný	TO FINANCE financovať
FLEXIBILITY pružnosť	FLEXIBLE pružný	~
FOREIGNER cudzinec	FOREIGN cudzí	~
FREQUENCY frekvencia, častota	FREQUENT častý, obvyklý	~
HAPPINESS šťastie	HAPPY šťastný	~
HEAT horúčava	HOT horúci	TO HEAT zohriať, žeraviť
HEIGHT výška	HIGH vysoký	TO HEIGHTEN zvýšiť, zosilniť

HOSPITALITY pohostinnosť	HOSPITABLE pohostinný	~
IMPORTANCE dôležitosť	IMPORTANT dôležitý	~
INCREASE rast, nárast	INCREASING narastajúci	TO INCREASE narastať, zvyšovať sa
INDEPENDENCE nezávislosť	INDEPENDENT nezávislý	~
INFECTION infikovanie, nakazenie	INFECTED infikovaný, nakazený	TO INFECT (with) infikovať, nakaziť
INFLUENCE vplyv	INFLUENTIAL vplyvný	TO INFLUENCE ovplyvniť
INHABITANT obyvateľ	INHABITED obývaný	TO INHABIT obývať
INTEGRATION integrácia, začlenenie	INTEGRATED integrovaný, začlenený	TO INTEGRATE integrovať, začleniť
INTEREST záujem	INTERESTING zaujímavý	TO BE INTERESTED (in) zaujímať sa (o)
INVENTION vynález	INVENTIVE vynálezávy	TO INVENT vynájsť
INVITATION pozvanie	INVITED pozvaný	TO INVITE pozvať
LENGTH dĺžka	LONG dlhý	TO LENGTHEN predĺžiť
LIFE život	(A) LIVE živý	TO LIVE žiť
LOCATION miesto	LOCAL miestny	TO LOCATE lokalizovať, umiestniť
LOSS strata	LOST stratený	TO LOSE stratiť
LUXURY luxus, prepych	LUXURIOUS luxusný, prepychový	~
MEANING význam, zmysel	MEANINGFUL zmysluplný MEANINGLESS nezmyselný	TO MEAN znamenať
MYSTERY záhada	MYSTERIOUS zahadný	~
OCCASION príležitosť	OCCASIONAL príležitostný	~
OWNER majiteľ	OWN vlastný, svoj	TO OWN vlastniť
PATIENCE trpezlivosť	PATIENT trpezlivý	~
PEACE mier, pokoj	PEACEFUL mierový, pokojný	TO PACIFY upokojiť
PERMISSION povolenie	PERMITTED povolený	TO PERMIT povoliť
PERSON osoba	PERSONAL osobný	TO PERSONALISE zosobniť, prispôbiť
PERSUASION presvedčenie	PERSUASIVE presvedčivý	TO PERSUADE presvedčiť
PLACEMENT umiestnenie	PLACED umiestnený	TO PLACE umiestniť, položiť
PLAY hra	PLAYFUL hravý	TO PLAY hrať
POLLUTION znečistenie	POLLUTED znečistený POLLUTING znečisťujúci	TO POLLUTE znečistiť
PREFERENCE preferencia	PREFERRED preferovaný	TO PREFER preferovať
PROFESSION profesia	PROFESSIONAL profesionálny	~
REACTION reakcia	REACTIVE reagujúci, reaktívny	TO REACT reagovať
RELAXATION relax, oddych	RELAXING uvoľňujúci	TO RELAX relaxovať, oddychovať
RELIGION náboženstvo	RELIGIOUS náboženský, nábožný	~

REPETITION opakovanie	REPETITIVE opakujúci sa	TO REPEAT opakovať
REQUIREMENT požiadavka	REQUIRED požadovaný	TO REQUIRE požadovať
RESPECT rešpekt, úcta	RESPECTFUL úctivý, zdvorilý	TO RESPECT rešpektovať, vážiť si
RESPONSIBILITY zodpovednosť	RESPONSIBLE (for) zodpovedný (za)	~
RETIREMENT odchod do dôchodku, dôchodok	RETIRED ten, kto je v dôchodku	TO RETIRE ísť do dôchodku
RISK riziko	RISKY riskantný	TO RISK riskovať
SATISFACTION spokojnosť	SATISFIED spokojný SATISFYING uspokojujúci, uspokojivý	TO SATISFY uspokojiť
SCIENCE veda	SCIENTIFIC vedecký	~
SECURITY bezpečnosť	SECURE bezpečný	TO SECURE zabezpečiť, zaistiť
SELECTION výber	SELECTED vybraný SELECTIVE výberový, prieberčivý	TO SELECT vybrať si
SIGNATURE podpis	SIGNED podpísaný	TO SIGN podpísať
SKILL zručnosť	SKILLFUL zručný	~
SOCIETY spoločnosť	SOCIAL spoločenský, sociálny	TO SOCIALISE chodiť do spoločnosti
STRESS stres	STRESSFUL stresujúci	TO STRESS zdôrazniť
SUCCESS úspech	SUCCESSFUL úspešný	TO SUCCEED uspieť
SURPRISE prekvapenie	SURPRISING prekvapivý SURPRISED prekvapený	TO SURPRISE prekvapiť
TASTE chuť, vkus	TASTY chutný TASTEFUL vkusný TASTELESS bez chuti; nevkusný	TO TASTE chutiť
TOLERANCE tolerancia	TOLERANT tolerantný	TO TOLERATE tolerovať
TREND trend, móda	TRENDY moderný, módny	~
USAGE použitie	USEFUL užitočný USELESS zbytočný	TO USE používať
VARIETY pestrosť, rôzne druhy	VARIOUS rozmanitý, pestrý	TO VARY líšiť sa, meniť sa
VOCATION povolanie	VOCATIONAL týkajúci sa povolania	~
WEAKNESS slabosť	WEAK slabý	TO WEAKEN zoslabnúť
WEALTH bohatstvo	WEALTHY bohatý	~
WEIGHT váha	~	TO WEIGH vážiť
WIDTH šírka	WIDE široký	TO WIDEN rozšíriť sa
WORKER pracovník, pracujúci	WORKING pracujúci, pracovný	TO WORK pracovať
WORRY starosť, trápenie	WORRYING znepokojujúci WORRIED znepokojený, ustarostený	TO WORRY robiť si starosti, znepokojovať sa

BASIC PHRASAL VERBS

základné frázové slovesá

A

to apply for – uchádzať sa o
to ask for – žiadať

B

to be fired – byť prepustený zo zamestnania
to be fond of – mať rád
to be in – byť v móde
to be interested in – zaujímať sa o
to be keen on – veľmi sa zaujímať o
to be worried about – strachovať sa o
to break down – pokaziť sa

C

to care about – starať sa o
to cross out – vyčiarknuť

D

to depend on – závisieť na
to dress up – vyobliekať sa

F

to fill in – vyplniť
to find it hard – považovať to za ťažké
to find out – zistiť

G

to get better – zlepšovať sa
to get dressed – obliecť sa
to get married – vydať sa, oženiť sa
to get off – vystúpiť (napr. z autobusu)
to get on – nastúpiť (napr. do autobusu)
to get over – prekonať
to get to know – spoznať
to get up – vstať (z postele)
to give up – vzdať sa (myšlienky)
to go through – prejsť niečím, prežiť si niečo
to grow up – vyrásť

H

to hand in – odovzdať
to have in common – mať spoločné
to have in mind – mať na mysli

L

to look after – dávať pozor na
to look at – pozrieť sa na
to look for – hľadať
to look forward to – tešiť sa na
to look up – vyhľadať

P

to pick up – vyzdvihnúť
to put off – vyzliecť sa, odložiť
to put on – obliecť sa, obúť sa
to put on weight – priať (o váhe)

R

to rely on – spoľahnúť sa na
to run out of – minúť, spotrebovať

S

to set up – založiť (napr. firmu)
to switch off – vypnúť
to switch on – zapnúť

T

to take an exam – robiť skúšku
to take care – dávať pozor na
to take off – vzlietnúť (letadlo); vyzliecť si
to take part in – zúčastniť sa
to take photographs – fotografovať
to take place – konať sa
to take time – trvať (časovo)
to turn off – vypnúť
to turn on – zapnúť

W

to wake up – zobudiť sa
to write down – zapísať si



ISBN: 978-80-89132-54-6

www.enigma.sk

NOVÁ MATURITA ANGLIČTINA ZÁKLADNÁ ÚROVEŇ

MATURITNÉ TÉMY

- 1 Family
- 2 Culture and Art
- 3 Sports and Games
- 4 Housing
- 5 Shopping and Services
- 6 Health Care
- 7 Travelling
- 8 Education
- 9 Jobs
- 10 People and Nature
- 11 Science and Technology
- 12 People and Society
- 13 The Young and Their World
- 14 Food
- 15 Hobbies, Leisure and Lifestyle
- 16 Multicultural Society
- 17 Towns and Places
- 18 Fashion
- 19 English-speaking Countries
- 20 Slovakia – My Homeland
- 21 Human Relationships
- 22 Communication and Languages
- 23 Mass Media
- 24 The Book – The Friend of People
- 25 Idols and Celebrities

Priložené CD obsahuje
nahrávky 20 úvodných
textov a zadání na
procvičenie počúvania
s porozumením. Ich
prepis nájdete v knihe.

ĎALEJ ODPORÚČAME: